Community Experience Distilled

Moodle E-Learning Course Development

Third Edition

A complete guide to create and develop engaging e-learning courses with Moodle

William Rice

[PACKT] open source* PUBLISHING
community experience distilled

www.it-ebooks.info

Moodle E-Learning Course Development

Third Edition

A complete guide to create and develop engaging e-learning courses with Moodle

William Rice

[PACKT] open source
community experience distilled
PUBLISHING

BIRMINGHAM - MUMBAI

www.it-ebooks.info

Moodle E-Learning Course Development

Third Edition

Copyright © 2015 Packt Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embedded in critical articles or reviews.

Every effort has been made in the preparation of this book to ensure the accuracy of the information presented. However, the information contained in this book is sold without warranty, either express or implied. Neither the author nor Packt Publishing, and its dealers and distributors will be held liable for any damages caused or alleged to be caused directly or indirectly by this book.

Packt Publishing has endeavored to provide trademark information about all of the companies and products mentioned in this book by the appropriate use of capitals. However, Packt Publishing cannot guarantee the accuracy of this information.

First published: June 2008

Second edition: August 2011

Third edition: June 2015

Production reference: 1230615

Published by Packt Publishing Ltd.
Livery Place
35 Livery Street
Birmingham B3 2PB, UK.

ISBN 978-1-78216-334-3

www.packtpub.com

www.it-ebooks.info

Credits

Author
William Rice

Reviewers
Saad Faruque
Anna Krassa (kanna)
Danny Wahl

Commissioning Editor
Joanne Fitzpatrick

Acquisition Editor
Subho Gupta

Content Development Editor
Arun Nadar

Technical Editors
Siddhesh Ghadi
Siddhesh Patil

Copy Editors
Relin Hedly
Ulka Manjrekar
Sonia Mathur
Karuna Narayanan

Project Coordinator
Nikhil Nair

Proofreader
Safis Editing

Indexer
Monica Ajmera Mehta

Production Coordinator
Arvindkumar Gupta

Cover Work
Arvindkumar Gupta

www.it-ebooks.info

About the Author

William Rice is an e-learning professional who lives, works, and plays in New York City. He has authored books based on Moodle, Blackboard, Magento, and software training. William enjoys building e-learning solutions for small and midsized businesses. He gains professional satisfaction when his courses help students and make their work easier and more productive.

His indoor hobbies include writing books and spending time reading at `http://slashdot.org/`. His outdoor hobbies include practicing archery within sight of JFK Airport and playing with his children.

William is fascinated by the relationship between technology and society, how we create our tools, and how our tools shape us in turn. He is married to an incredible woman who encourages his writing pursuits. William has two amazing sons.

You can reach William on his website at `http://williamrice.com`.

For every book that I successfully complete, I owe my wife a debt of gratitude. Thank you for creating the space and time for me to write.

I would also like to thank my small business clients, especially Financial Success Training and Dubspot. Moodle is an essential tool for their businesses. I am grateful for their trust in me and enabling me to guide and help them build their online schools.

---

www.it-ebooks.info

About the Reviewers

Saad Faruque has over 15 years of experience implementing open source software solutions for business and educational institutions. During this period, he worked with banks, ISPs, and educational institutions. Recently, Saad helped set up the IT infrastructure for International School Dhaka and Stonehill International School, Bangalore.

Currently, he works as the head of solution development at Xeo InfoSoft (`http://xeois.com`), a Bangalore-based company that he cofounded. Xeo helps businesses implement open source software solutions, such as Moodle, Mahara, Alfresco, Zimbra, ORTS, Nagios, and Elastix.

You can find him on his blog at `http://tektab.com`. For Moodle and some other open source software implementation-related support, Saad can be reached at `faruque@gmail.com`.

www.it-ebooks.info

Anna Krassa (kanna) holds a bachelor's degree in librarianship and information science. Mostly, she works as an e-learning consultant. Anna lives in North Greece (Nea Moudania, Chalkidiki). In December 2006, she became the first Moodle-certified teacher in Greece. In May 2007, Anna became a mentor and assessor for MTC/MCCC candidates and collaborated with Certification Central Administration, HRD Moodle Partner (New Zealand). In 2012, Anna became the main mentor and assessor at MCCC Central Administration. Her responsibilities include assessing MCCC candidates, mentoring MCCC mentors and assessors, and representing HRDNZ in conferences.

Anna has also been working at GAC Corporate Academy since 2007, initially as an external facilitator for HRDNZ Moodle Partner, facilitating the course on personal and professional development. When this course was withdrawn after 2 years, her position changed from a facilitator to a course developer and GAClearn administrator because of her Moodle background. Since 2012, she has been working as a GCA learning developer. Her areas of focus are site administration, course design, facilitator training and support, participant assistance, research on e-learning, and Moodle. She also represents GCA at conferences, seminars, and similar events.

In Greece, Anna has worked for the e-learning service of the Greek School Network and the Library of University of Macedonia Telemathea. As a volunteer, she has worked for FreeMoodle and Mathisis, the most active e-schools in Greece and Cyprus. Internationally, she worked as an HRDNZ contractor in Bahrain (GII Academy), Ethiopia (Mekelle University), Canada (the Northern Alberta Institute of Technology), and Cyprus (European University Cyprus).

Anna started collaborating with Packt Publishing as a technical reviewer in 2013. Until now, she has been involved in three books: *Moodle 2.5 Multimedia*, *Moodle Course Design Best Practices,* and *Moodle E-Learning Course Development*, *Third Edition.*

She is married to Vasilis and has a lovely daughter.

Danny Wahl is an educational technology consultant and implementation specialist working in the Asia-Pacific region with a particular focus on international schools. He has assisted several schools in 1:1 computing, online, and mobile e-learning programs, among other things. When not working, he enjoys web development, reading the Bible, and playing the ukulele.

www.it-ebooks.info

www.PacktPub.com

Support files, eBooks, discount offers, and more

For support files and downloads related to your book, please visit `www.PacktPub.com`.

Did you know that Packt offers eBook versions of every book published, with PDF and ePub files available? You can upgrade to the eBook version at `www.PacktPub.com` and as a print book customer, you are entitled to a discount on the eBook copy. Get in touch with us at `service@packtpub.com` for more details.

At `www.PacktPub.com`, you can also read a collection of free technical articles, sign up for a range of free newsletters and receive exclusive discounts and offers on Packt books and eBooks.

`https://www2.packtpub.com/books/subscription/packtlib`

Do you need instant solutions to your IT questions? PacktLib is Packt's online digital book library. Here, you can search, access, and read Packt's entire library of books.

Why subscribe?

- Fully searchable across every book published by Packt
- Copy and paste, print, and bookmark content
- On demand and accessible via a web browser

Free access for Packt account holders

If you have an account with Packt at `www.PacktPub.com`, you can use this to access PacktLib today and view 9 entirely free books. Simply use your login credentials for immediate access.

www.it-ebooks.info

www.it-ebooks.info

Table of Contents

Preface **xi**

Chapter 1: A Guided Tour of Moodle **1**

A plan to create your learning site **2**

Step-by-step instructions to use Moodle **2**

Step 1 – learn about the Moodle experience 2

Step 2 – install Moodle 3

Step 3 – configure your site 3

Step 4 – create the framework for your learning site 3

Step 5 – make decisions about common settings 3

Step 6 – add basic course material 4

Step 7 – make your courses interactive 4

Step 8 – evaluate your students 4

Step 9 – make your course social 4

Step 10 – add collaborative activities 4

Step 11 – manage and extend your courses 5

Step 12 – take the pulse of your course 5

The Moodle philosophy 5

The Moodle experience **6**

The Moodle front page 7

Arriving at the site 7

Anonymous, guest, and registered access 8

The main menu 9

Blocks 9

The site description 10

Available courses 10

Inside a course 11

The navigation bar 12

Blocks 12

The navigation block 12

Sections 13

www.it-ebooks.info

Joining a discussion 14
Completing a workshop 15
Editing mode 17
Normal mode versus editing mode 17
The edit icon 18
The delete icon 18
The hidden/shown icons 19
The group icons 19
Resources and activities 19
Adding resources and activities 20
The administration menu 22
The Moodle architecture 23
The Moodle application directory 24
The Moodle data directory 25
The Moodle database 26
Summary 26
Chapter 2: Installing Moodle 27
Installation step 1 – the web server 27
How much hosting service do you need? 28
Disk space 28
Bandwidth 29
Memory 29
Ensuring minimum prerequisites 30
Installation step 2 – subdomain or subdirectory? 31
Installation step 3 – getting and unpacking Moodle 31
Choosing a Moodle version 32
The quick way – upload and unzip 32
Uploading and decompressing the zip file on the server 32
The long way – decompress the zip file locally and upload files 34
Installation step 4 – the Moodle data directory 37
Installation step 5 – creating the Moodle database and user 38
Creating the database 39
Creating the database user 40
Installation step 6 – the installer script 42
Configuration settings and config.php 43
Database tables 44
Step 6a – run install.php 44
Step 6b – specify the web address and directories 45
Step 6c - specify database settings 46
Step 6d - copyright 47
Step 6e - check server 48
Step 6f - database tables created by install.php 49

www.it-ebooks.info

Installation step 7 – create the administrative user **50**
Installation step 8 – front page settings **51**
Installation step 9 – success **52**
Summary **52**
Chapter 3: Configuring Your Site **53**
Preparing to experiment **53**
Creating test accounts 54
Installing several browsers 57
Exploring the site administration menu **58**
Configuring authentication methods 60
Manual accounts and no login methods 60
Enabling e-mail-based self-registration 62
Authenticating against an external source 63
Granting access to courses with enrollment choices 66
Name 67
Instances/enrolments 68
Enable 69
Up/down 69
Settings 69
Manual enrollments 69
Guest access 72
Self enrolment 75
Cohort sync 75
Creating a cohort 76
To enroll a cohort in a course 78
Category enrollments 78
The flat file 78
IMS Enterprise File 83
LDAP 84
PayPal 87
Mnet remote enrolments (formerly Moodle networking) 87
Language 88
About language files 90
Installing and enabling additional languages 92
Offering courses in multiple languages 95
Security settings 95
The IP blocker: Limiting access to specific locations 96
Site policies 96
Allowing Embed and Object tags 101
HTTP security 102
Filters 104
Configuring the front page 107
How to use this section 107
Front page settings page 108

www.it-ebooks.info

Backup 112
Setting up the cron job 112
Summary 113
Chapter 4: Creating Categories and Courses 115
Using course categories and the user experience 115
Displaying courses and categories on your front page 116
Displaying an uncategorized list of courses on your front page 118
Choosing the best option for your front page 119
Creating courses 123
Creating a new, blank course 123
Enrolling teachers and students 133
Assigning teachers 133
How to set enrolment methods 135
Handling course requests 138
Enabling course requests 138
Getting notified about course requests 138
How to request a new course (teachers and students) 139
How to respond to a request for a new course (managers, course creators, and administrators) 140
Summary 141
Chapter 5: Resources, Activities, and Conditional Access 143
Settings that are common to all resources and activities 143
Adding a resource or activity 144
Entering the name and description 144
Showing and hiding a resource or an activity 146
Setting the availability of a resource or an activity 146
Using the visibility setting to show or hide a resource 147
Using the ID number to include a resource in the gradebook 147
Restricting access 148
Summary of the process to use completion conditions 149
Allowing students to see the activity or resource before they can access it 153
Rearrange/move items on the course home page 153
Summary 155
Chapter 6: Adding Resources 157
Adding different kinds of resources 157
Adding URLs 158
Display options – Embed, Open, and In pop-up 158
Embed 159
Open 159
In pop-up 160
Adding pages 162
Adding a page to your course 163

www.it-ebooks.info

Adding images 164
Inserting an image file 165
Inserting a hot-linked picture into a Moodle page 166
Pasting text 168
Pasting text from Microsoft Word 168
Composing in an HTML editor and uploading to Moodle 169
Learn more about HTML 170
Adding files for your students to download 170
When a student selects a file from the course 170
File repositories 171
Types of repositories 171
Using file sharing services to collaborate 171
Using repositories to overcome Moodle's limit on file sizes 172
Adding Media – Video and audio 179
Adding video or audio to a page 179
Organize your course 184
Name your topics 184
Rearrange/move items on the course home page 185
Giving directions and organization with labels 186
Summary 187
Chapter 7: Adding Assignments, Lessons, Feedback, and Choices 189
Definitions 189
Understanding assignments 190
What you can do with an assignment 190
Types of work students can submit 191
Submitting an assignment from the student's perspective 194
Grading an assignment 195
Receiving a grade for an assignment 198
Allowing a student to resubmit an assignment 199
Adding an assignment 200
Availability 201
Submission types 202
Feedback types 203
Submission settings 203
Group submission settings 205
Notifications 206
Printer-friendly directions 206
Indicating that assignments are mandatory 207
Lesson 207
Definition of a lesson 207
Example of a simple lesson with remedial page jump 208

www.it-ebooks.info

Types of lesson pages 211
Content pages 212
Cluster with questions 213
End of branch 214
Plan, create pages, and add content 215
Configuring lesson settings 215
General settings 216
Appearance 216
Prerequisite lesson 218
The flow control 218
Grade 219
The practice lesson 219
Custom scoring 219
Handling of retakes 220
Minimum number of questions 220
Adding the first lesson page 220
Creating a question page 223
Creating pages and assigning jumps 226
The flow of pages 227
Editing the lesson 227
Feedback 228
Feedback isn't just for students 228
Creating a feedback activity 229
Question types 231
Adding a page break 231
Avoiding bots with captcha 231
Inserting information 232
Adding a label 232
Creating a textbox for longer text answer 232
Displaying multiple choice questions 232
Creating multiple choice questions 234
The numeric answer 235
The short text answer 235
Viewing feedback 235
See individual responses 235
Analyzing responses with the analysis tab 237
Choices 237
The student's point of view 238
The teacher's point of view 238
Limit 239
Display mode 239
Publish results 239
Privacy of results 239
Allowing students to change their minds 239
Summary 240

www.it-ebooks.info

Chapter 8: Evaluating Students with Quizzes 241
Question banks 242
Configuring quiz settings 242
General 243
Timing 244
Grade 244
Layout 245
The question behavior 246
Review options 248
Appearance 249
Extra restrictions on attempts 249
The overall feedback 250
Common module settings 251
Adding questions to a quiz 252
Adding questions to the question bank 252
Creating a question 255
Question types 259
Adding feedback to a question 262
Adding existing questions from the question bank 267
Adding random questions to a quiz 269
Maximum grade 270
Preventing glossary auto-linking in quiz questions 271
Preventing an open book quiz 271
Summary 272
Chapter 9: Getting Social with Chats and Forums 273
The chat module 273
The chat settings page 275
The name of this chat room 275
Description 275
The next chat time and repeat/publish sessions 276
Save past sessions and everyone can view past sessions 276
Preventing students from seeing other's chats 276
Creating and running forums 277
Using the news forum to send notifications 278
Multiple forums 278
Forum settings 278
General settings 278
Post threshold to block settings 281
Ratings 281
Summary 282
Chapter 10: Collaborating with Wikis and Glossaries 283
Glossary 283
Enabling glossaries and auto-linking 284
Enabling glossaries for your site 284
Enabling auto-linking 284

www.it-ebooks.info

Adding and configuring a glossary 286
The global glossary versus local glossary 286
The main glossary versus secondary glossary 286
Entries approved by default 287
Always allow editing and Duplicate entries allowed 288
Allowing comments 288
Automatically linking glossary entries 288
Appearance settings 288
Enabling ratings 289
Adding glossary entries 292
Importing and exporting entries 294
Wiki 294
Using the wiki type and groups mode to determine who can edit a wiki 295
The first page name 296
The default format 296
Summary 297
Chapter 11: Running a Workshop 299
Workshop strategies 299
Peer assessment of submissions 299
The timing of submissions and assessments 300
The four questions 300
The four phases 301
The setup phase – the edit settings page 301
Name and description 302
Grading settings 302
The submission settings 305
Assessment settings 306
Feedback settings 307
Example submissions settings 307
Availability settings 307
The edit assessment form page 308
Adding an example to the workshop 310
The submission phase – students submit their work 313
Allocating submissions 314
The assessment phase 315
The grading evaluation phase 315
The closed phase 315
Summary 315
Chapter 12: Groups and Cohorts 317
Groups versus cohorts 317
Cohorts 317
Creating a cohort 318

www.it-ebooks.info

Adding students to a cohort 318
Manually adding and removing students to a cohort 318
Adding students to a cohort in bulk – upload 319
Cohort sync 323
Enabling the cohort sync enrollment method 324
Adding the cohort sync enrollment method to a course 324
Unenroll a cohort from a course 325
Differences between cohort sync and enrolling a cohort 325
Managing students with groups 326
Course versus activity 327
The three group modes 327
Creating a group 328
Manually creating and populating a group 328
Automatically creating and populating a group 330
Importing groups 331
Summary 332
Chapter 13: Extending Your Course by Adding Blocks 333
Configuring where a block appears 333
Standard blocks 336
The activities block 337
The blog menu block 338
The blog tags block 338
The calendar block 339
The comments block 340
The course completion block 341
Course/site summary 341
The courses block 341
The feedback block 341
The HTML block 343
The latest news block 343
The logged in user block 344
The messages block 344
The My latest badges block 344
The My private files block 345
The online users block 345
The quiz results block 345
The random glossary entry block 346
The recent activity block 347
The remote RSS feeds block 347
The search forums block 348

www.it-ebooks.info

Section links 348
The upcoming events block 349
Summary 349
Chapter 14: Features for Teachers 351
Logs and reports 351
Viewing course logs 352
Viewing live logs 354
Viewing activity reports 354
The participation report 355
Viewing the activity report 356
Viewing grades 357
Categorizing grades 358
Viewing grade categories 359
Creating grade categories 359
Using extra credit 361
Weighting a category 362
Compensating for a difficult category 363
Summary 365
Index 367

www.it-ebooks.info

Preface

Moodle is a leading open source e-learning management system. With Moodle, teachers and professors can easily construct richly textured web-based courses. A course can consist of a number of lessons. Each lesson consists of reading materials; activities such as quizzes, tests, surveys, and projects; and social elements that encourage interaction and group work among students.

This book shows you how to use Moodle as a tool to enhance your teaching. It will help you analyze your students' requirements and come to an understanding of what Moodle can do for them. After this, you'll see how to use every feature of Moodle to meet your course goals. Moodle is relatively easy to install and use, but the real challenge is to develop a learning process that leverages its power and maps effectively to the content-established learning situation. This book and e-book guides you to meet this challenge.

The latest edition of the ultimate introduction to Moodle will show you how to add static learning materials, interactive activities, and social features to your courses so that students reach their learning potential. Whether you want to support traditional class teaching or lecturing or provide complete online and distance e-learning courses, this book will prove to be a powerful resource throughout your use of Moodle.

This book is a complete guide to successful learning using Moodle. It is focused on course development and delivery using the best educational practices.

Screenshots of the courses in the *Mount Orange School* (`http://school.demo.moodle.net`) are attributed to `https://moodle.net/`, and copyrighted under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License (`http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/`). Many thanks for supplying this demonstration site to the Moodle community.

www.it-ebooks.info

What this book covers

Chapter 1, *A Guided Tour of Moodle*, tells you what Moodle can do and what kind of user experiences you can create for your students and teachers. You will also learn how the Moodle philosophy shapes user experience. This helps you to decide how to make the best use of Moodle and plan your learning site.

Chapter 2, *Installing Moodle*, teaches you how to install Moodle on your web server.

Chapter 3, *Configuring Your Site*, explains how to configure your site so that it behaves in the way you envision. It also helps you to create the user experience you want. If someone manages your Moodle site for you, you can use this chapter to learn about various configuration options that will make creating and teaching courses easier for you.

Chapter 4, *Creating Categories and Courses*, shows you how to create course categories and new courses. It covers course settings that affect the behavior of a course. It also shows you how to enroll teachers and students in a course.

Chapter 5, *Resources, Activities, and Conditional Access*, covers some common settings that you will need to choose for all the resources and activities that you add. It also shows you how to control the flow of students through a course using conditional access. Also, you will learn how to hide, show, and rearrange items on your course's home page.

Chapter 6, *Adding Resources*, talks about resources as course materials that students read, but don't interact with, such as web pages, graphics, and Adobe Acrobat documents. This chapter teaches you how to add these resources to a course and how to make the best use of them.

Chapter 7, *Adding Assignments, Lessons, Feedback, and Choices*, covers course activities that enable students to interact with the instructor, the learning system, or each other. In this chapter, you will see how to add several kinds of interactive course material: assignments, lessons, choices, and feedback.

Chapter 8, *Evaluating Students with Quizzes*, shows you how to evaluate your students' knowledge and attitude.

Chapter 9, *Getting Social with Chats and Forums*, covers how Moodle excels at peer interaction. This chapter teaches you how to add social resources activities to a course and how to make the best use of them.

www.it-ebooks.info

Chapter 10, *Collaborating with Wikis and Glossaries*, provides insights on how to add wikis and glossaries to your course. These activities enable students to work together in order to build a body of knowledge.

Chapter 11, *Running a Workshop*, talks about a workshop that provides a place for students in a class to see an example project, upload their individual projects, and see and assess each other's projects.

Chapter 12, *Groups and Cohorts*, explains how to use groups to separate students in a course into teams. You will also learn how to use cohorts to mass enroll students to courses.

Chapter 13, *Extending Your Course by Adding Blocks*, provides insights on how every block adds functionality to your site or course. This chapter describes many of Moodle's blocks, helps you to decide which ones will meet your goals, and tells you how to implement them.

Chapter 14, *Features for Teachers*, shows you how to use Moodle's gradebook and logs to track student activity.

What you need for this book

This book is designed for people who are creating and delivering courses on Moodle. To make the best use of Moodle, you will need to play the role of a teacher on a Moodle site. This means that you will need the ability to edit a course on the Moodle site.

This book also contains some information for the administrator of a Moodle site. Even if you're not the site administrator, you can use this information to work with your administrator when you configure the Moodle site and use logs and reports.

Who this book is for

This book is for anyone who wants to make the most of Moodle's features to produce an interactive online learning experience. If you're an educator, corporate trainer, or just someone with something to teach, this book can guide you through the installation, configuration, creation, and management of a Moodle site. It is suitable for people who perform the task of creating and setting up the learning site. This book is also helpful for those who create and deliver courses on the site, site administrators, course creators, and teachers.

www.it-ebooks.info

Conventions

In this book, you will find a number of styles of text that distinguish between different kinds of information. Here are some examples of these styles, and an explanation of their meaning.

Code words in text, database table names, folder names, filenames, file extensions, pathnames, dummy URLs, user input, and Twitter handles are shown as follows: " You can protect it either by using an `.htaccess` file or by placing the directory outside the web server's documents directory."

A block of code is set as follows:

```
<?php  /// Moodle Configuration File

unset($CFG);

$CFG->dbtype    = 'mysqli';
$CFG->dblibrary = 'native';
$CFG->dbhost    = 'localhost';
$CFG->dbname    = 'info-overload';
```

New terms and **important words** are shown in bold. Words that you see on the screen, in menus or dialog boxes for example, appear in the text like this: " The contents of the **Administration** menu change depending upon who is logged in ".

Warnings or important notes appear in a box like this.

Tips and tricks appear like this.

Reader feedback

Feedback from our readers is always welcome. Let us know what you think about this book—what you liked or may have disliked. Reader feedback is important for us to develop titles that you really get the most out of.

To send us general feedback, simply send an e-mail to `feedback@packtpub.com`, and mention the book title via the subject of your message.

www.it-ebooks.info

If there is a topic that you have expertise in and you are interested in either writing or contributing to a book, see our author guide on `www.packtpub.com/authors`.

Customer support

Now that you are the proud owner of a Packt book, we have a number of things to help you to get the most from your purchase.

Errata

Although we have taken every care to ensure the accuracy of our content, mistakes do happen. If you find a mistake in one of our books—maybe a mistake in the text or the code—we would be grateful if you would report this to us. By doing so, you can save other readers from frustration and help us improve subsequent versions of this book. If you find any errata, please report them by visiting `http://www.packtpub.com/submit-errata`, selecting your book, clicking on the **errata submission form** link, and entering the details of your errata. Once your errata are verified, your submission will be accepted and the errata will be uploaded on our website, or added to any list of existing errata, under the Errata section of that title. Any existing errata can be viewed by selecting your title from `http://www.packtpub.com/support`.

Piracy

Piracy of copyright material on the Internet is an ongoing problem across all media. At Packt, we take the protection of our copyright and licenses very seriously. If you come across any illegal copies of our works, in any form, on the Internet, please provide us with the location address or website name immediately so that we can pursue a remedy.

Please contact us at `copyright@packtpub.com` with a link to the suspected pirated material.

We appreciate your help in protecting our authors, and our ability to bring you valuable content.

Questions

You can contact us at `questions@packtpub.com` if you are having a problem with any aspect of the book, and we will do our best to address it.

www.it-ebooks.info

www.it-ebooks.info

1
A Guided Tour of Moodle

Moodle is a free, open source learning management system that enables you to create powerful, flexible, and engaging online learning experiences. I use the phrase *online learning experiences* instead of online courses deliberately. The phrase *online course* often connotes a sequential series of web pages, some images, maybe a few animations, and a quiz put online. There might be some e-mail or bulletin board communication among the teacher and students. However, online learning can be much more engaging than that.

Moodle's name gives you an insight into its approach to e-learning. The official Moodle documentation on `http://docs.moodle.org` states the following:

> *The word* **Moodle** *was originally an acronym for* **Modular Object-Oriented Dynamic Learning Environment**, *which is mostly useful to programmers and education theorists. It's also a verb that describes the process of lazily meandering through something, doing things as it occurs to you to do them, an enjoyable tinkering that often leads to insight and creativity. As such it applies both to the way Moodle was developed, and to the way a student or teacher might approach studying or teaching an online course. Anyone who uses Moodle is a* **Moodler**.

The phrase *online learning experience* connotes a more active, engaging role for students and teachers. It connotes, among other things, web pages that can be explored in any order, courses with live chats among students and teachers, forums where users can rate messages on their relevance or insight, online workshops that enable students to evaluate each other's work, impromptu polls that let the teacher evaluate what students think of a course's progress, and directories set aside for teachers to upload and share their files. All these features create an active learning environment, full of different kinds of student-to-student and student-to-teacher interactions. This is the kind of user experience that Moodle excels at, and the kind that this book will help you to create.

www.it-ebooks.info

A plan to create your learning site

Whether you are the site creator or a course creator, you can use this book as you would a project plan. As you work your way through each chapter, the book provides guidance on making decisions that meet your goals for your learning site. This helps you to create the kind of learning experience that you want for your teachers (if you're the site creator) or students (if you're the teacher). You can also use this book as a traditional reference manual, but its main advantages are its step-by-step, project-oriented approach, and the guidance it gives you about creating an interactive learning experience.

Moodle is designed to be intuitive to use and its online help is well written. It does a good job of telling you how to use each of its features. What Moodle's help files don't tell you is when and why to use each feature, what effect it will have on the student experience, and that is what this book supplies.

Step-by-step instructions to use Moodle

When you create a Moodle learning site, you usually follow a defined series of steps. This book is arranged to support that process. Each chapter shows you how to get the most from each step. Each step is listed , with a brief description of the chapter that supports the step.

As you work your way through each chapter, your learning site will grow in scope and sophistication. By the time you finish this book, you should have a complete, interactive learning site. As you learn more about what Moodle can do, and see your courses taking shape, you may want to change some of the things that you did in the previous chapters. Moodle offers you this flexibility. And this book helps you determine how those changes will cascade throughout your site.

Step 1 – learn about the Moodle experience

Every **Learning Management System** (**LMS**) has a paradigm, or approach, that shapes the user experience and encourages a certain kind of usage. An LMS might encourage very sequential learning by offering features that enforce a given order on each course. It might discourage student-to-student interaction by offering few features that support it, while encouraging solo learning by offering many opportunities for the student to interact with the course material. In *Chapter 1*, *A Guided Tour of Moodle*, you will learn what Moodle can do and what kind of user experience your students and teachers will have, using Moodle. You will also learn about the Moodle philosophy, and how it shapes the user experience. With this information, you'll be ready to decide how to make the best use of Moodle's many features, and to plan your online learning site.

www.it-ebooks.info

Step 2 – install Moodle

Chapter 2, *Installing Moodle* guides you through installing Moodle on your web server. It will help you estimate the amount of disk space, bandwidth, and memory that you will need for Moodle. This can help you to decide upon the right hosting service for your needs.

Step 3 – configure your site

Most of the decisions you make while installing and configuring Moodle will affect the user experience. Not just students and teachers, but also course creators and site administrators are affected by these decisions. While Moodle's online help does a good job of telling you how to install and configure the software, it doesn't tell you how the settings that you choose affect the user experience. *Chapter 3*, *Configuring Your Site*, covers the implications of these decisions, and helps you configure the site so that it behaves in the way you envision.

Step 4 – create the framework for your learning site

In Moodle, every course belongs to a category. *Chapter 4*, *Creating Categories and Courses*, takes you through creating course categories, and then creating courses. Just as you chose site-wide settings during installation and configuration, you choose course-wide settings while creating each course. This chapter tells you the implications of the various course settings so that you can create the experience that you want for each course. It also shows you how to add teachers and students to the courses.

Step 5 – make decisions about common settings

In Moodle, course material is either a resource or an activity. A resource is an item that the student views, listens to, reads, or downloads. An activity is an item that the student interacts with, or that enables the student to interact with the teacher or other students. In *Chapter 5*, *Resources, Activities, and Conditional Access* you will learn about the settings that are common to all resources and activities, and how to add resources and activities to a course.

www.it-ebooks.info

Step 6 – add basic course material

In most online courses, the core material consists of web pages that the students view. These pages can contain text, graphics, movies, sound files, games, exercises—anything that can appear on the World Wide Web can appear on a Moodle web page. *Chapter 6*, *Adding Resources* covers adding this kind of material, plus links to other websites, media files, labels, and directories of files. This chapter also helps you determine when to use each of these types of material.

Step 7 – make your courses interactive

In this context, *interactive* means an interaction between the student and the teacher, or the student and an active web page. Student-to-student interaction is covered in a later chapter. This chapter covers activities that involve interaction between the student and an active web page, or between the student and the teacher. Interactive course material includes lessons that guide students through a defined path, based upon their answers to review question, and the assignments that are uploaded by the student and then graded by the teacher. *Chapter 7*, *Adding Assignments, Lessons, Feedback, and Choices*, tells you how to create these interactions, and how each of them affects the student and teacher experience.

Step 8 – evaluate your students

In *Chapter 8*, *Evaluating Students with Quizzes*, you'll learn how to evaluate the students' knowledge with a quiz. The chapter thoroughly covers creating quiz questions, sharing quiz questions with other courses, adding feedback to questions and quizzes, and more.

Step 9 – make your course social

Social course material enables student-to-student interaction. Moodle enables you to add chats and forums to your courses. These types of interactions will be familiar to many students. *Chapter 9*, *Getting Social with Chats and Forums* shows you how to create and manage these social activities.

Step 10 – add collaborative activities

Moodle enables students to work together to create new material. For example, you can create glossaries that are site-wide, and glossaries that are specific to a single course. Students can add to the glossaries. You can also allow students to contribute to and edit a wiki in class.

www.it-ebooks.info

Moodle also offers a powerful workshop tool, which enables the students to view and evaluate each other's work.

Each of these interactions make the course more interesting, but also more complicated for the teacher to manage. The result is a course that encourages the students to contribute, share, and engage. *Chapter 10, Collaborating with Wikis and Glossaries*, and *Chapter 11, Running a Workshop*, help you rise to the challenge of managing your students' collaborative work.

Step 11 – manage and extend your courses

Chapter 12, Groups and Cohorts, shows you how to use groups to separate the students in a course. You will also learn how to use cohorts, or site-wide groups, to mass-enroll students into courses.

Every block adds functionality to your site or your course. *Chapter 13, Extending your Course by Adding Blocks*, describes many of Moodle's blocks, helps you decide which ones will meet your goals, and tells you how to implement them. You can use blocks to display calendars, enable commenting, enable tagging, show navigation features, and much more.

Step 12 – take the pulse of your course

Moodle offers several tools to help teachers administer and deliver courses. It keeps detailed access logs that enable the teachers to see exactly what content the students access, and when. It also enables the teachers to establish custom grading scales, which are available site-wide or for a single course. Student grades can be accessed online and can also be downloaded in a variety of formats (including spreadsheet). Finally, teachers can collaborate in special forums (bulletin boards) reserved just for them. This is a part of *Chapter 14, Features for Teachers*.

The Moodle philosophy

Moodle is designed to support a style of learning called *social constructionism*. This style of learning is interactive. The social constructionist philosophy believes that people learn best when they interact with the learning material, construct new material for others, and interact with other students about the material. The difference between a traditional philosophy and the social constructionist philosophy is the difference between a lecture and a discussion.

www.it-ebooks.info

Moodle does not require you to use the social constructionist method for your courses. However, it best supports this method. For example, Moodle enables you to add several kinds of static course material. This is the course material that a student reads but does not interact with, such as the following:

- Web pages
- Links to anything on the Web (including material on your Moodle site)
- A folder of files
- A label that displays any text or image

However, Moodle enables you to add even more kinds of interactive and social course material. This is the course material that a student interacts with, by answering questions, entering text, or uploading files, which includes the following:

- Assignment (uploading files to be reviewed by the teacher)
- Choice (a single question)
- Lesson (a conditional, branching activity)
- Quiz (an online test)

Moodle also offers activities in which the students interact with each other. These are used to create social course material, such the following:

- Chat (live online chat between students)
- Forum (you can have none or several online bulletin boards for each course)
- Glossary (students and/or teachers can contribute terms to site-wide glossaries)
- Wiki (this is a familiar tool for collaboration to most younger students and many older students)
- Workshop (these support peer review and feedback of the assignments that the students upload)

In addition, some of Moodle's add-on modules add even more types of interaction. For example, one add-on module enables the students and the teachers to schedule appointments with each other.

The Moodle experience

Because Moodle encourages interaction and exploration, your students' learning experience will often be non-linear. Moodle can enforce a specific order upon a course, using something called conditional activities. Conditional activities can be arranged in a sequence. Your course can contain a mix of conditional and non-linear activities.

www.it-ebooks.info

In this section, I'll take you on a tour of a Moodle learning site. You will see a student's experience from the time the student arrives at the site, enters a course, and works through some material in the course. You will also see some student-to-student interaction, and some functions used by the teacher to manage the course. Along the way, I'll point out many of the features that you will learn to implement in this book, and how the demo site is using those features.

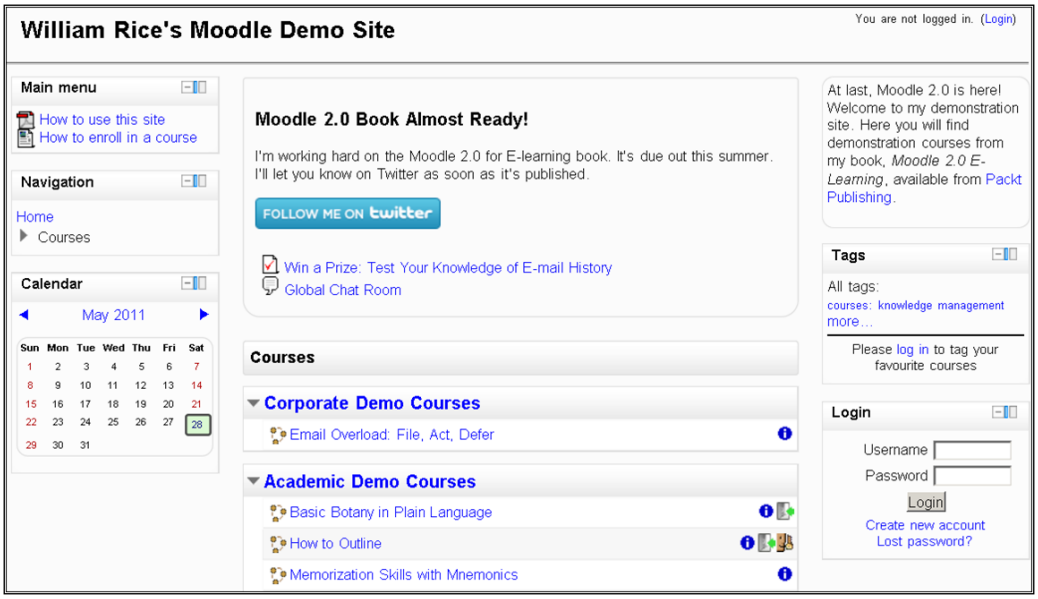
The Moodle front page

The front page of your site is the first thing that most users will see. This section takes you on a tour of the front page of a demonstration site.

Probably the best Moodle demo sites are `http://demo.moodle.net/` and `http://school.demo.moodle.net/`. Many of the screenshots in this book are from `http://school.demo.moodle.net`. The contents of that site are graciously offered by **Moodle Pty Ltd**, under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License.

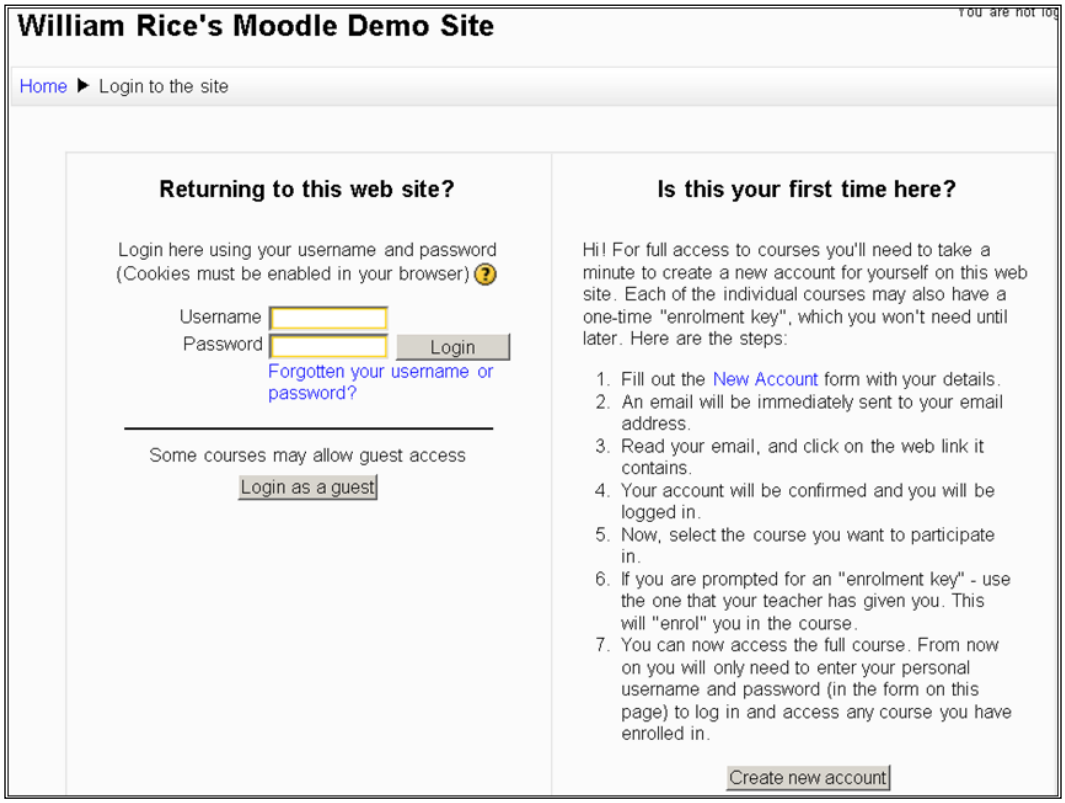
Arriving at the site

When a visitor arrives at the demonstration learning site, the visitor sees the front page. You can require the visitor to register and log in before seeing any part of your site. Or, you can allow the anonymous visitor to see a lot of information about the site on the front page, which is what I have done in the following screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

One of the first things that a visitor will notice is the announcement at the top and center of the page, **Moodle 2.0 Book Almost Ready!**. Below the announcement are two activities: a quiz, **Win a Prize: Test Your Knowledge of E-mail History**, and a chat room, **Global Chat Room**. Selecting either of these activities will require the visitor to register or log in with the site, as seen in the following screenshot:



Anonymous, guest, and registered access

Notice the line **Some courses may allow guest access** in the left column of the page. You can set three levels of access for your site and for individual courses, as follows:

Anonymous access allows anyone to see the contents of your site's front page. Notice that there is no anonymous access for courses. Everyone who enters a course must have a role in the system. However, there is a special role, called *Guest*, which is automatically given to any anonymous person.

Guest access allows the user to enter without logging in. This enables you to track usage by looking at the statistics for the user, Guest.

www.it-ebooks.info

Registered access requires the user to register on your site. You can allow people to register with or without e-mail confirmation, require a special code for enrolment, manually create their accounts, import accounts from another system, or use an outside system (like a **Lightweight Directory Access Protocol** (**LDAP**) server) for your accounts. There's more on this in *Chapter 2*, *Installing Moodle*.

The main menu

Returning to the front page, notice the **Main menu** in the upper left corner in the following screenshot. We added these two documents to the menu. They tell the user what the site is about, and how to use it:

In Moodle, the icons tell the user what kind of resource will be accessed by a link. In this case, the icon tells the user that the first resource is a PDF (Adobe Acrobat) document and the second is a Web page. Course material that a student observes or reads, such as web or text pages, hyperlinks, and multimedia files are called resources. In *Chapter 5*, *Resources, Activities and Conditional Access*, you will learn how to add resources to a course.

Blocks

In the side bars of the page, you will find *Blocks*. For example, the **Main menu**, **Calendar,** and **Tags** blocks. You can choose to add a block to the front page, to all of the pages in the site, or to an individual course.

Other blocks display a summary of the current course, a list of courses available on the site, the latest news, who is online, and other information. At the bottom-right side of the front page, you see the **Login** block. *Chapter 13*, *Extending your Course by Adding Blocks*, tells you how to use these blocks.

Your site's front page is a course!

You can add these blocks to the front page of your site because the front page is essentially a course. Anything that you can add to a course—such as resources and blocks—can be added to the front page.

www.it-ebooks.info

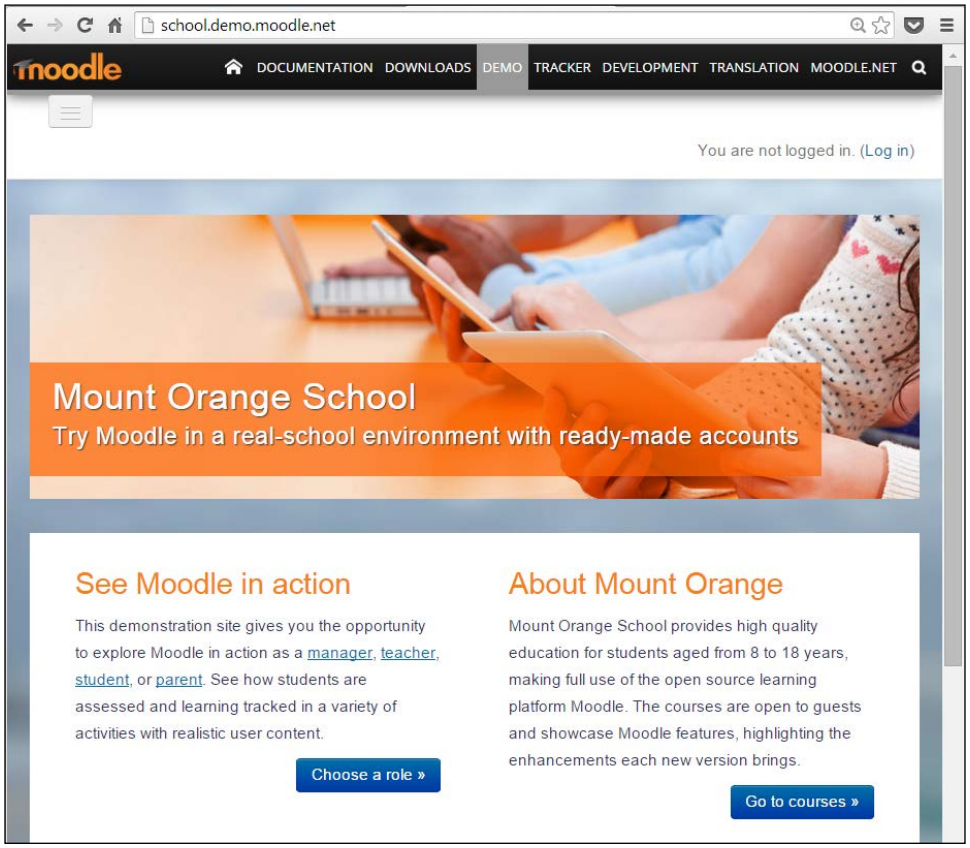
The site description

On the right-hand side of the front page, you see a **Site Description**. This is optional. If this were a course, you could choose to display the **Course Description**.

The Site or Course Description can contain anything that you can put on a web page. It is essentially a block of HTML code that is displayed on the front page.

Available courses

You can choose to display the available courses on the front page of your site. Looking at the screenshot a few pages back, you can see that in my demonstration site, I've chosen to display the available courses on the front page to anyone who visits the site. On the demonstration site run by Moodle, they have chosen to hide the courses from the users who are not logged in. Their front page displays the information about their site, and links that enable the visitors to proceed to the login page, as seen in the following screenshot:

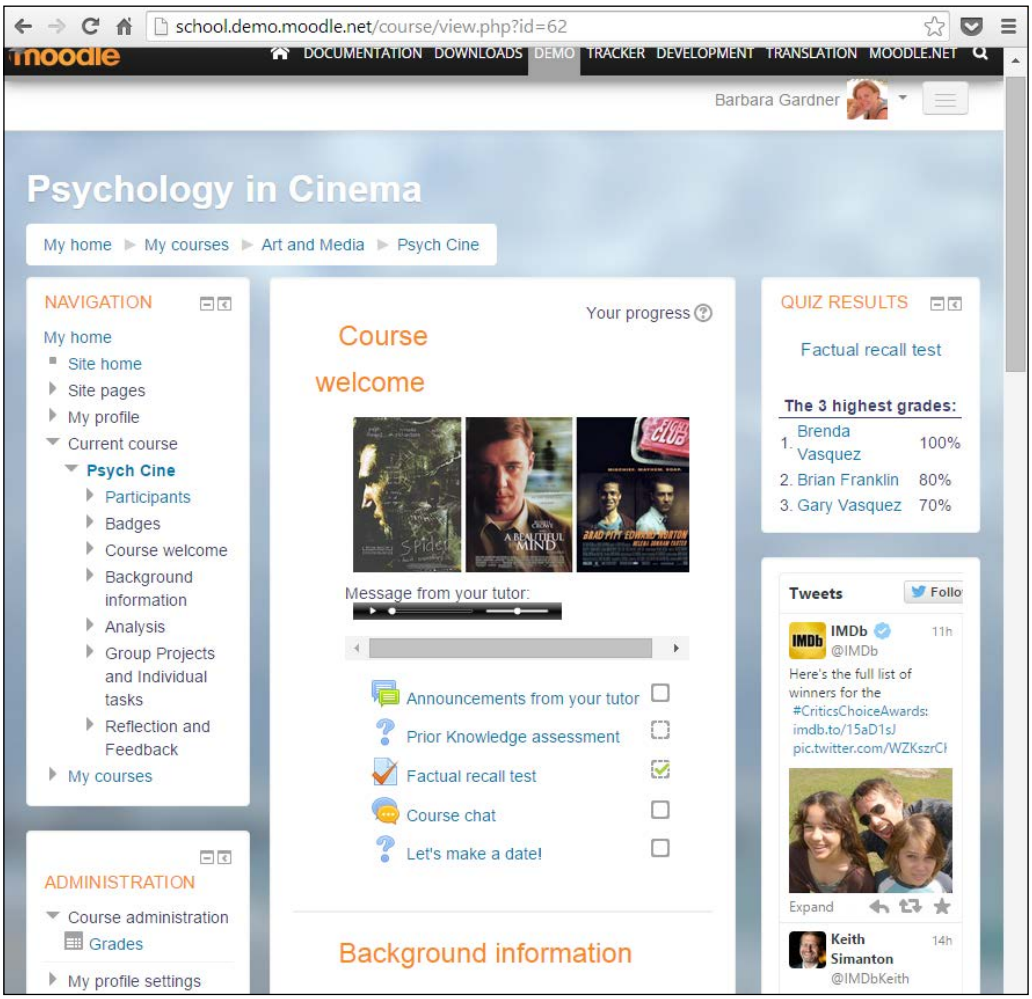


www.it-ebooks.info

When a course is displayed in a list, clicking on the information icon next to a course displays its **Course Description** in a popup window. Clicking on a course's name takes you into the course. If the course allows anonymous access, you are taken directly into the course. If the course allows guest access or requires registration, you are taken to the login screen.

Inside a course

Now, let us take a look inside a course:



www.it-ebooks.info

The navigation bar

In the preceding screenshot, the user has logged in as **Barbara Gardner** and entered the **Psychology in Cinema** course. Notice the breadcrumbs trail (the Navbar) at the top-left corner of the screen, which tells us the name of the site and the short name of the course.

At the upper-right side of the screen, we see a confirmation that the user has logged in. That is not a part of the Navbar, but usually appears next to it.

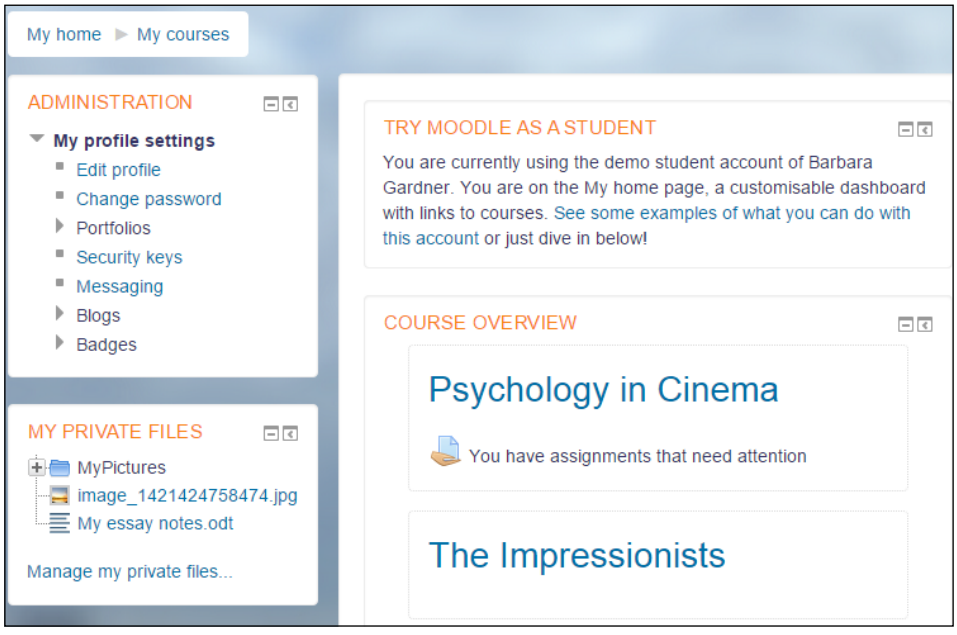
Blocks

Like the front page, this course uses various blocks. The most prominent one is the **Navigation** block on the left. Let's talk more about navigation:

The navigation block

The **Navigation** block shows you where you are and where you can go in the site. In the demonstration, you can see direct links to the topics in the course. This enables the student to jump to a topic that is much further down on the page, without scrolling.

At the bottom of the **Navigation** block is a link to the **My courses** page. Clicking this link displays the courses the student is enrolled in and notices if the student has anything due in those courses, as seen in the following screenshot:

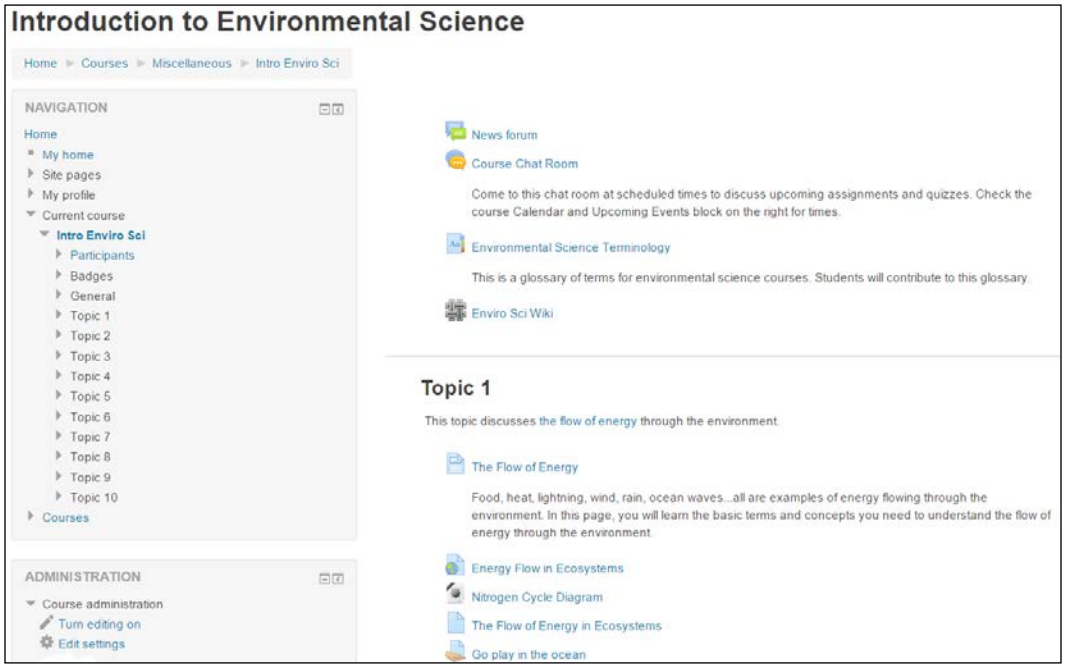


www.it-ebooks.info

We will cover how to create assignments in *Chapter 7, Adding Assignments, Lessons, Feedback, and Choices*.

Sections

Moodle enables you to organize a course by **Week**, in which case each section is labeled with a date instead of a number. Or, you can choose to make your course a single, large discussion forum. Most courses are organized by **Topic**, such as the one seen in the next screenshot:



Notice that the first topic is not numbered. Moodle gives you a **Topic 0** to use as the course introduction.

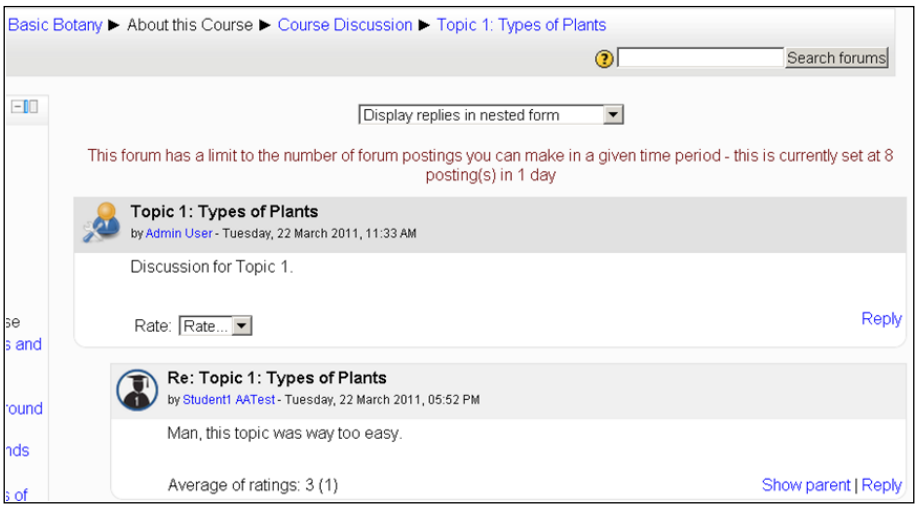
Teachers can hide and show sections at will. This enables a teacher to open and close resources and activities as the course progresses.

Topics are the lowest level of organization in Moodle. The hierarchy is: **Site** | **Course Category** | **Course Subcategory (optional)** | **Course** | **Section**. Every item in your course belongs to a Topic, even if your course consists of only **Topic 0**.

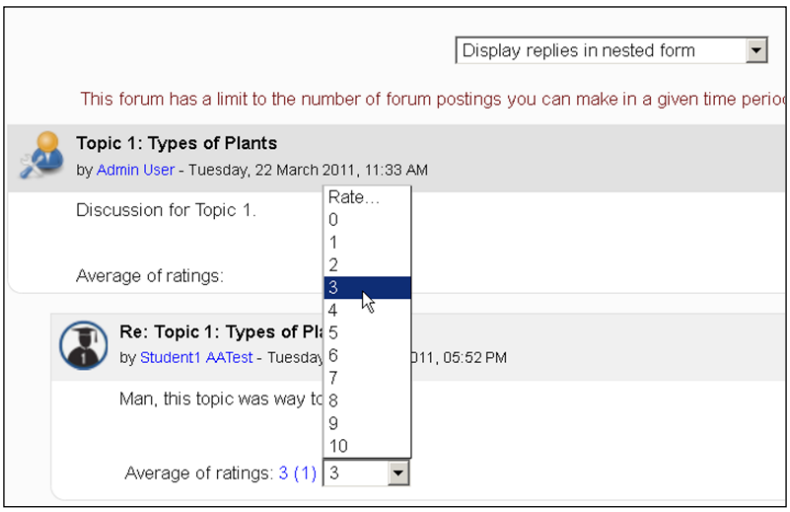
www.it-ebooks.info

Joining a discussion

Clicking on the link for a discussion takes the student into the forum. Clicking on a discussion thread opens that thread in the forum. You can see in the following screenshot that the teacher started with the first post. Then a student replied to the original post:



The student's message in the preceding screenshot doesn't serve our students. Fortunately, the teacher has editing rights to this forum, and so he or she can delete posts at will. The teacher can also rate posts for their relevance, as shown in the following screenshot:



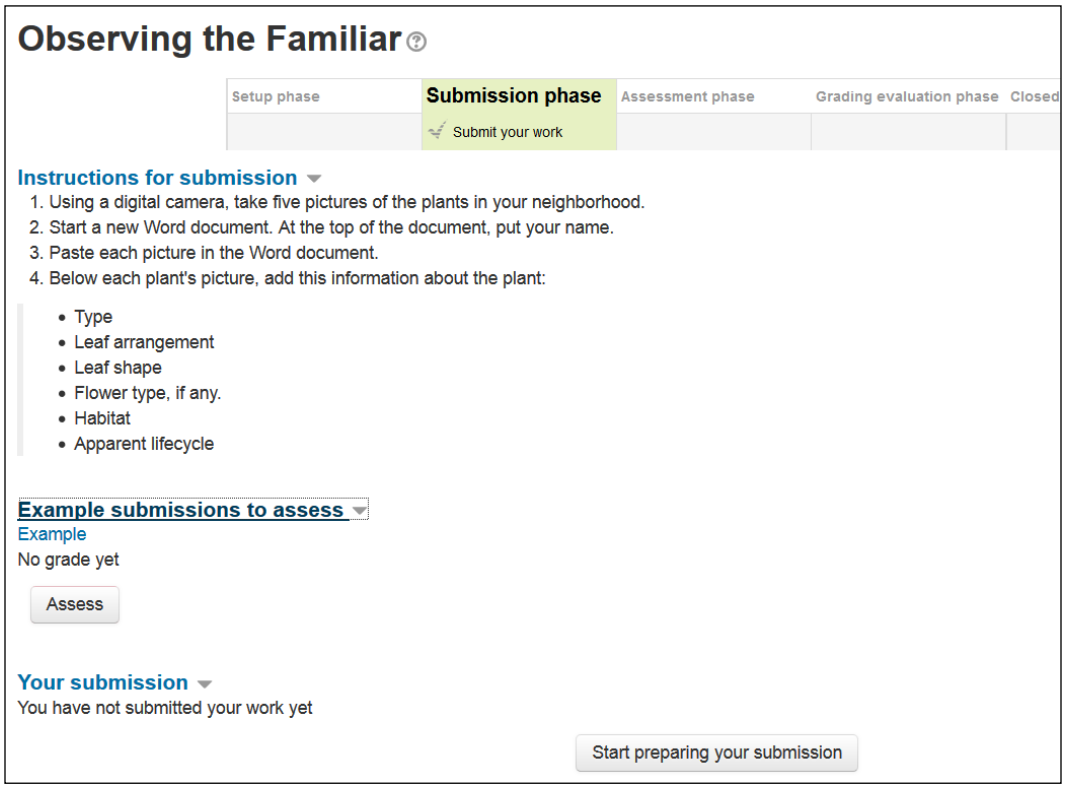
www.it-ebooks.info

Because Moodle supports an interactive, collaborative style of learning, students can also be given the ability to rate forum posts and the material submitted by other students. You'll find out more about forums in *Chapter 9, Getting Social with Chats and Forums*.

Completing a workshop

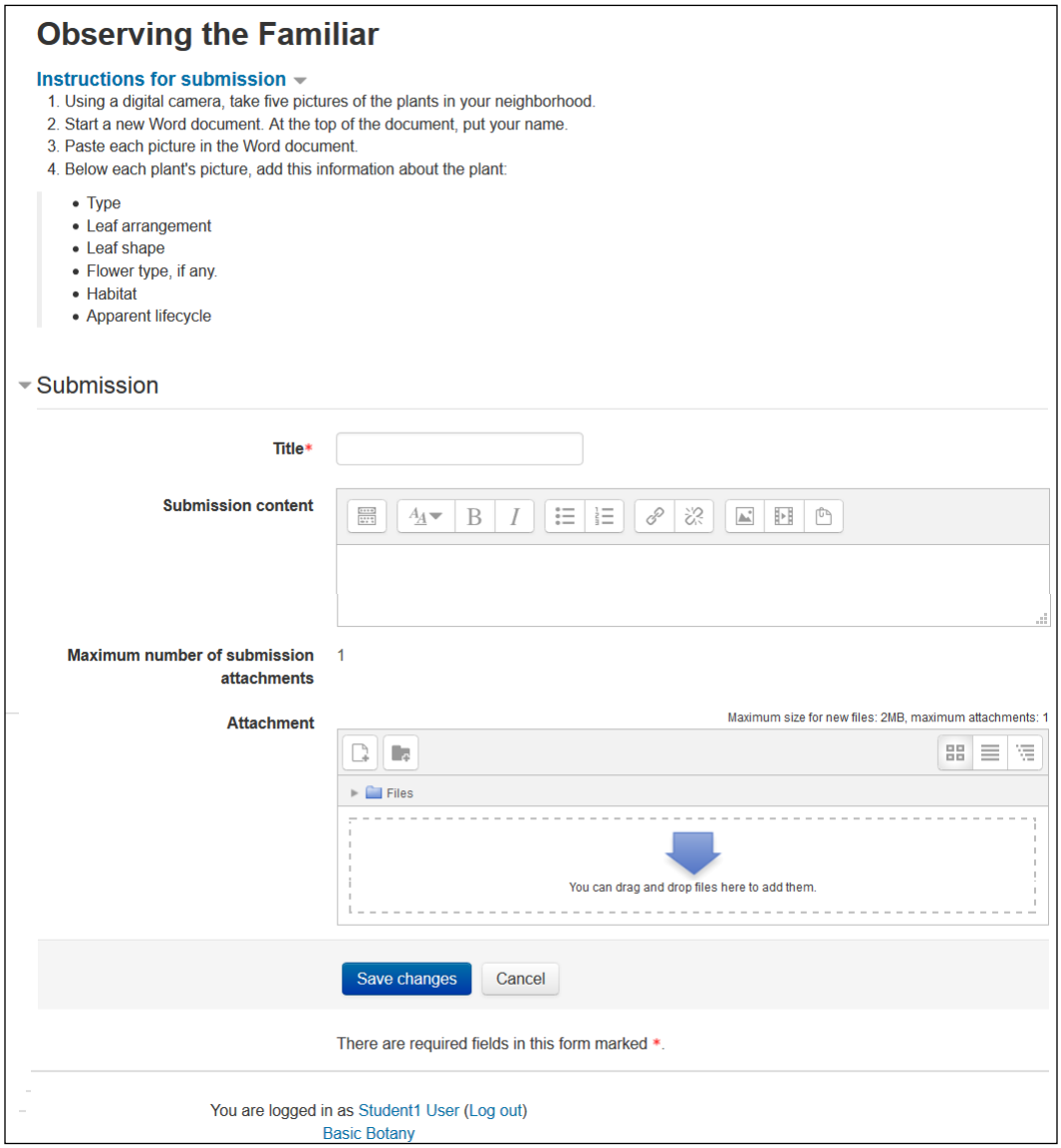
Next, the student will enter a workshop called **Observing the Familiar**.

In this workshop, the student writes and updates some defined observations. These observations are then rated by other students in the course. When the student first enters the workshop, he or she sees directions for completing the workshop, as seen in the next screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

After reading these directions, the student continues to the workshop submission form, which is seen in the next screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

Notice the online editor that the student uses to write the assignment. This gives the student basic **What You See Is What You Get** (**WYSIWYG**) features. The same word processor appears when the course creators create web pages, when students write online assignment entries, and at other times when a user is editing and formatting text.

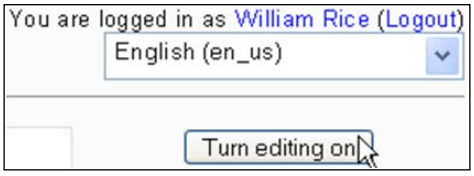
Moodle can be configured to use several different kinds of editors. Depending upon your exact version and how your site administrator configures your site, yours might differ slightly from what is shown here.

Editing mode

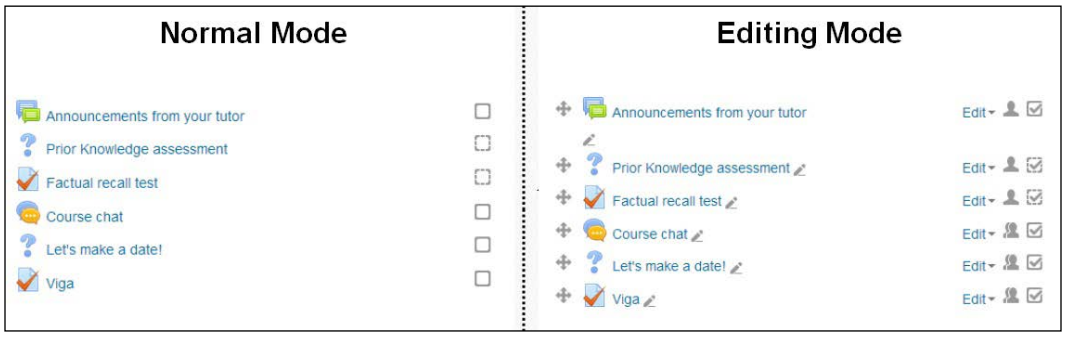
We've been looking at Moodle from a student's perspective. Students usually don't edit course material. Let us see what happens when you turn on the editing mode to make changes.

Normal mode versus editing mode

When a Guest user or a registered student browses through your learning site, Moodle displays the pages normally. However, when someone with a course editing privilege enters a course, Moodle offers a button for switching into editing mode:



Clicking **Turn editing on** puts Moodle into editing mode:

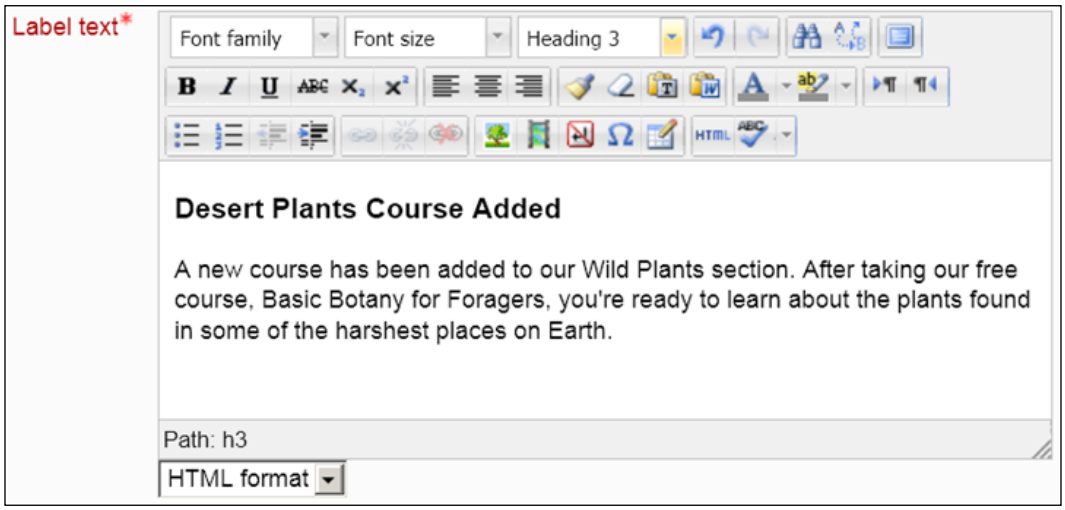


Let's walk through the icons that become available in editing mode.

www.it-ebooks.info

The edit icon

Clicking the edit icon enables you to edit whatever that icon follows. In this example, clicking the edit icon that follows the paragraph enables you to edit the section description:



Clicking the edit icon next to the quiz **Win a Prize: Test Your Knowledge of E-mail History**, takes you into the editing window for that quiz. In that window, you can create, add, and remove quiz questions, change the grading scheme, and apply other settings to the quiz.

The delete icon

Clicking the delete icon deletes whatever item the icon follows. If you want to remove an item from a course but are not sure if you'll want to use it later, don't delete the item. Instead, hide it from view. Hiding and showing is explained in the next paragraph.

www.it-ebooks.info

The hidden/shown icons

I call these the hidden/shown icons / instead of hide/show because the icons indicate the current state of an item, instead of indicating what will happen when you click on them. The hidden icon indicates that an item is hidden from the students.

Clicking it shows the item to the students. The show icon indicates that an item is shown to the students. Clicking it hides the item from the students.

If you want to remove an item from a course while keeping it for later use, or if you want to keep an item hidden from students while you're working on it, hide it instead of deleting it.

The group icons

These icons indicate what group mode has been applied to an item. Groups are explained in *Chapter 12, Groups and Cohorts*. For now, you should know that you can control access to items based upon what group a student belongs to. Clicking these icons enable you to change that setting.

Resources and activities

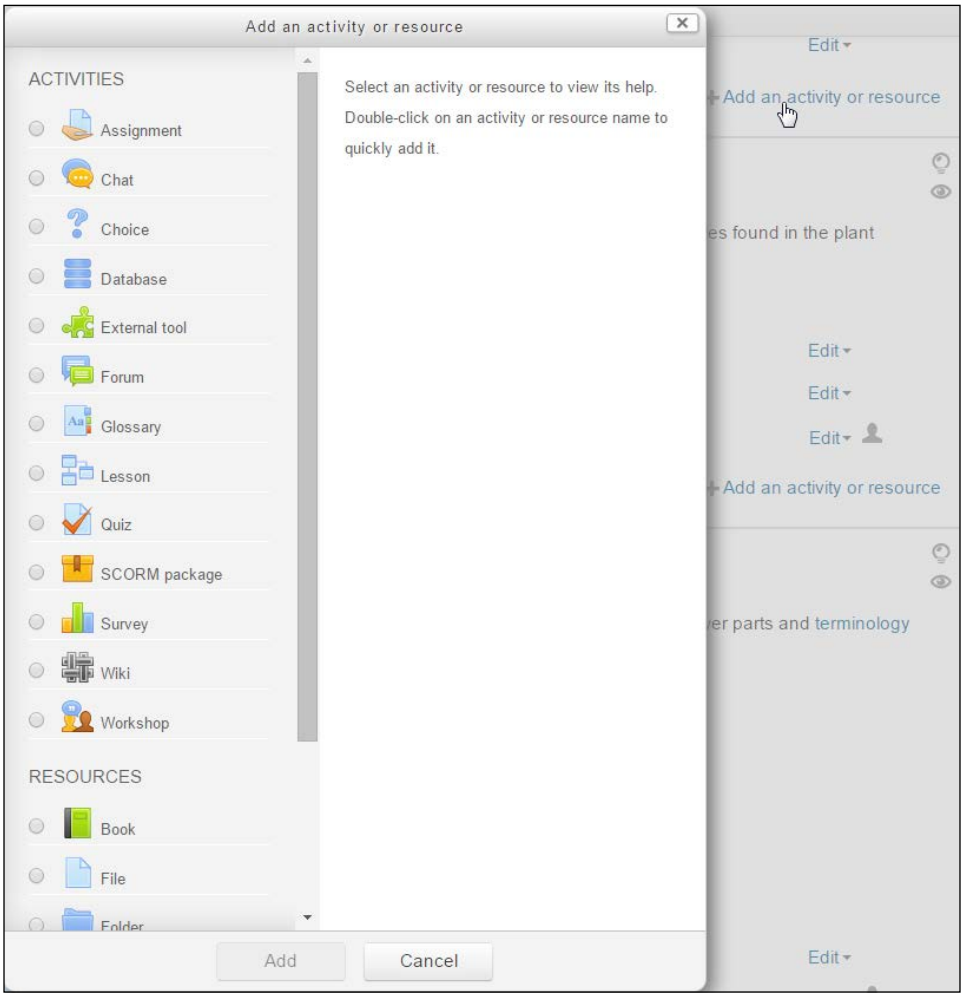
The course material that a student observes or reads, such as web or text pages, hyperlinks, and multimedia files are called resources. Course materials that a student interacts with, or that enables interaction among students and teachers, are called activities. Now, let us see how to add some resources and activities to your Moodle site or course.

In editing mode, you can add resources and activities to a course. Moodle offers more activities than resources, such as chat, forum, quiz, wiki, and more.

www.it-ebooks.info

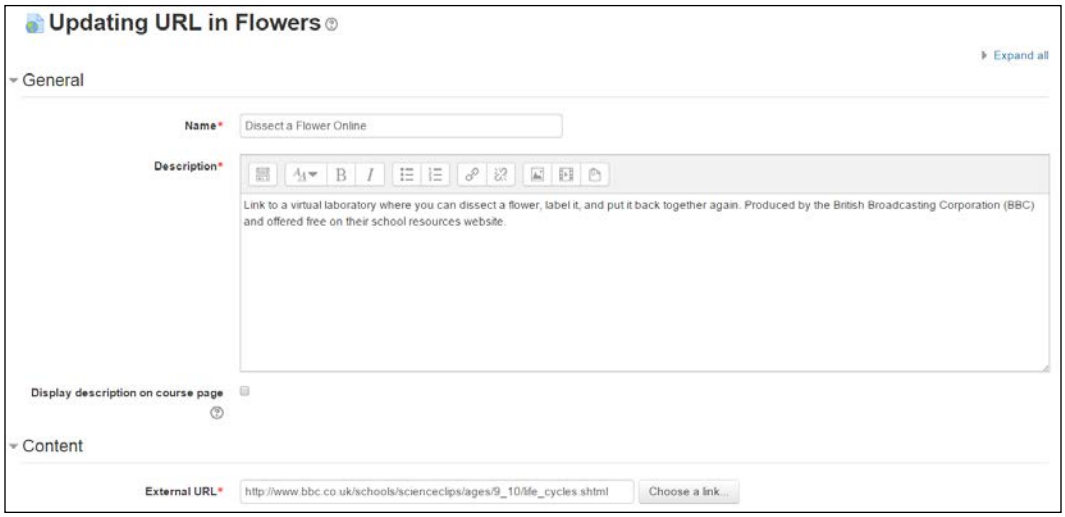
Adding resources and activities

You add resources and activities by using the drop-down menu that appears in editing mode, as seen in the following screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

Selecting an item brings you to the editing settings page for that type of item. For example, selecting **URL** displays the window seen in the following screenshot. Notice that you can do much more than just specify a hyperlink. You can give this link a user-friendly name, a summary description, open it in a new window, and more.



Every resource and activity that you add to Moodle has a description. This description appears when a student selects the item. Also, if the item appears in a list (for example, a list of all the resources in a course), the description will be displayed.

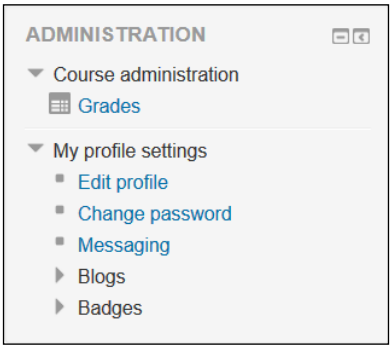
When building courses, you will spend most of your time in the edit settings pages for the items that you add. You will find their behavior and appearance to be very consistent. The presence of a description is one example of that consistency. Another example is the presence of the help icon next to the title of the window. Clicking this icon displays an explanation of this type of item.

Also, the edit settings pages are divided into sections. Some sections are present for almost every resource and activity that you add. These sections are covered once in this book, in order to avoid repetition.

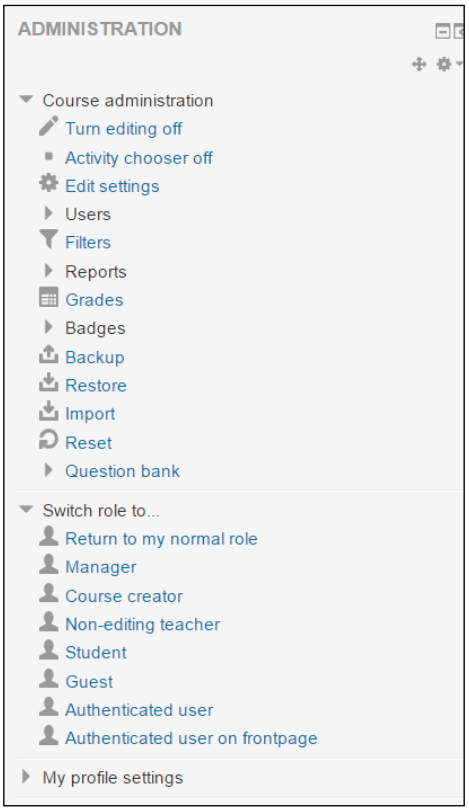
www.it-ebooks.info

The administration menu

The contents of the **Administration** menu change depending upon who is logged in. For example, the next screenshot shows the **Administration** menu when a student is in one of our courses:

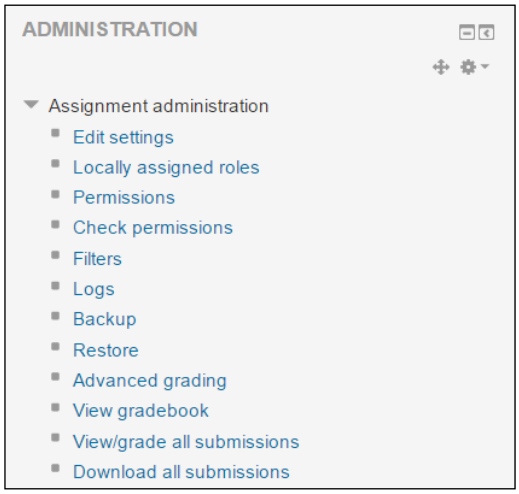


The following screenshot shows the teacher's view of the **Administration** menu:



www.it-ebooks.info

The choices on this menu apply to the course itself. If a teacher, administrator, or course creator selects an activity or resource in the course, the user is taken inside that activity/resource. Then, the **Administration** submenu for that item will appear. In the example seen in the following screenshot, the teacher has selected an assignment and is looking at the **Administration** submenu for that assignment:



This short tour introduced you to the basics of the Moodle experience. The following chapters take you through installing Moodle and creating courses. If you work through those chapters in order, you will discover many more features that are not mentioned in this tour. And, because Moodle is open source, new features can be added at any time. Perhaps you will be the one to contribute a new feature to the Moodle community.

The Moodle architecture

Moodle runs on any web server that supports the PHP programming language and a database. It works best, and there is more support, when running on the Apache web server with a MySQL database. These requirements—Apache, PHP, and MySQL—are common to almost all commercial web hosts, even the lowest-cost ones.

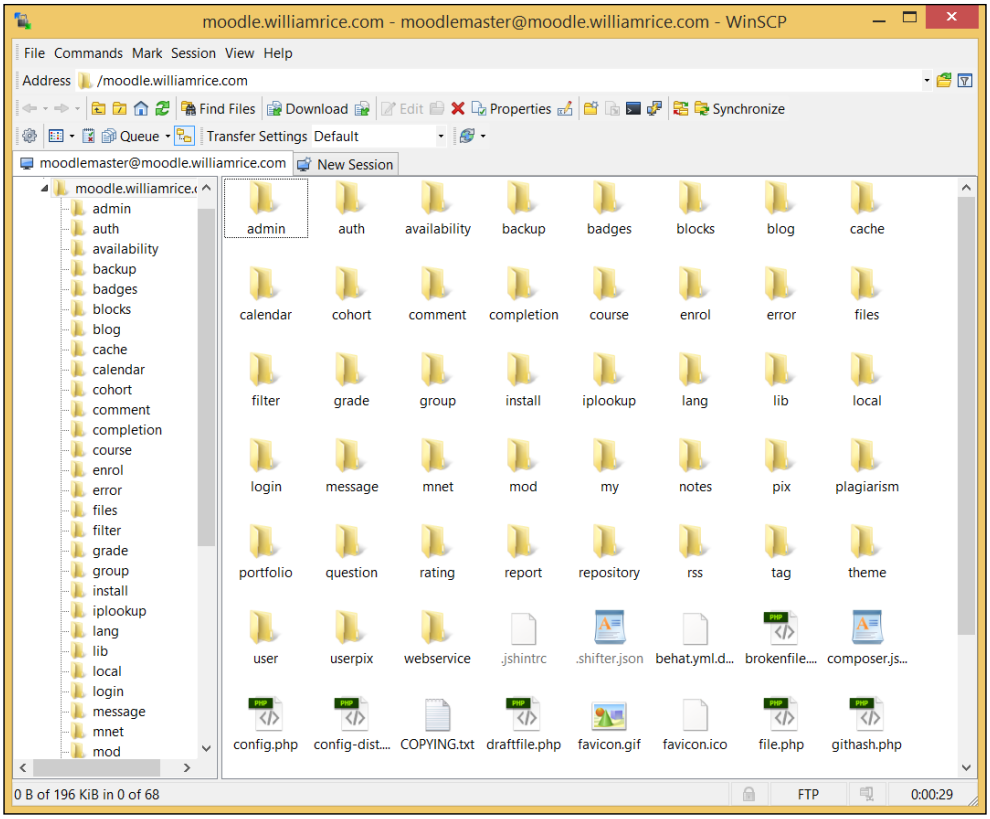
www.it-ebooks.info

The Moodle learning management system resides in three places on your web host:

- The application occupies one directory, with many subdirectories for the various modules
- Data files that the students and teachers upload—such as photos and assignments submitted by students—reside in the Moodle data directory
- Course material that you create with Moodle (web pages, quizzes, workshops, lessons, and so on), grades, user information, and user logs reside in the Moodle database

The Moodle application directory

The following screenshot shows you my Moodle application directory. Without even knowing much about Moodle, you can guess the function of several of the directories. For example, the `admin` directory holds the PHP code that creates the administrative pages, the `lang` directory holds translations of the Moodle interface, and the `mod` directory holds the various modules:



www.it-ebooks.info

The `index.php` file is the Moodle home page. If a student was browsing my Moodle site, the first page that the student would read is the file `http://moodle.williamrice.com/index.php`.

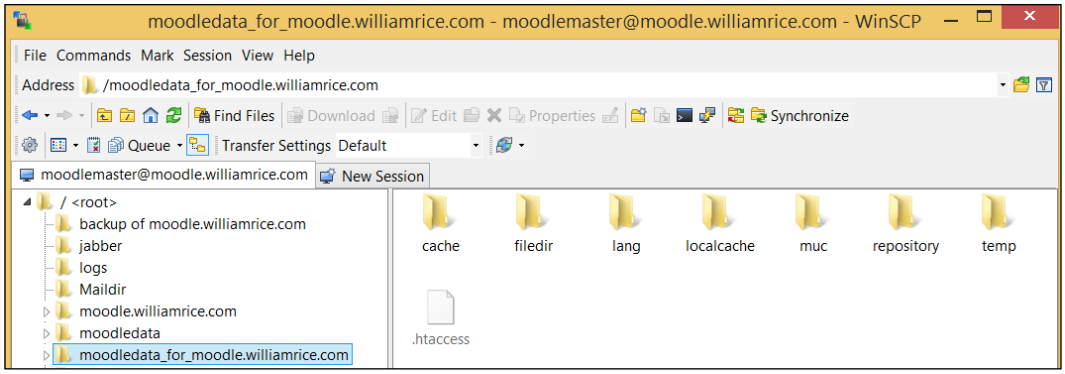
On my site, the free course *Basic Botany for Foragers* happens to be course number 4. Only the Moodle system knows it as course number 4; we know it as *Basic Botany for Foragers*. When a student enters that course, the URL in the student's browser reads `http://moodle.williamrice.com/moodle/course/view.php?id=4`. In the preceding screenshot, you can see that `/course` is one of the directories in my Moodle installation. As the user navigates around the site, different `.php` pages do the work of presenting information.

Because each of Moodle's core components and modules is in its own subdirectory, the software can be easily updated by replacing the old files with new ones. You should periodically check the `https://www.moodle.org` website for news about updates and bug fixes.

The Moodle data directory

Moodle stores the files uploaded by the users in a data directory. This directory should not be accessible to the general public over the web. That is, you should not be able to type in the URL for this directory and access it using a web browser. You can protect it either by using an `.htaccess` file or by placing the directory outside of the web server's documents directory.

The preceding screenshot shows you that in my installation, the web document directory for `moodle.williamrice.com` is `/www/moodle`. Therefore, I placed the data directory outside `/www/moodle`, in `/www/moodledata_for_moodle.williamrice.com`, as seen in the following screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

On my server, the directory `/www/moodledata` corresponds to the subdomain `www.moodledata.williamrice.com`. This subdomain is protected from open access by a `.htaccess` file. The directory `/www/www` corresponds to the root domain, `www.williamrice.com`.

The Moodle database

While the Moodle data directory stores the files uploaded by students, the Moodle database stores most of the information in your Moodle site. The database stores objects that you create using Moodle. For example, Moodle enables you to create web pages for your courses. The actual HTML code for these web pages is stored in the database. Links that you add to a course, the settings, the content of forums and wikis, and quizzes created with Moodle, are all examples of data stored in the Moodle database.

The three parts of Moodle—the application, data directory, and database, work together to create your learning site. Backup and disaster recovery are an obvious application of this knowledge. However, knowing how the three parts work together is also helpful when upgrading, troubleshooting, and moving your site between servers.

Summary

Moodle encourages exploration and interaction among students and teachers. As a course designer and teacher, you will have the maximum number of tools at your disposal if you work with this tendency, which will make your learning experiences as interactive as possible. Creating courses with forums, peer-assessed workshops, surveys, and interactive lessons is more work than creating a course from a series of static web pages. However, it is also more engaging and effective, and you will find it worth the effort to use Moodle's many interactive features.

When teaching an online course in Moodle, remember that Moodle generally enables you to add, move, and modify course material on the fly. If it's permitted by your institution's policies, don't hesitate to change a course in response to student needs.

Finally, learn the basics of Moodle's architecture, and at least read over the installation and configuration in *Chapter 2*, *Installing Moodle*. Don't be afraid of the technology. If you can master the difficult art of teaching, you can master using Moodle to its full potential.

www.it-ebooks.info

2
Installing Moodle

Even if you don't install Moodle yourself, you should skim this chapter for information that will be helpful to you as a course manager and creator. That is because the choices made during Moodle's installation can affect how the system works for people who create, teach, and take courses on that system.

Installing Moodle consists of:

1. Obtaining space and rights on a web server that has the capabilities needed to run Moodle.
2. Creating the subdomains and/or directories needed for Moodle and its data.
3. Getting and unpacking Moodle, and uploading it to your web server.
4. Creating the data directory.
5. Creating the Moodle database.
6. Activating the installation routine and specifying settings for your Moodle site.
7. Selecting front page settings.

Each of these is covered in the following sections.

Installation step 1 – the web server

Moodle is run from a web server. You upload or place Moodle in your directory on the server. Usually, the server is someone's computer. If you're a teacher, or are in the corporate world, your institution might have their own web server. If you're an individual or have a small business, you will probably buy web-hosting services from another company. In either case, we are assuming that you have an account on a web server that offers Apache, PHP, and MySQL.

www.it-ebooks.info

If you must install your own Apache web server and MySQL software, the easiest way to do so is to use another open source tool — XAMPP from `http://www.apachefriends.org`. Apache Friends is a non-profit project to promote the Apache web server. XAMPP is an easy, all-in-one installer that installs Apache, MySQL, PHP, and Perl. It is available for Linux, Windows, Mac, and Solaris. If you would like to create a test environment for Moodle, then installing XAMPP onto your computer will install the web server with the components required to support a Moodle installation.

You can also download a package containing Moodle and the other software needed to make it run: Apache, MySQL and PHP. Go to the official Moodle website (`https://moodle.org/`), and under **Downloads,** look for installer packages.

How much hosting service do you need?

With only a few dozen students, Moodle runs fine on a modest web-hosting service. At this time, many hosting companies offer services that can run a small Moodle installation for between 20 $ and 50 $ a month. A hosting service meeting the minimum requirements that are listed on `http://www.moodle.org` will support five concurrent students. Base your decision upon the factors discussed as follows:

Disk space

A fresh Moodle installation will occupy less than 100 MB of disk space, which is not much. The content that is added while the users create and take courses will probably grow larger than that. Base your decision on how much space to obtain upon the kinds of courses that you plan to deliver. If the courses contain mostly text and a few graphics, you'll need less space than if they contain music and video files. Also, consider the disk space occupied by files that the students will upload. Will the students upload small word processing files? Large graphics? Huge multimedia files? When determining how much disk space you will need, consider the size of the files that your courses will serve and that your students will submit. The size of files that can be uploaded is controlled by the site administrator, using a setting under **Security | Site Policies | Maximum Uploaded File Size**. It is also controlled by a setting on the web server that is hosting Moodle. The lower of these two settings—the Moodle setting and the server setting—determines the size of the files that can be uploaded through Moodle.

www.it-ebooks.info

Bandwidth

Moodle is a web-based product, so course content and assignments are added over the Web. Whenever a reader or a user connects to a website, they're using bandwidth. When a user reads a page on your Moodle site, downloads a video, or uploads a paper, he or she uses some of your bandwidth. The more courses, students, activities, and multimedia that your Moodle site has, the more bandwidth you will use. Most commercial hosting services include a fixed amount of bandwidth in their service. If your account uses more bandwidth than what is allowed, some services will cut off your site's access. Others keep your site up, but automatically bill you for the additional bandwidth. The second option is preferable in case of unexpected demand. When deciding upon a hosting service, find out how much bandwidth they offer and what they do if you exceed that limit.

Are you serving videos with your course?

If your course includes many videos, or if you'll be serving video to many users, that can use up a lot of the bandwidth that your hosting company provides. Instead of hosting those videos on your Moodle server, consider hosting them on a dedicated video hosting site like `http://www.vimeo.com` or `http://www.youtube.com`. Then you can just embed them in your Moodle page. Vimeo, **YouTube**, or whoever hosts the video will take care of the bandwidth.

Memory

If you're using a shared hosting service, your account will be sharing a web server with other accounts. All accounts share the memory, or RAM, of that server. During times of high demand, only a low amount of memory will be available for each account. During times of low demand, your account might be able to use more memory.

For a few students at a time, Moodle runs fine on most shared hosting services. However, when you have more than three or five students, or a large number of courses, or large courses, you will want to move to a **Virtual Private Server** (**VPS**) or a dedicated server.

Moodle's automated backup routine often fails on shared hosts with low memory limits. Site administrators get around this limitation by manually backing up their site one course at a time, or by moving to a different host.

In general, 1 GB of RAM on your server will serve 10 simultaneous users. Note that your memory needs will be determined, not by the total number of users but the number of simultaneous users.

www.it-ebooks.info

When looking for a hosting service, consider using one that enables you to move from a shared host to a private host. Shared hosts are inexpensive, but you are sharing the hosting computer's memory and bandwidth with all the other sites on the host. A dedicated hosting service is more expensive, but you are getting a guaranteed amount of memory and bandwidth. Some companies enable you to move from a shared to a private host with just a few clicks. This enables you to respond quickly if your site suddenly becomes popular.

Ensuring minimum prerequisites

Check with your hosting service to ensure that you will be given the following minimum prerequisites:

- Enough disk space for the Moodle software, your course material, and the files that the students will upload.
- FTP access to your server.
- Enough bandwidth to serve your course files, and for the students to upload their files.
- PHP version 5.4.4.
- The ability to create at least one database, or to have it created for you.
- The ability to create at least one database user, or to have it created for you.
- Enough shared or dedicated memory to run Moodle's automated backup routines. You might not know how much that is until you've tried it.

When you can confirm that you have those items, you are ready to proceed with the installation.

Many hosting services also offer automated installation of Moodle. Search for hosting services using the terms *fantastico* and *moodle*, or *one-click install* and *moodle*. These are usually shared hosting services, so you will have the same performance limitations as if you installed Moodle yourself on a shared host. However, they simplify the installation and thus provide a fast, inexpensive way to get a Moodle site up and running.

Automated installations are not always the latest version. And, they often limit the ability to install additional plugins and to customize your site. Check with your hosting company about when they roll out new versions, and the limits on customizing it.

You should also research the services offered by the official Moodle partners. You can find out more about Moodle partners on `http://www.moodle.com` (notice the *dot com* and not *dot org* address).

www.it-ebooks.info

Installation step 2 – subdomain or subdirectory?

A subdomain is a Web address that exists under your web address, and acts like an independent site. For example, my website is `www.williamrice.com`. This is a standard website, not a Moodle site. I could have a subdomain, `http://www.moodle.williamrice.com`, to hold a Moodle site. This subdomain would be like an independent site. However, it exists on the same server, under the same account, and they both count towards the disk space and the bandwidth that I use.

In this example, Moodle is installed in the subdomain `http://www.moodle.williamrice.com`.

Using a subdomain offers me several advantages. Having a site to test updates and add-ons may be helpful if uninterrupted service is important to you. Later, you'll see how easy it is to copy a Moodle installation to a different location, change a few settings, and have it work. If you want to do this, make sure the hosting service you choose allows subdomains.

If you want to keep things simpler, you can install Moodle into a subdirectory of your website. For example, `http://www.williamrice.com/moodle`. In the next step, you will see how Moodle can automatically install itself into a subdirectory called `/moodle`. This is very convenient and you'll find a lot of websites with Moodle running in the `/moodle` subdirectory.

Decide if you want to install Moodle into a subdirectory or a subdomain. If you choose a subdomain, create it now. If you choose a subdirectory, you can create it later, while uploading the Moodle software.

Installation step 3 – getting and unpacking Moodle

Get Moodle from the official website, `http://www.moodle.org/`. Go to the **Download Moodle** page and select the version and format that you need.

www.it-ebooks.info

Choosing a Moodle version

For a new installation, the *latest stable branch* is usually your best choice. The *last build* information tells you when it was last updated with a bug-fix or a patch. This is usually irrelevant to you; the version number determines which features you get, not the build time.

For a production server, do not use the standalone packages mentioned before. They are insecure, because they are meant for use by a Moodle developer for experimentation and development. To make the development of a site easier and faster, security settings that would slow down development have been turned off by default. Standalone packages are a good choice if you want to experiment or develop a Moodle site on your local (non-networked) computer.

For a production site, instead of the standalone packages, use the latest stable branch.

The quick way – upload and unzip

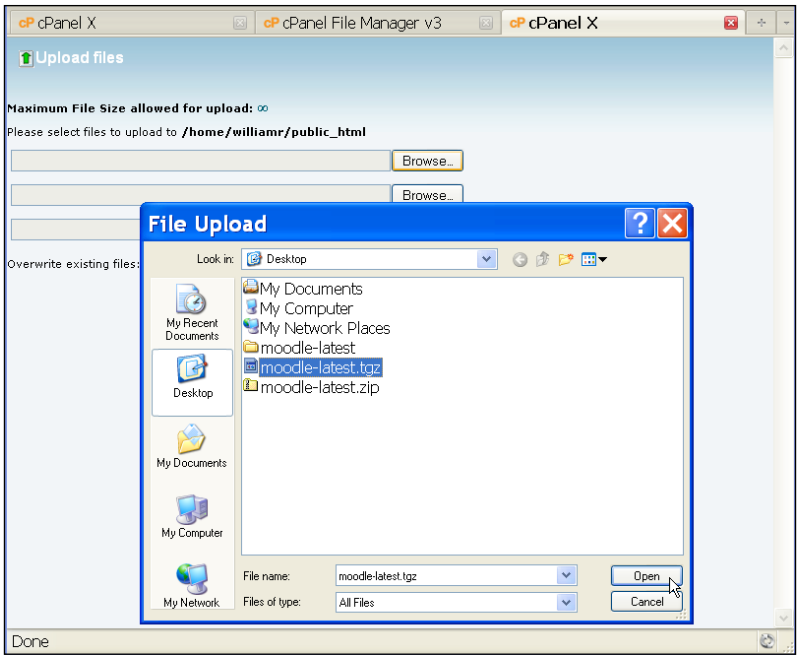
Moodle is downloaded as a single, compressed file. This compressed file contains the many small files and directories that constitute Moodle. After downloading the compressed file, you could decompress (or unzip) the file. Unzipping it on your local PC will extract many files and directories that you must place on your server.

If you're using a hosting service, they might have the ability to decompress the file on the server. If so, you can just upload the entire zip file, tell the server to decompress it, and all your Moodle files will be in place. This is much faster than decompressing the zip file on your computer and uploading the many files that it creates.

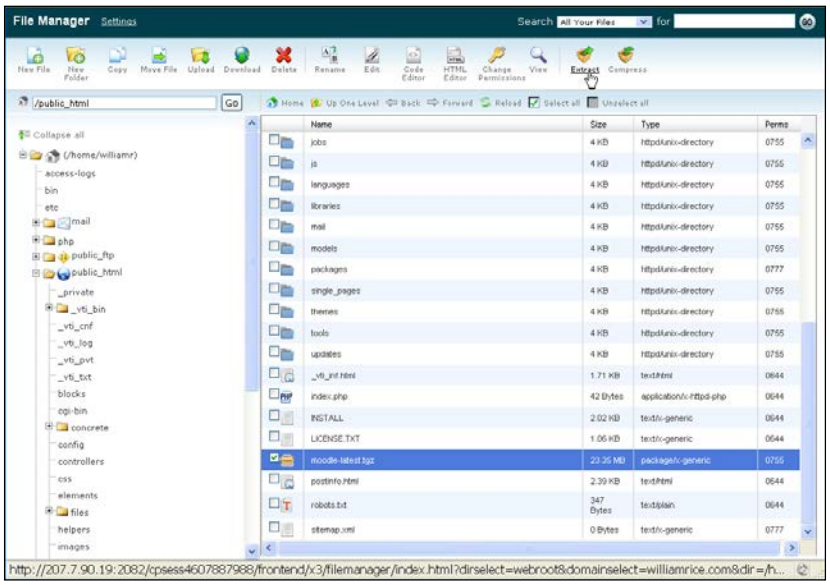
Uploading and decompressing the zip file on the server

1. Go to `http://www.moodle.org/` and download the Moodle package (ZIP or TAR file) to your local hard drive.
2. Upload the file to your hosting service. My hosting service uses the popular **cPanel** control panel, so uploading a file looks as the following screenshot:

www.it-ebooks.info

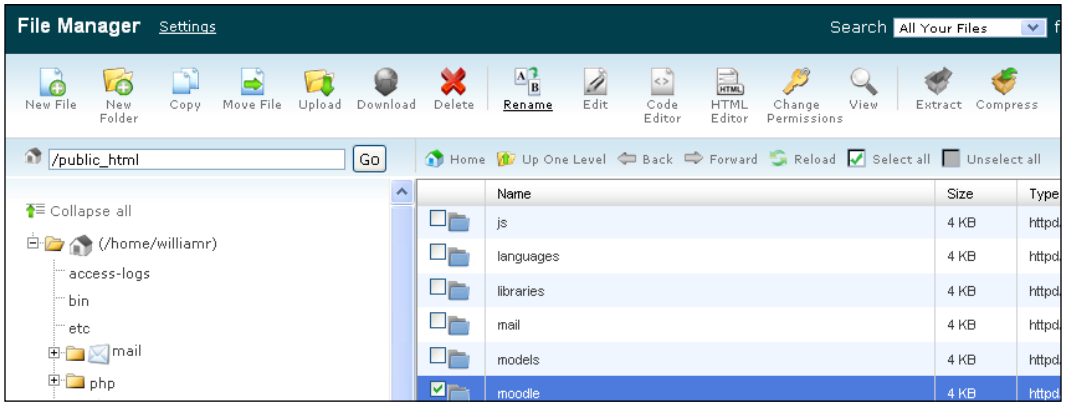


3. In your hosting service's control panel, select the compressed file. If you're given a choice to unzip the file, then you can use this method. I have selected the compressed file, `moodle-latest.tgz`. When I click the **Extract** icon, the file will decompress, as seen in the following screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

4. If your hosting service gives you the option to create a new directory for the unzipped files (*Create subdirectory* in the preceding example), you can select not to do so. Moodle's compressed file will automatically create a subdirectory called `moodle` for the unzipped files. On my server, you can see the result. The directory `/moodle` is created, and the files are placed in that directory, as seen in the next screenshot:



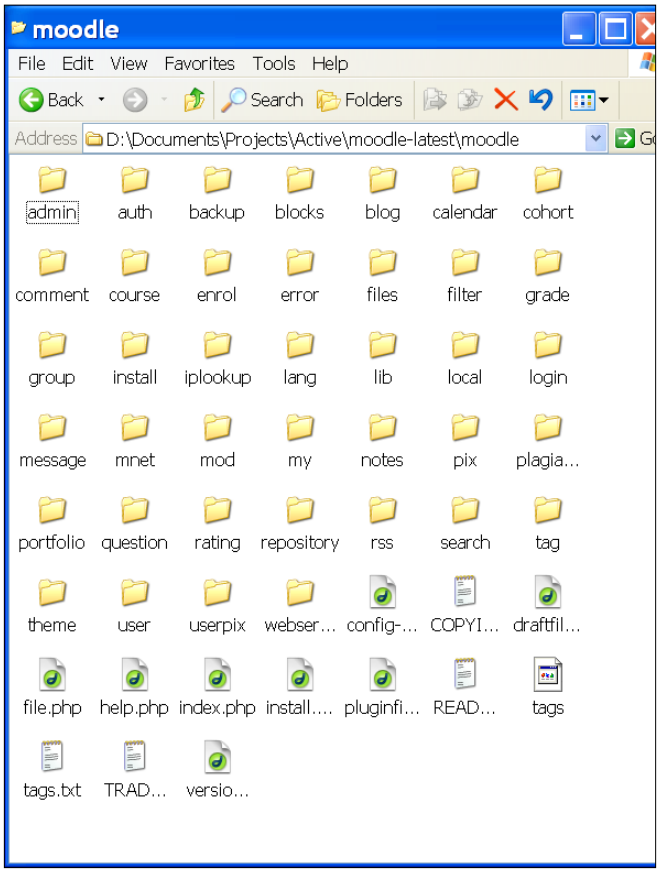
The long way – decompress the zip file locally and upload files

If you cannot decompress the zip file on the server, you must decompress the file on your PC and then upload the extracted files to the server. If you're using a hosting service, you will probably:

1. Download the Moodle package (ZIP file) to your local hard drive.

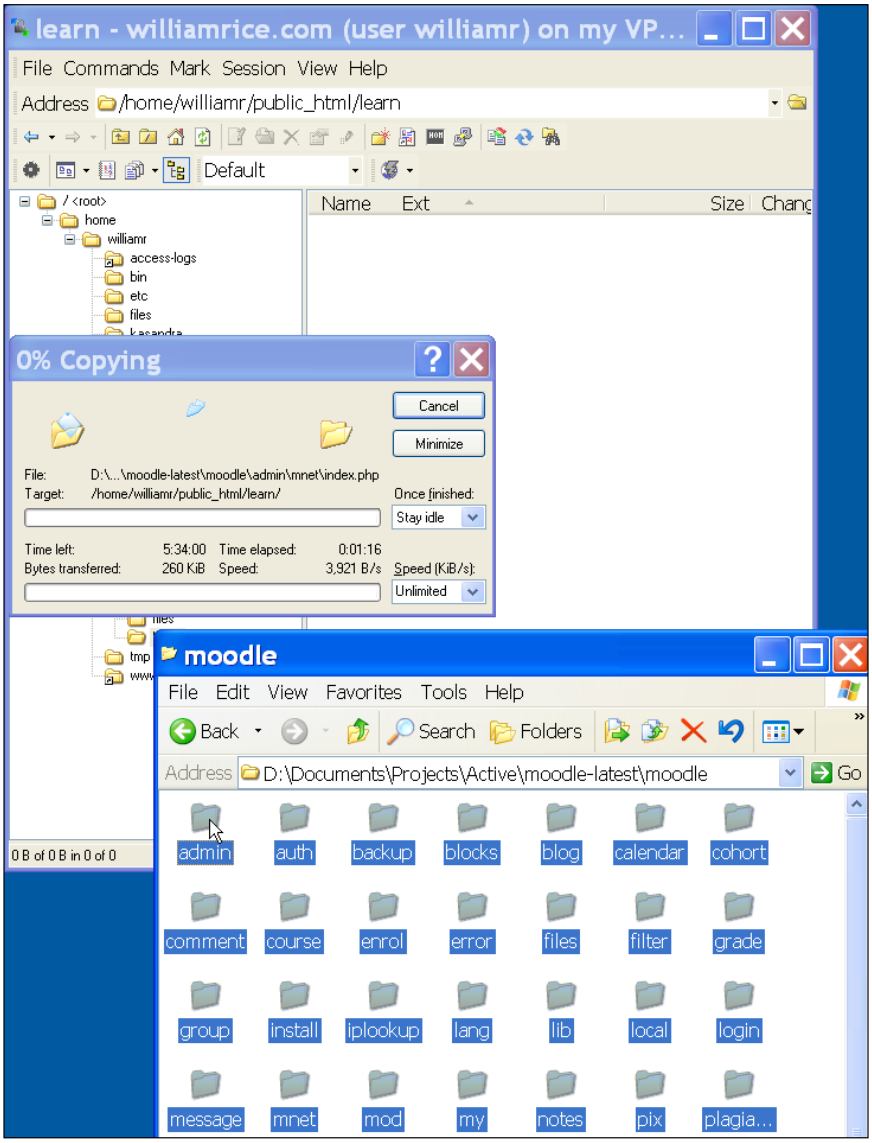
www.it-ebooks.info

2. Decompress or unzip, the package. This will create many folders and files on your hard drive, as shown in the following figure:



www.it-ebooks.info

3. Upload the files to your web server. You'll need to use an FTP program to upload the files. Some of the most popular ones are **FileZilla** and **WinSCP**. Select all the folders and copy them to your server. Uploading these many small files will be much slower than uploading a single large `.zip` or `.tgz` archive as you can make out from the following screenshot. So, be prepared to wait for the upload to finish:



www.it-ebooks.info

Whether you're using Windows, Mac, or a Linux personal computer, the ability to unzip `.zip` files is built into your system Also, you'll need an FTP client. Try `http://www.nonags.com` for freeware FTP clients.

If your school or company has given you space on their web server, you might have access to the directory just as if it were another folder on your PC. In that case, you can download the `.tgz` file, put it into your directory on the web server, and then decompress it. Tell the system administrator who gave you access what you want to do, and ask how to decompress a file in your directory.

You can decompress the file using the following steps:

1. Go to `http://moodle.org` and download the version of Moodle that you want to install. You will download a compressed file, in either `.zip` or `.tgz` format.
2. Upload the compressed file to your hosting service.
3. Using the control panel that your host gives you, select the compressed file. If it automatically decompresses, you're in luck. Go ahead and decompress it in place or decompress the file on your local PC, and upload the resulting files to your hosting service.

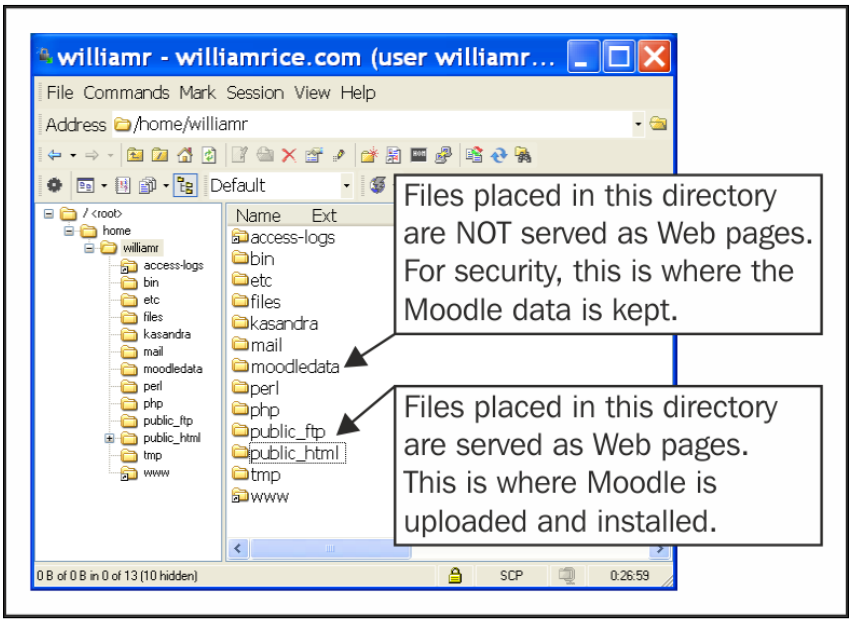
Installation step 4 – the Moodle data directory

When you run the Moodle install script, the installer asks you to specify a directory in which to store the course material. This is the Moodle data directory. It holds material that is uploaded to the courses. You will need to have this directory created before you run the install script. That is what you will do in this step.

For security, the Moodle data directory should be outside the main Moodle directory. For example, suppose you are creating a learning site called `www.williamrice.com/learn`. You will install Moodle into `/learn`, and create the Moodle data directory somewhere outside of `/learn`.

www.it-ebooks.info

Preferably, you will put the data directory somewhere that is not accessible over the Web. For example, on my hosting service, anything put into the directory `/public_html` is served over the Web. Anything outside of that directory cannot be seen over the Web as shown in the following screenshot:



You should check with your hosting service's technical support to see if you can create a directory that is not accessible to the Web.

On your server, create a directory to hold the Moodle data. This can be a directory outside of the Moodle directory or a subdirectory.

Installation step 5 – creating the Moodle database and user

While the Moodle data directory stores files uploaded by students and some larger files, the Moodle database stores most of the information in your Moodle site. By default, the installer uses the database name `moodle` and the username `moodleuser`. Using these default settings gives any hacker a head start on breaking your site. When creating your database, change these to something less common. At least make the hackers guess the name of your database and the database username.

www.it-ebooks.info

You should also choose a strong password for the Moodle database user. The following are some recommendations for strong passwords:

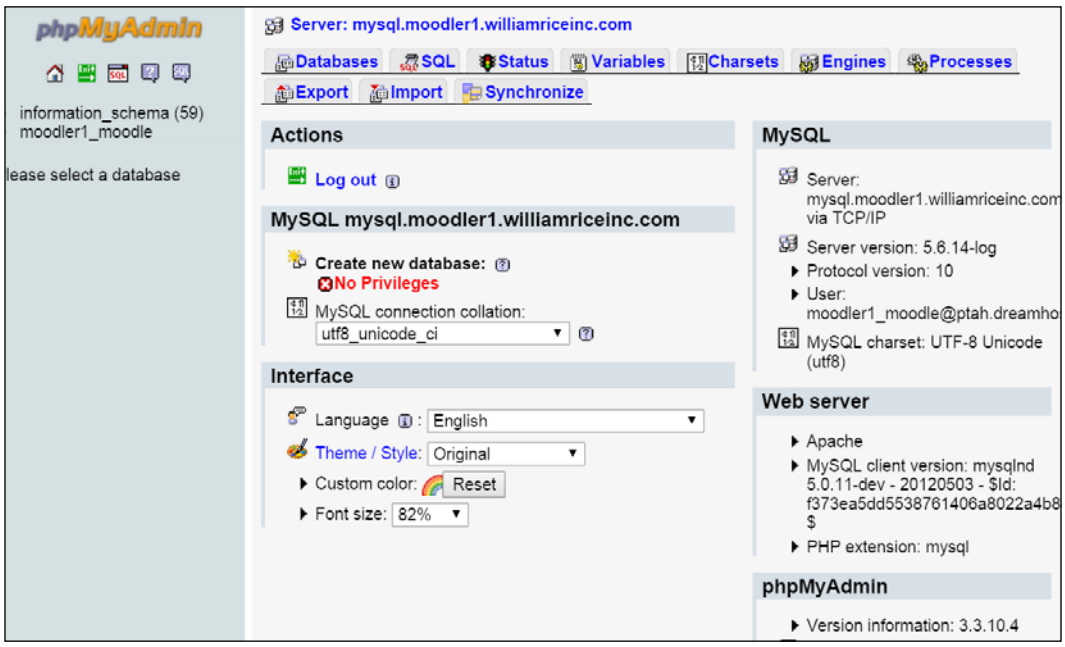
- Include at least one number, one symbol, one uppercase letter, and one lowercase letter
- Make the password at least 12 characters long
- Avoid repetition, dictionary words, letter or number sequences, and anything based on biographical information about yourself

You will need to create the Moodle database and the database user before you run Moodle's installation routine. Otherwise, the installation process will stop until you create the required database.

Creating the database

Moodle can use several types of databases. The recommended type is MySQL. There are many ways to create a database. If you are using a shared hosting service, you might have access to **phpMyAdmin**. You can use this to create the Moodle database and database user.

Following is a screenshot of creating the database using **phpMyAdmin**:



www.it-ebooks.info

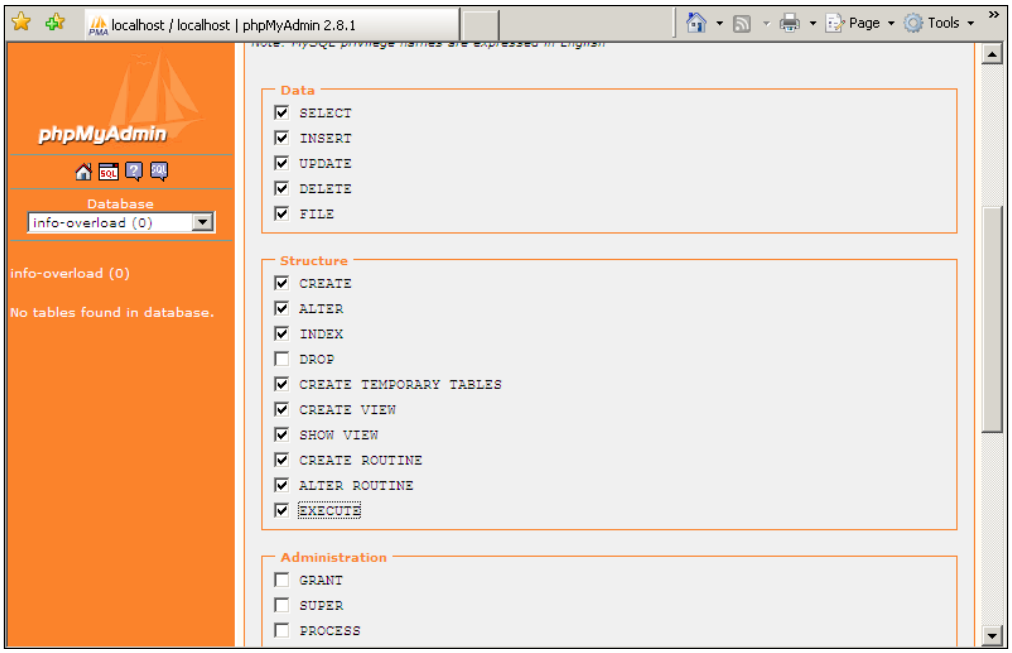
If your hosting service uses the cPanel control panel, you might use cPanel to create a database:

This process will create a blank database. Moodle will add the necessary database tables during the installation routine. So unless the installation routine fails, you don't need to do anything more to the database.

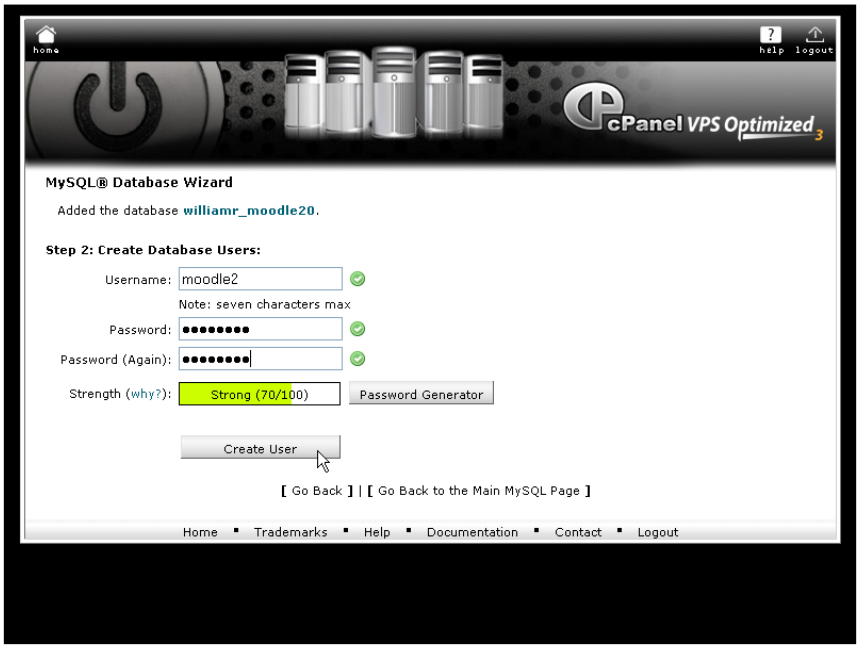
Creating the database user

Whatever username you use, that user will need the following privileges for the Moodle database: `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `CREATE`, `INDEX`, and `ALTER`. In the following screenshot, I've created the database user and am specifying the user's privileges with **phpMyAdmin**:

www.it-ebooks.info



Or, if your hosting service uses cPanel, you might use that to create the database user, as seen in the following screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

Later, during the installation routine, you will enter the name of the database, the database user, and the database user's password. If you're not creating this yourself, you will need to get them from your system administrator or whoever creates them.

At this point, you should create the Moodle database and the database user with the following steps:

1. Create the Moodle database. Moodle works best with a MySQL database, but you have a variety of choices.
2. Create a database user with the privileges listed earlier. Take note of the user's password.
3. Take note of the following information:
    - The name of the server that holds your database. If the database and Moodle are on the same server, this will probably be localhost. If you're not sure, ask your system administrator for the path that your Moodle software would use to access the database server_____
    - The name of the database:_____
    - The name of the database user:_____
    - The database user's password:_____

Installation step 6 – the installer script

At this point, you have:

1. Uploaded the Moodle software to your web server.
2. Created a data directory outside of the directory that Moodle is served from.
3. Created a database for Moodle to use.
4. Created a user for the Moodle database.

You are now ready to run the installation routine. Moodle's installer script walks you step by step through setting some of the configurations, and through the creation of Moodle's database tables. But first, some background information.

www.it-ebooks.info

Configuration settings and config.php

Configuration variables are settings that tell Moodle where the database is located, what the database is called, the database user and password, the web address of the Moodle system, and other necessary information. All of these configuration settings must be correct for Moodle to run. They are stored in a file called `config.php` in Moodle's home directory.

Stepping through the install routine creates `config.php`, among other things. The following is an example of a sample `config.php` file:

```
<?php  /// Moodle Configuration File

unset($CFG);

$CFG->dbtype    = 'mysqli';
$CFG->dblibrary = 'native';
$CFG->dbhost    = 'localhost';
$CFG->dbname    = 'info-overload';
$CFG->dbuser    = 'info-overload';
$CFG->dbpass    = 'badpassword';
$CFG->dbpersist =  false;
$CFG->prefix    = 'mdl_';
$CFG->dboptions = (
'dbpersist' => 0,
'dbport' => '',
'dbsocket' => '',
);

$CFG->wwwroot   = 'http://williamrice/learn';
$CFG->dirroot   = '/home/williamrice/www/learn';
$CFG->dataroot  = '/home/williamrice/www/info-overload-data';
$CFG->admin     = 'admin';

$CFG->directorypermissions = 00777;  // try 02777 on a server
in Safe Mode
```

This site uses a MySQL database. On most servers, the hostname will be localhost. In *Installation step 5 – creating the Moodle database and user*, we covered creating the Moodle database, we also created a database user, with the proper privileges. Note that the configuration file stores the password for the Moodle database, which in this example is `badpassword`.

www.it-ebooks.info

Database tables

Database tables are sections of your database. Each table in your database stores information that has a different purpose. For example, the table `user` stores the names, passwords, and some other information about each Moodle user. The table `wiki_pages` stores the name, content, date modified, and other information about each wiki page in your system. A standard Moodle installation creates over 200 tables in the database.

By default, the prefix `mdl_` is added to the beginning of each table that Moodle adds to your database. You could use the same database for Moodle and something else, or for two Moodle installations, if each program used its own tables with its own prefix. The different prefixes would prevent the two programs from becoming confused and reading each other's tables. If you're running more than one copy of Moodle, you might consider using the same database and different tables. You could back up the data for both copies by backing up the one database.

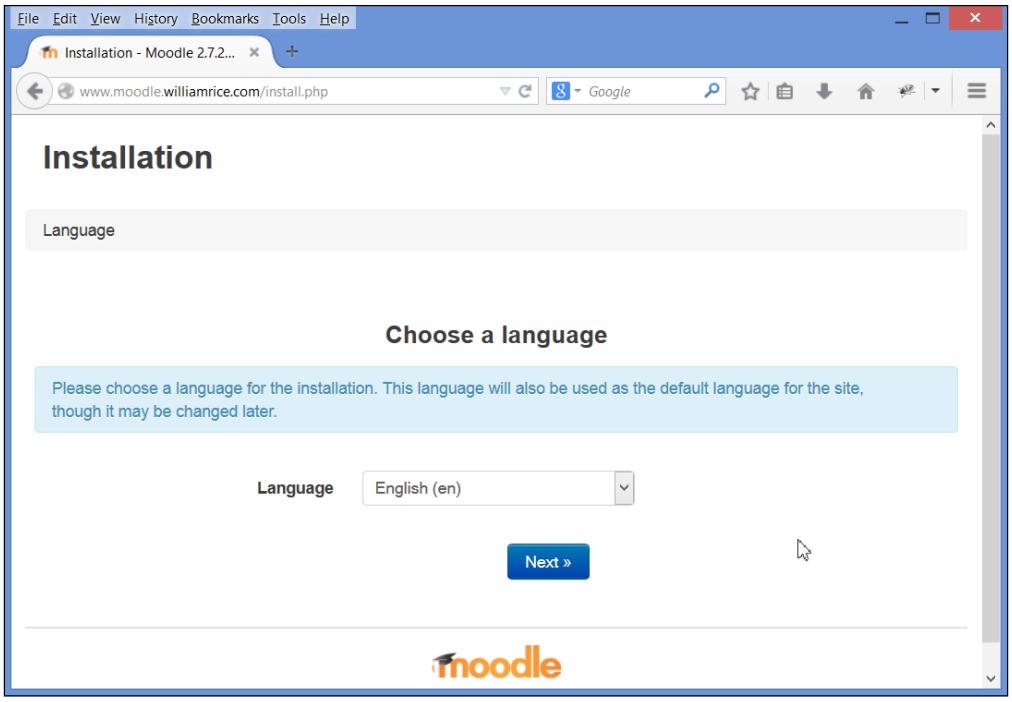
Now, in the subsections below, I will walk you through the Moodle installation routine.

Step 6a – run install.php

In the Moodle directory, a script called `install.php` creates the Moodle configuration file when the script is run. You run the script by just launching your browser and pointing it to wherever you've placed the Moodle software. The script creates `config.php`.

In the following screenshot, I've pointed my browser to the home page of my Moodle installation. Moodle begins the install routine by asking you to select the language for the installation. This is the language that the installer script will use.
It is not the language that your site will use. You can specify that later:

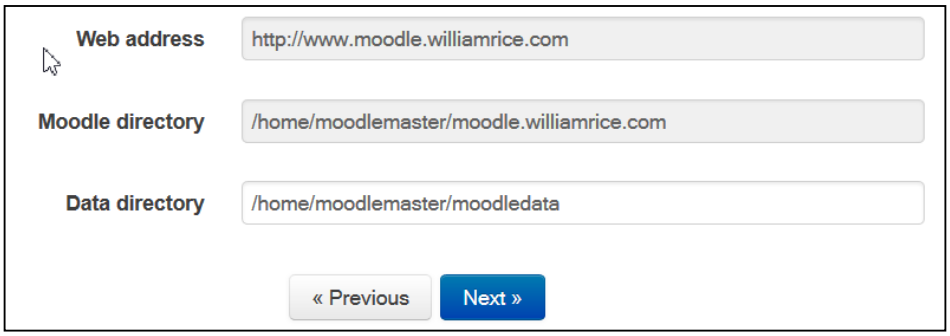
www.it-ebooks.info



After selecting the language that you want to use during the installation, click the **Next** button.

Step 6b – specify the web address and directories

Next, the installation routine asks for the web address of your Moodle system and the names of the directories for the software and the data, as seen in the following screenshot:



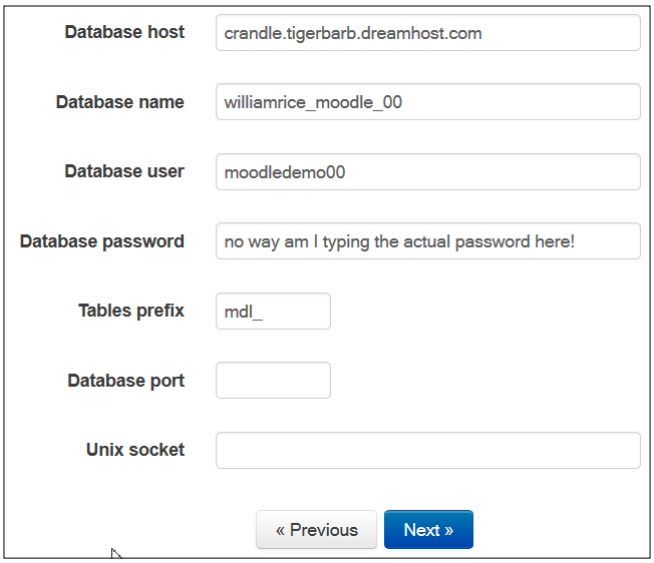
www.it-ebooks.info

The **Web address** is the URL that browsers use to access Moodle. The **Moodle directory** is filled in for you. This is the directory on your server, to which you uploaded the software. The **Data directory** is what you created in *Installation step 4 – the Moodle data directory*.

Fill in these values, and continue to the next step.

Step 6c - specify database settings

In this step, you specify the database that Moodle uses:



The **Database host** is the address of the computer that serves the database. On most servers, the hostname will be localhost. Think of it this way: Moodle and its database are on the same server, so they are local to one another. So, from Moodle's point of view, the database server is a local host.

If the database existed on another server, you would enter the IP address or web address of that server. In the preceding example, Moodle and the database are on different servers. Since Moodle needs to reach out over the Web to another machine, the entire address of the server is entered in the field.

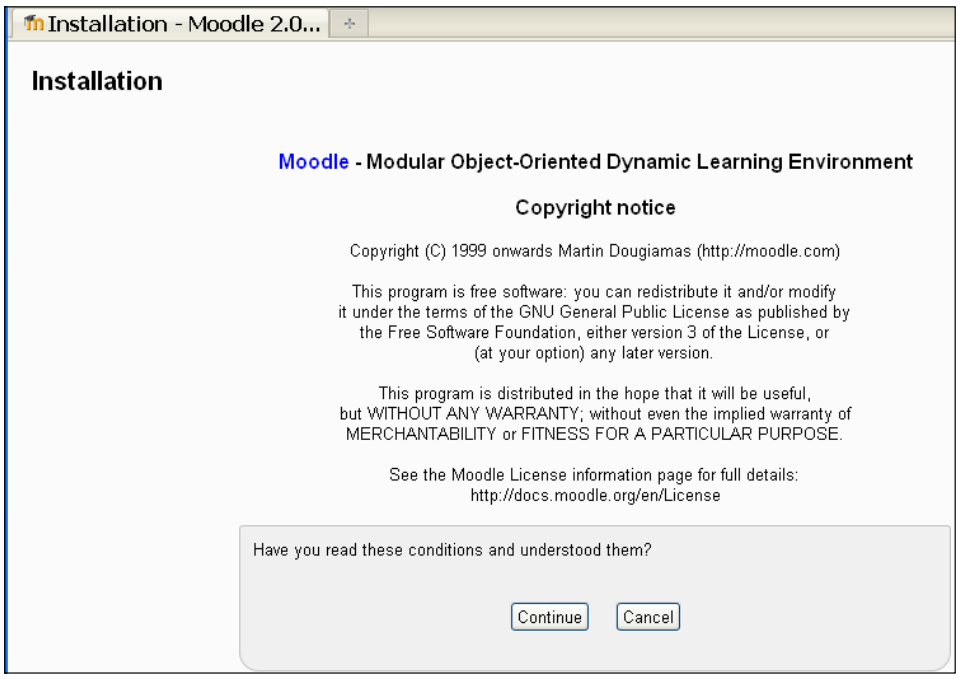
Fill in the **Database name**, **Database user**, and the **Database password** that you created in *Installation step 5 - creating the Moodle database and database user*.

www.it-ebooks.info

The **Tables prefix** will be added to the beginning of the name of every table that Moodle creates. If you use the same database for Moodle and something else, you can easily spot the tables used by Moodle from their prefix (`mdl_user`, `mdl_courses`, and so on.). Also, if you upgrade Moodle, you can use the same database for the old and the new versions by using different prefixes for their tables (for example, `mdl20_user` versus `mdl21_user`).

Step 6d - copyright

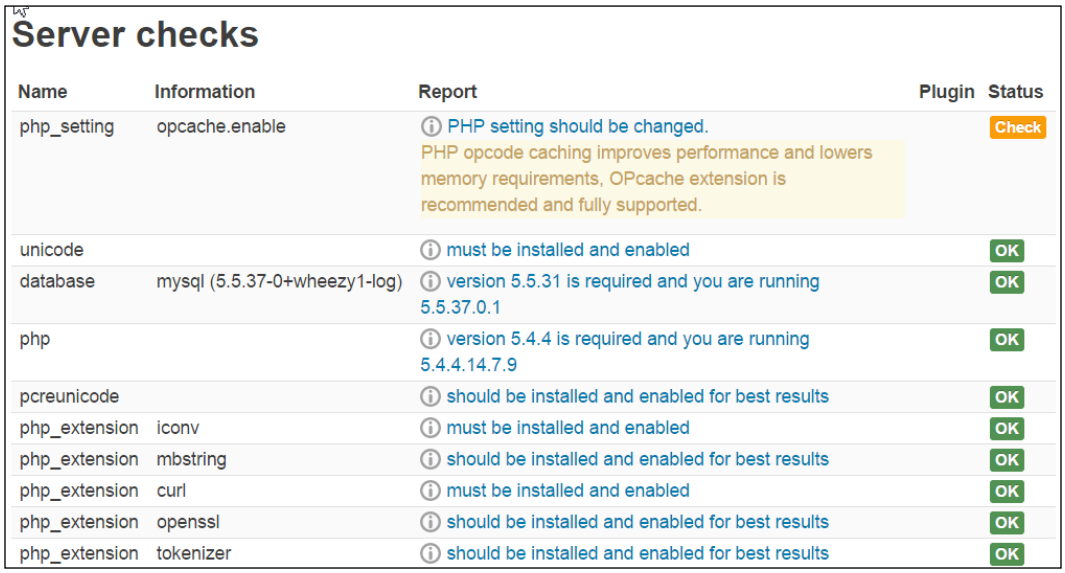
In this step, you just need to click the **Continue** button to advance to the next step:



www.it-ebooks.info

Step 6e - check server

Moodle is written in a programming language called PHP. PHP is the most popular programming language for Web applications. It is already installed on your web server. Some of PHP's capabilities are turned off and on, using the settings that you or your system administrator control. Moodle's installation routine will check some of these settings to ensure that they are compatible with Moodle.



Server checks

Name	Information	Report	Plugin	Status
php_setting	opcache.enable	PHP setting should be changed. PHP opcode caching improves performance and lowers memory requirements, OPcache extension is recommended and fully supported.		Check
unicode		must be installed and enabled		OK
database	mysql (5.5.37-0+wheezy1-log)	version 5.5.31 is required and you are running 5.5.37.0.1		OK
php		version 5.4.4 is required and you are running 5.4.4.14.7.9		OK
pcreunicode		should be installed and enabled for best results		OK
php_extension	iconv	must be installed and enabled		OK
php_extension	mbstring	should be installed and enabled for best results		OK
php_extension	curl	must be installed and enabled		OK
php_extension	openssl	should be installed and enabled for best results		OK
php_extension	tokenizer	should be installed and enabled for best results		OK

In the preceding screenshot, you can see that I have received a warning message. I need a certain PHP extension to be enabled. My next task is to ask my web hosting service if this is installed and enabled, and if not, will they do it.

One common problem with the server is when the memory that PHP is allowed to use is set too low. This is a common cause of the installation hanging, or stalling. If you get this message, you might want to cancel the installation and fix the situation right away.

The PHP installed on your server uses a file called `php.ini` to store its settings. The memory limit that caused the warning is set in `php.ini`. If you have your own server, you can edit `php.ini` and increase this limit. On my server, I changed this limit to 128 MB by editing the following line in `php.ini`:

```
memory_limit = 128M
```


www.it-ebooks.info

If you're using someone else's server, you need to contact support and find out how to increase the limit. Sometimes, this will be to put a file in your Moodle directory called `.htaccess`, and include in that file the following line:

```
php_valuememory_limit = 128M
```

For more information, start by searching `http://moodle.org` for the terms *php memory limit*. Usually, 256 MB works fine for a small site, and 1 GB for 10-20 simultaneous users. Start with that setting and increase it if needed.

Whether you're using your own or someone else's server, I recommend that you fix the situation before continuing the installation.

Step 6f - database tables created by install.php

Next, `install.php` creates the tables in your Moodle database. You don't need to do anything during this part of the installation except click to see the next screen. The installation script tells you when this is complete:

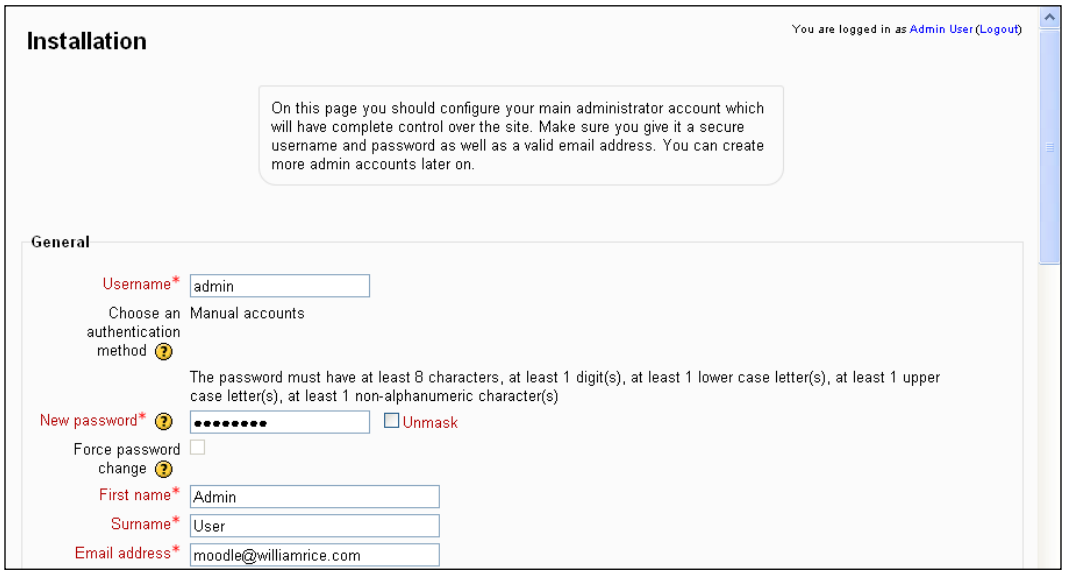
www.it-ebooks.info

When you click the **Continue** button, you will be taken to a page where you enter the details for your site's administrative user.

Launch your browser and point it to the home page of your Moodle installation (where you uploaded the software). Step through the installation using the preceding subsections as a guide. If you have all the information ready to enter, it will probably take less than 10 minutes.

Installation step 7 – create the administrative user

The admin user has the ultimate power on your Moodle site. This user can do anything on the site, including creating other users. When you enter the details for this user, keep them in a safe place! The fields in red in the following screenshot are required. All others are optional:



www.it-ebooks.info

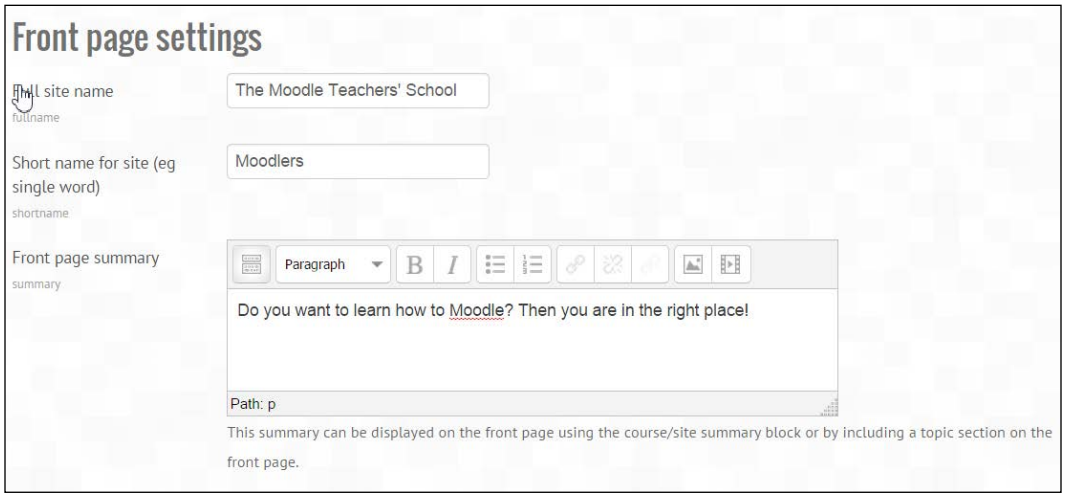
Oh no! I forgot the password to my Admin user!

Don't panic! There are ways to deal with the loss of your admin user's password. You can still get it back, if you can get to the Moodle database. The frequently asked questions page on the Moodle website will tell you more: `https://docs.moodle.org/28/en/Administration_FAQ#I_have_forgotten_the_admin_password`

After filling in the required details for the admin user, scroll down and save your work. The install routine will advance to the next step.

Installation step 8 – front page settings

The full site name that you enter here will be displayed on the front page. The short name will be displayed in the navigation menu. The front page description will be displayed on the front page of your site. You can easily change all of these later. If getting them perfect slows you down, just enter the best information that you have and continue:



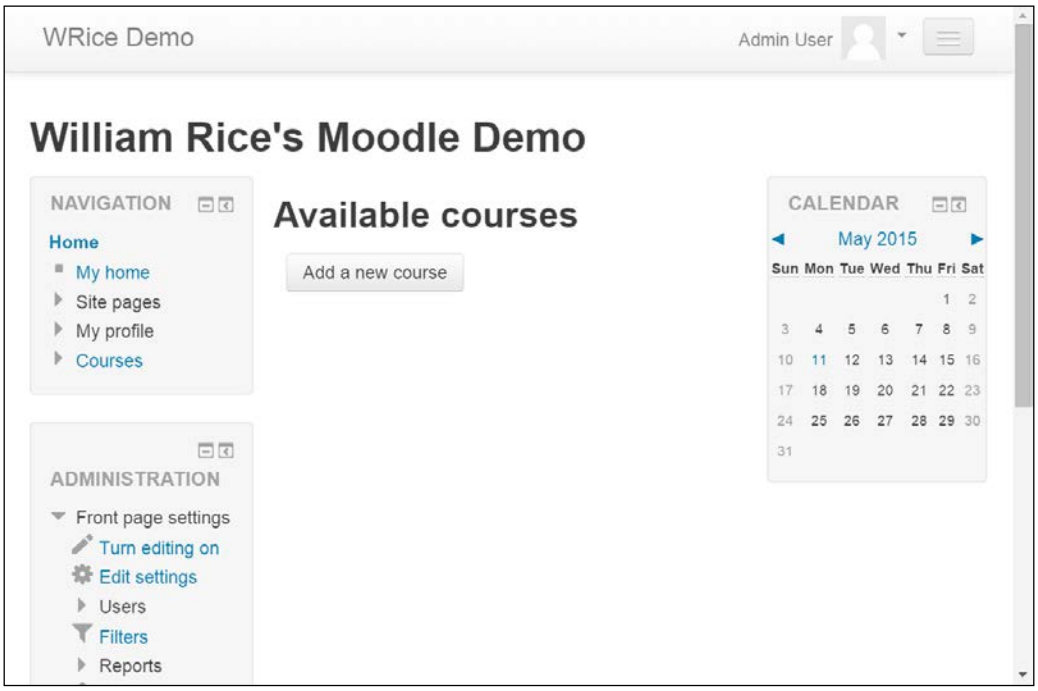
At the bottom of the page that you see in the preceding screenshot, you can choose whether to allow e-mail-based self-registration. It is turned off by default. Unless you have a good reason for allowing people to register themselves, you should leave this turned off.

After you save the page, the install routine advances to the next step.

www.it-ebooks.info

Installation step 9 – success

Moodle displays the front page of your new site, as seen in the following screenshot. You're ready to start developing courses:



Summary

From here, you can continue with any or all of the following:

- Create user accounts
- Configure your site
- Add content to your site's front page
- Create courses

You can do these in any order, but I usually use the order presented here. And don't be intimidated into thinking that you must get all of these correct or right the first time. They can be changed and edited at any time. So, start with whatever you're most comfortable with, develop some momentum, and build your learning site.

In the next chapter, we'll cover how to configure your site to create the kind of environment and experience that you want.

www.it-ebooks.info

3
Configuring Your Site

Many settings that are made after the installation process affect the student and teacher experience in Moodle, when they use the site. The focus of this chapter is on helping you create the user experience that you want, by choosing the right settings.

Many of the choices in settings that you make will be easy to decide. For example, will you allow your users to select their own time zone? Other choices are not so obvious. You could spend a lot of time trying different settings to see how they affect the user experience. These are the settings that we will focus on in this chapter. The goal is to save you time by showing you the effects that key settings will have on your site.

If your system administrator or webmaster has installed Moodle for you, you might be tempted to just accept the default configuration and skip this chapter. *Don't!*

Even if you did not install Moodle, we encourage you to read the configuration sections in this chapter. If you want, work with your system administrator to select the settings that you want. Your administrator can create a site administrator account that you can use for configuring Moodle, or, make these configuration settings for you.

Preparing to experiment

While this chapter describes the effects of different configuration choices, there is no substitute for experiencing them yourself. Don't be afraid to experiment with different settings. You can try the following method:

1. While installing Moodle, you created an account for the site administrator. Now, create test accounts for at least one teacher and three students.
2. Install three different browsers in your computer. For example, Firefox, Opera, and Internet Explorer.

www.it-ebooks.info

3. In the first browser, log in as an **administrator**. Use this account to experiment with the settings that you read about here.
4. In the second browser, go to your site as a **teacher**. Each time you change a configuration setting, refresh the teacher's browser and observe the change to see how the teacher works.
5. In the third browser, go to your site as a **student**. Each time you change a configuration setting, refresh the student's browser and observe how it changes the student's experience.

Instructions for each of these tasks are discussed in detail in the following sections.

Creating test accounts

These instructions begin where the installation ended: with you at the home page of your new site, logged in as the administrative user.

To create test accounts for your site, do the following:

1. Before you go into Moodle, launch your note pad or a blank e-mail. You'll use this to take notes.
2. If you're not logged-in as the administrative user, log in now. Use the **Login** link in the upper-right corner of the page.
3. You should be looking at the home page of your new Moodle site now.
4. From the Administration menu on the left side of the page, click **Site administration**. This expands the **Site administration** menu.
5. Click **Users**, then **Accounts**.
6. Click **Add a new user**. Moodle displays the **Add a new user** page.
7. The following table gives information to help you decide how to fill out each field on this page. Some fields are required. Moodle indicates those fields with a red asterisk.

www.it-ebooks.info

Field	Notes
Username	For the username, you might find it easiest to use the role that you are testing. So create usernames like `teacher1`, `teacher2`, `student1`,... `student4`, and so on.
Choose an authentication method	For your test accounts, this should be set to **Manual accounts**.
New password	Use your institution's password policy. To ensure that you type the password correctly, click the **Unmask** check box. That enables you to see the password as you type it.
Force password change	For your test accounts, leave this blank.
First name and Surname	By default, when Moodle lists users, it sorts them by name. Often, it is convenient to have your test accounts appear next to each other in the list of users. Also, if they are at the top of the list, you don't need to scroll or search to find them. For your test users, consider using a last name like `AATest`, which will put them at the top of the list with just one click.
Email address	The e-mail address of every user in Moodle must be unique. So if you are creating six test accounts, you will need six different e-mail addresses.
Email display	Do you want other users on your site to see the e-mail address for this test account? For a test account, set this to **Hide my e-mail address from everyone**, unless you have a good reason for your students to know the e-mail address of your test accounts. Also, you don't want a real student to get confused and e-mail a test teacher account, instead of their real teacher.
Email activated	You want your test account to receive e-mails while you are developing courses, so set this to **This email address is enabled**.
Email format	To test how your site sends e-mails, you can set your odd numbered users to pretty HTML format and your even numbered users to plain text format.
Email digest type	When a user is subscribed to a forum, Moodle usually sends that user e-mails about new forum postings. This setting determines how often those e-mails are sent, and what they contain. For testing, leave this to **No digest**. That way, you'll know within a few minutes if a forum is sending out messages like it should. If your test user starts getting a lot of messages from a forum, you might want to set this to a daily e-mail.

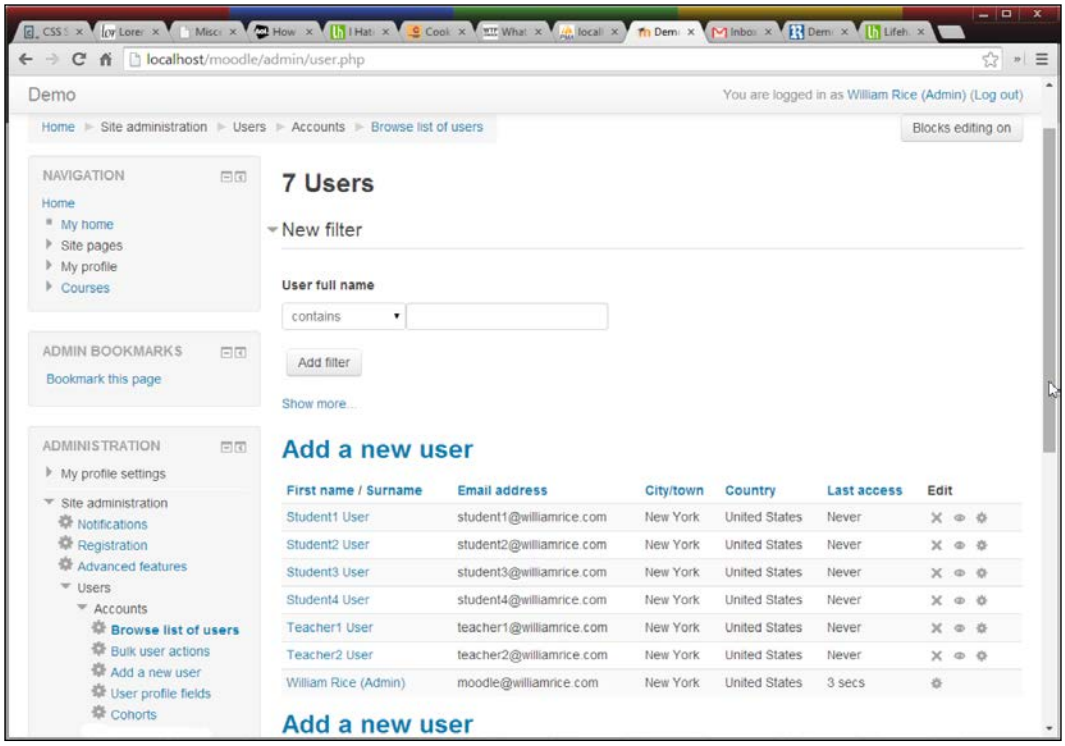
www.it-ebooks.info

Field	Notes
Forum auto-subscribe and Forum tracking	For testing, you can leave these settings to **Yes**. If your test user starts getting a lot of messages from a lot of forums, you might want to set one or both of them to **No**, and then unsubscribe the test user from those forums.
When editing text	To test the behavior of Moodle's HTML editor, you can leave this to **Use HTML editor**.
AJAX and Javascript	You should find out from your IT department if the users in your organization have these enabled in their browsers.
Screen reader	For some functions, Moodle offers an interface that is more accessible for sight-impaired users. If you are testing your site for a visually impaired user, set this to **Yes** for one of your test accounts.
City/town and Select a country	These fields are required. If you use names that sound real for your test accounts, consider giving your test accounts a fictional city, like `Testville`. It might make it easier to find the test accounts later.
Timezone	This determines what time is displayed to the user.
Preferred language	This determines what language Moodle uses for its interface. There is a site-wide setting that allows and forbids users to select their own language. If you plan to allow users to select their own language, their selection will overwrite what you choose here.
Description	Most sites allow users to enter their own description in their user profile. You can enter a starting description here.

8. The remaining user fields are self-explanatory. Usually, they are filled out by the user.
9. In your notes, take note of the user's username, password, and e-mail address. You'll need these later.
10. At the bottom of the page, click the **Update profile** button. This saves the profile.

www.it-ebooks.info

11. Repeat this for each of your test users. When you finish, you will see them listed under **Administration** | **Site administration** | **Users** | **Accounts** | **Browse list of users**.



Installing several browsers

You cannot log in to Moodle with two different usernames, from the same browser, at the same time. For example, if you want to log in as both `teacher1` and `student1`, you can't do that from the same browser. You need two separate browsers or browser sessions.

www.it-ebooks.info

Consider installing several browsers on your computer, to enable you to log in as several different users at once. For example, you could install the following:

- **Firefox**: use this as the site administrator
- **Opera**: use this as a teacher
- **Chrome**: use this as a student

And, don't forget Safari and Internet Explorer.

Telling you how to install these browsers is beyond the scope of this book. The following table lists the websites where you can get these browsers. If your organization has your computers secured so that you cannot install your own software, you will need their help to install more browsers.

Browser	Source	Suitable Operating System
Firefox	`http://www.mozilla.com`	Windows Macintosh Linux
Opera	`http://www.opera.com/`	Windows Macintosh Linux
Chrome	`http://www.google.com/chrome`	Windows Macintosh Linux
Safari	`http://www.apple.com/safari/`	Windows Macintosh
Internet Explorer	`http://www.microsoft.com/windows/internet-explorer/`	Windows

Exploring the site administration menu

After installing Moodle, I like to set some basic configuration options. Some of these settings determine how the site functions, such as how users are authenticated, what statistics the site keeps, and which modules are turned off and on. Other settings just affect the user experience, such as which languages are available, the color scheme, and what is displayed on the front page. All these settings are available through the **Site Administration** menu.

www.it-ebooks.info

To access the **Site Administration** menu, you must be logged-in as an administrative user. Under the **Administration** menu, click **Site Administration** to expand the menu:

In this chapter on configuring your site, we'll cover some of the settings under the **Site Administration** menu. Others will be covered as we build our courses, teach, calculate grades, and update our site.

The important idea here is this: Unlike many other applications, in Moodle, the **Site Administration** menu isn't something that you *set and forget*. You return to the configuration settings as your site develops.

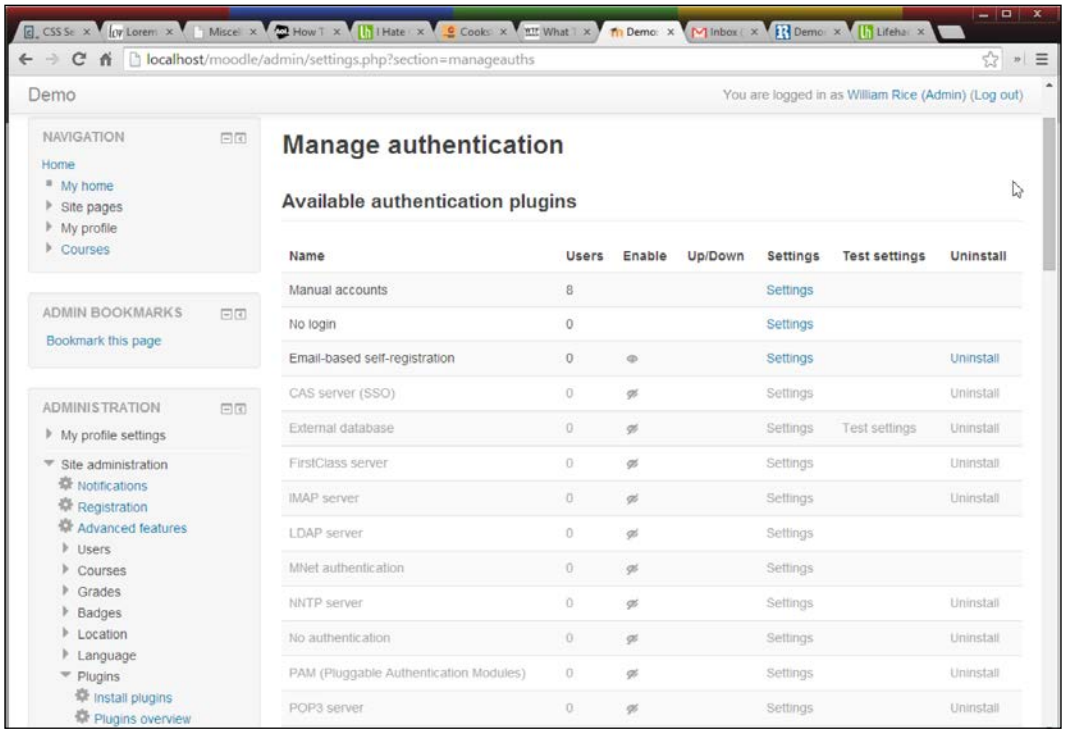
Now let's go through the settings you use to configure your site for the kind of user experience that you want to create.

www.it-ebooks.info

Configuring authentication methods

Authentication is what happens when a user is logging in to your site. When a user is created, an authentication method must be chosen for that user. This can be changed for the user, later.

Moodle offers a variety of ways to authenticate users. You'll find them under **Administration** | **Site Administration** | **Plugins** | **Authentication** | **Manage Authentication**. Each of the options is briefly explained by clicking on **Settings** for that option:



The following subsection will fill in some key information to make it easier for you to work with these authentication methods.

Manual accounts and no login methods

In the preceding screenshot showing the authentication methods, notice that two methods cannot be disabled: **Manual accounts** and **No login**. These methods are always available to the site administrator.

www.it-ebooks.info

Manual accounts enables the administrator to create user accounts. You used this method to create your test users.

Even if you are authenticating against an external database, you can still use this method to create users. For example, suppose your company or school uses Moodle, and authenticates against your organization's IMAP e-mail server. Since everyone at your organization has an e-mail account, this ensures that your colleagues, and only your colleagues, have accounts in Moodle.

However, what if you have a guest or a consultant teaching one of your courses? If your organization doesn't want to give that person an official e-mail address at your organization, then the guest teacher won't have an entry in the IMAP server. In that case, you can manually create the guest's account in Moodle. Their account will exist only in Moodle, and will not be checked against the IMAP (or other) server.

No login enables the administrator to suspend a user's account. Suspending a user takes away that person's ability to log in, but keeps all the work that person did in the system, such as their blog and grades. Deleting a user removes the account and the user's data.

Manually creating a new user

If you created test accounts at the beginning of this chapter, you manually created user accounts. Follow the instructions under the *Creating test accounts* section.

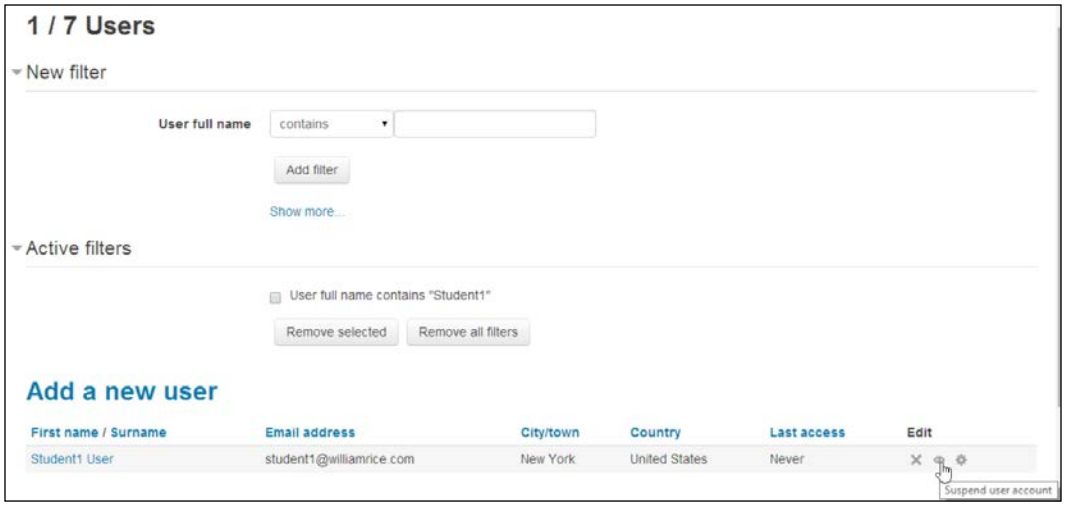
To suspend a user's account

The end result of this procedure is that the user's authentication method is changed to "no login."

1. From the Administration menu on the left side of the page, click **Site administration | Users | Accounts | Browse list of users**. The **Users** page is displayed. On this page, you will search for the user.
2. In the **New filter** area, enter all or part of the user's name.
3. Click the **Add filter** button. The user appears in the list at the bottom of the page.

www.it-ebooks.info

4. Next to the user's name, click the **Suspend user account** icon. If you are unsure which icon that is, hover over the icons until you see the name displayed as seen in the following screenshot:



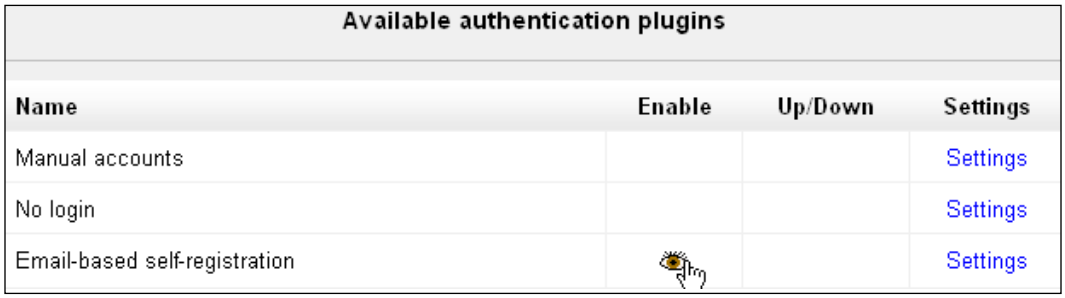
Enabling e-mail-based self-registration

This method enables people to register themselves for your site. When someone fills out the new user form at your site, Moodle sends them an e-mail to confirm their account.

You must turn on e-mail-based self-registration in two places.

To enable email-based self-registration follow the given steps:

1. Under **Administration** | **Site Administration** | **Plugins** | **Authentication** | **Manage Authentication**, click to open the eye for **Email-based self-registration**.

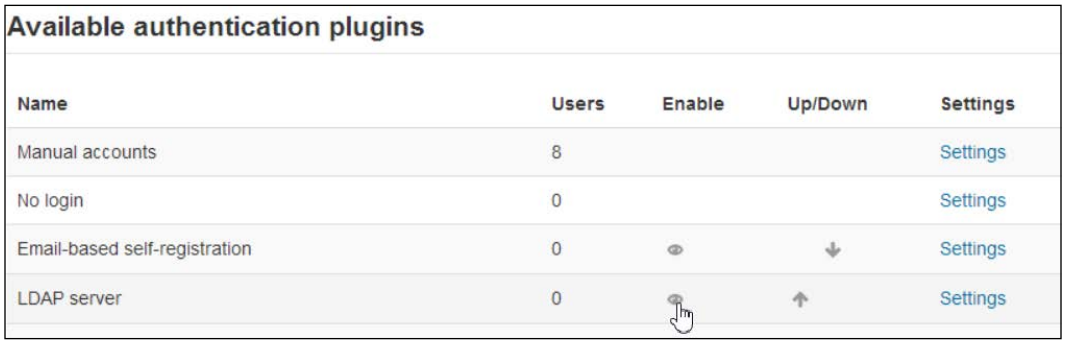


www.it-ebooks.info

2. On the same page, further down, for the **Self registration** drop-down list select **Email-based self-registration**.
3. If you want to increase the security of your site, under the **Settings** for **Email-based self-registration**, enable the `reCAPTCHA` function.
4. At the bottom of the page, click the **Save Changes** button.
5. Return to the **Manage Authentication** page.
6. If you want to limit self-enrollment to only people at your company or school, consider using the **Allowed email domains** function, further down on this page. This will restrict self enrollment to people who have an e-mail address from your company or school.

Authenticating against an external source

Moodle can look to a different database, or another server, to determine if a user can log in. This is called authenticating against an external source. In the following screenshot , the authentication method for an LDAP server is being enabled:

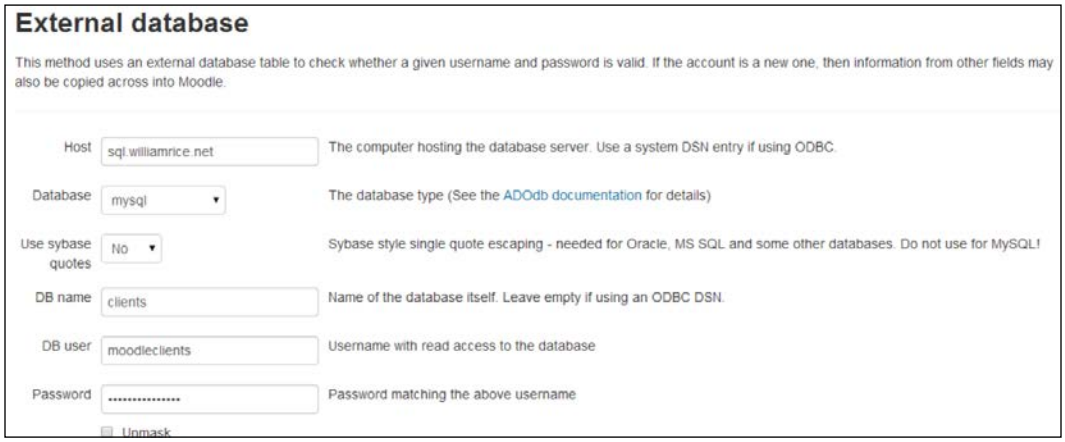


External databases and external servers have some things in common. We'll look at these common features and how to use them for authenticating your users.

www.it-ebooks.info

Connecting to an external database or server

When you choose to authenticate against an external database, you must tell Moodle how to connect to that database. To get to these settings, click the **Settings** link for the source.



The exact settings that you need to connect are a little different for each type of database. The best way to obtain the information that you need is to ask the administrator of the database that you want to authenticate against. You could take a screenshot of the **Settings** page for the authentication method, and send it to the database administrator.

What happens when users are deleted from the external database?

When you authenticate with an external source, by default, each time that a person logs in, Moodle looks to the external source for that person's username and password. If the username is removed from the external source, Moodle can do one of the following actions:

- **Keep the user active in Moodle**: This means that although the person was removed from the external source, they can still log in because their profile and login information is still in the Moodle database
- **Suspend the user in Moodle**: The person's records will still be in Moodle, but they cannot log in
- **Delete the user from Moodle**: The person's records will be completely deleted from Moodle

www.it-ebooks.info

This is controlled by the **Removed ext user** setting:

This is an important decision, because you are deciding how Moodle will handle people who have left your organization. **Suspend internal** is the safest option.

For example, suppose you are authenticating Moodle users with your company's human resources database. When a person leaves your organization, that person is removed from the e-mail server. Do you still want that person to be able to log in to Moodle? Do you want to suspend their account, but keep a record of everything they did in Moodle? Or, do you want to completely delete that person's records from Moodle? You should work with your system administrator to make this decision and select the right option for your organization.

What happens when usernames are changed in the external database?

After Moodle checks an external source and determines that a user has access, Moodle creates an account for that user in the Moodle database. Although Moodle looks to the external source for the username and password, records for the user's activity are kept in Moodle. The user's grades, blog entries, history and so on, are all kept in Moodle, under that person's username.

If the username changes in the external source, there will be no connection between the old username in Moodle and the new username in the external source. For example, if you changed a person's username in your external database from `jsmith1` to `jsmith2`, Moodle would not know that the `jsmith2` in your external database is the old `jsmith1`. When the user logs into Moodle for the first time with their new username, `jsmith2`, Moodle will create a new account for that username. The account for `jsmith1` will still be in Moodle, but it will not be used.

When changing a person's username in your external source, if you want to keep their records in Moodle synchronized with their new username, you should also change their username in Moodle.

www.it-ebooks.info

To change a username in Moodle:

1. From the **Administration** menu on the left side of the page, click **Site administration | Users | Accounts | Browse list of users**. The **Users** page is displayed. You will search for the user on this page.
2. In the **New filter** area, enter all or part of the user's name.
3. Click the **Add filter** button. The user appears in the list at the bottom of the page.
4. Next to the user's name, click the **Edit** link. This displays the **Edit profile** page for that user.
5. In the **Username** field, enter a new username for the person.
6. At the bottom of the page, click the **Update profile** button. This saves the change.

If the user wants to change his or her password, it usually must be done in the external source, and not in Moodle.

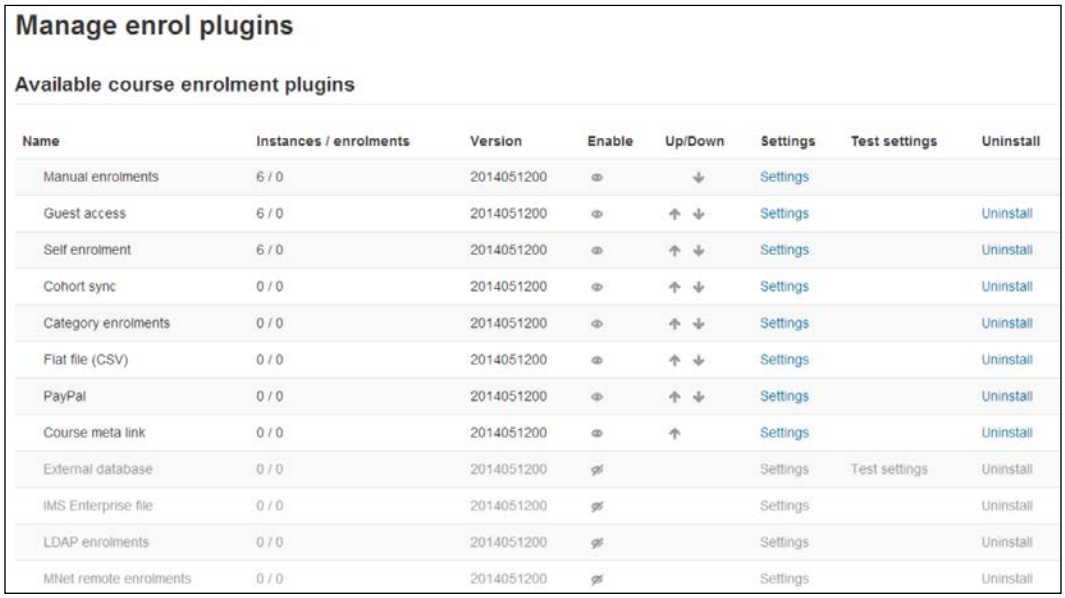
When you authenticate users with an external database server, you can allow them to change their passwords through Moodle. You can also make Moodle use the external database server's password expiration feature, forcing users to change their passwords periodically. These are two features that you get when authenticating against LDAP, but not when authenticating against an external database. Each type of authentication method offers unique advantages and disadvantages.

Granting access to courses with enrollment choices

Enrollment is different from authentication. In authentication, you grant a user access to your site. In enrollment, you grant a user access to a course. That is, authentication answers the question, *Are you a member of this site?* Enrollment answers the question, *Are you enrolled in this course?*

www.it-ebooks.info

You have several options for managing student enrollment. They are found under **Settings** | **Site Administration** | **Plugins** | **Enrolments** | **Manage Enrol Plugins**.



Manage enrol plugins

Available course enrolment plugins

Name	Instances / enrolments	Version	Enable	Up/Down	Settings	Test settings	Uninstall
Manual enrolments	6 / 0	2014051200			Settings		
Guest access	6 / 0	2014051200			Settings		Uninstall
Self enrolment	6 / 0	2014051200			Settings		Uninstall
Cohort sync	0 / 0	2014051200			Settings		Uninstall
Category enrolments	0 / 0	2014051200			Settings		Uninstall
Flat file (CSV)	0 / 0	2014051200			Settings		Uninstall
PayPal	0 / 0	2014051200			Settings		Uninstall
Course meta link	0 / 0	2014051200			Settings		Uninstall
External database	0 / 0	2014051200			Settings	Test settings	Uninstall
IMS Enterprise file	0 / 0	2014051200			Settings		Uninstall
LDAP enrolments	0 / 0	2014051200			Settings		Uninstall
MNet remote enrolments	0 / 0	2014051200			Settings		Uninstall

Notice the column labels across the top of the list in the preceding screenshot. Let's discuss the meaning of each label, and then discuss each enrollment method.

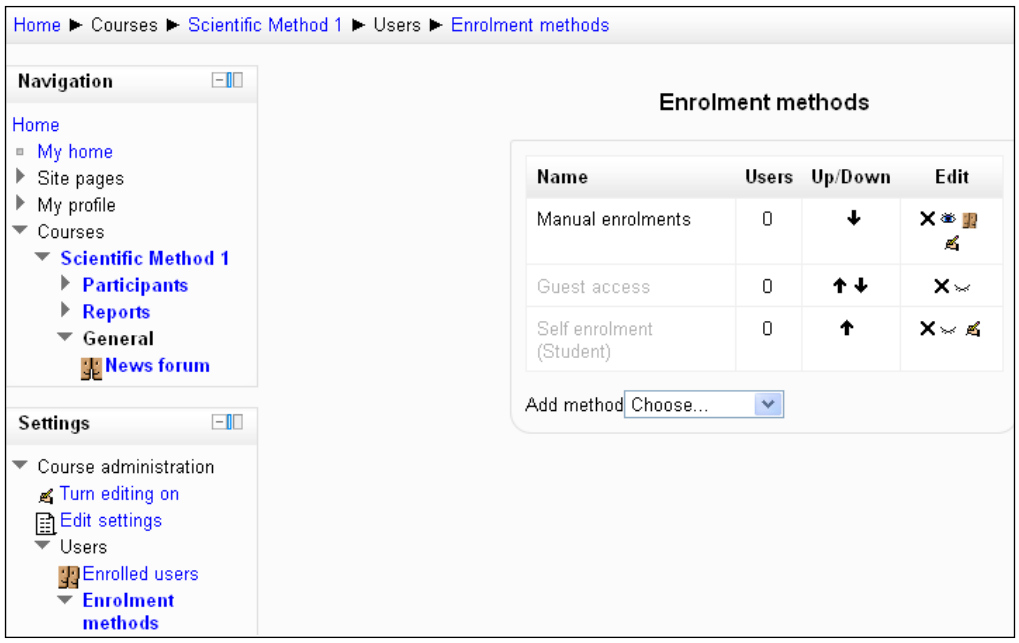
Name

This is the name of the enrollment method.

www.it-ebooks.info

Instances/enrolments

The number of **Instances** tells you how many courses have this enrollment method added to them. However, just because a course has an enrollment method added to the course, doesn't mean that course is using the enrollment method. For example, the **Scientific Method** course has three enrollment methods added to it:



Notice in the preceding screenshot that while **Guest access** and **Self enrolment** are added to this course, they are not available. That is, they are not enabled. The teacher or administrator would need to enable those enrollment methods for this course.

Note that self-enrollment is not the same as self-registration. Self-registration enables a person to join your site. Self-enrollment enables a person who is a member of the site, to enroll in a course.

In this example, while we configured our site, we turned off guest access and self-registration for the site. However, those methods had already been added to this course. That is why those methods still appear in this course. They can be turned on for just this course, but cannot be added to any new courses.

www.it-ebooks.info

The specific overrides the general

In Moodle, as in most systems, settings for a specific area override settings for a more general area. Many default settings that apply to your whole site can be overridden by settings in a specific course. And many settings that apply to a whole course can be overridden by settings in a specific activity.

Enable

This setting determines if the enrollment method is available to your courses. To make a method available, click the eye to open it. To make it unavailable, click the eye to close it.

Up/down

Use the up and down arrows to put the enrollment methods in the order that you want Moodle to use them. The first enrollment method that contains the username that is trying to log in will determine if the user is authorized.

Settings

Many enrollment methods have a separate page for settings where you configure that method.

If you enable an enrollment method, you should at least look at the **Settings** page for that method and determine if you need to change any of them.

Manual enrollments

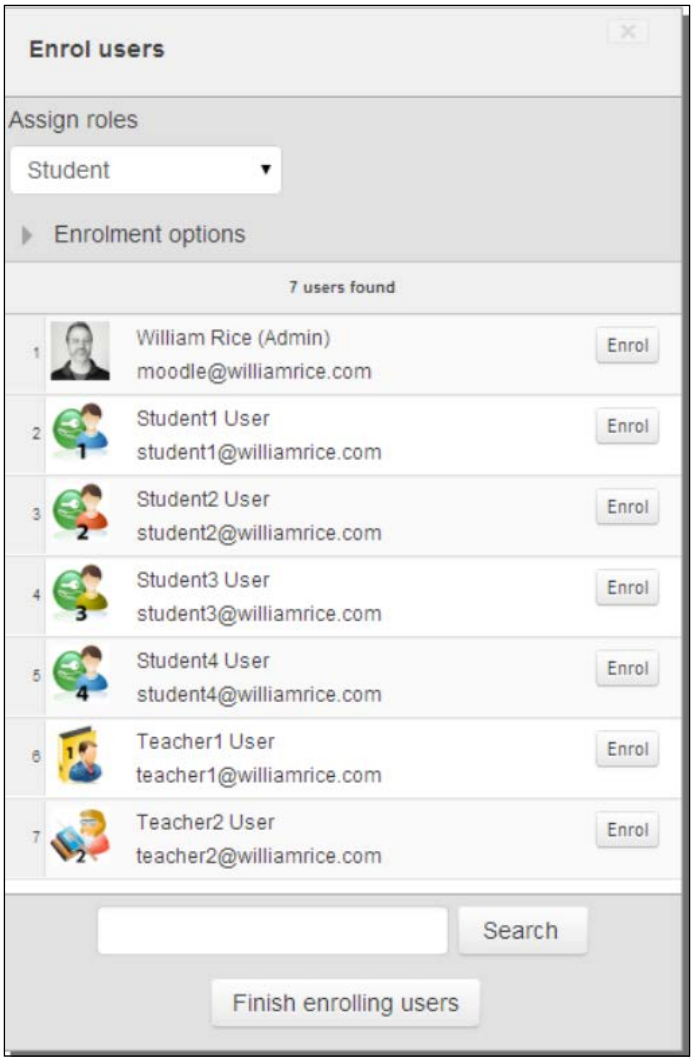
Manual enrollment is the default form of enrollment. When this is selected, a teacher or administrator can enroll the student.

To manually enroll a student in a course:

1. Enter the course as a teacher or administrator.
2. From within the course, select **Administration** | **Users** | **Enrolled users**.

www.it-ebooks.info

3. In the upper-right corner of the page, click the **Enrol users** button. The **Enrol users** window is displayed:

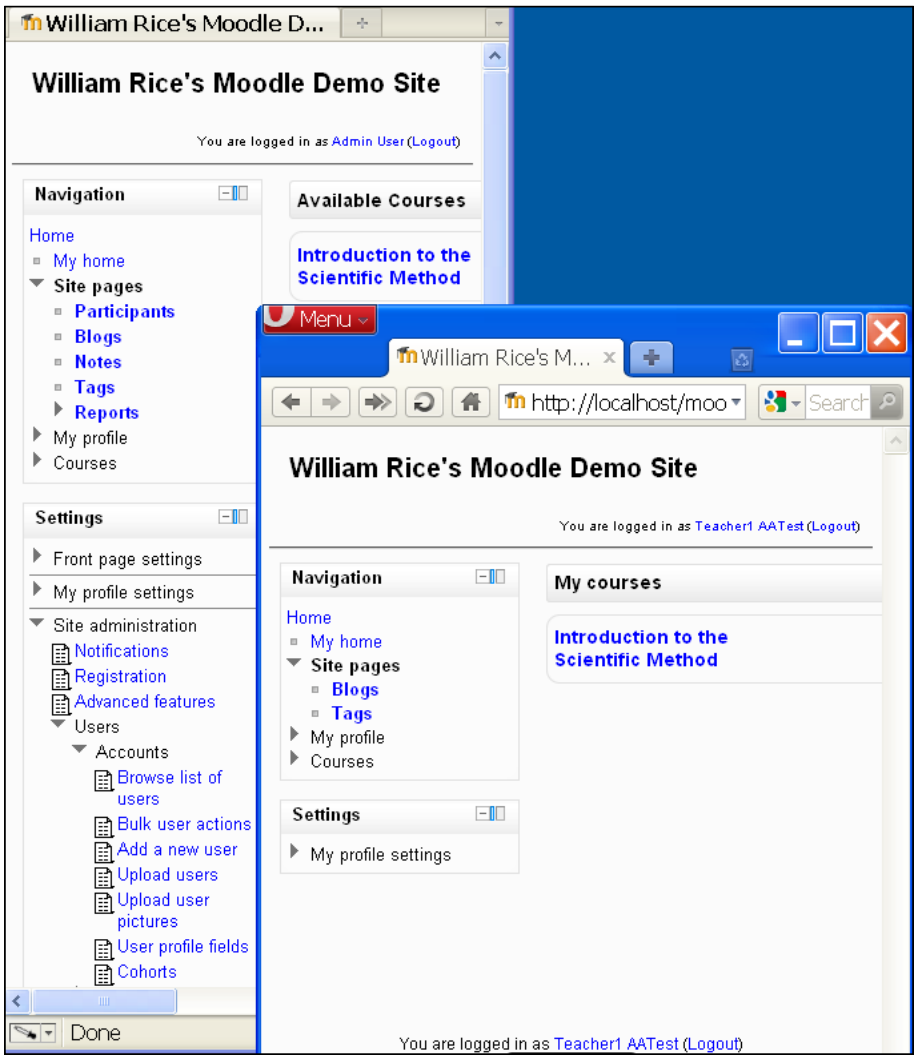


4. To find a user, enter any part of the user's name into the **Search** field and then press *Enter* or *Return* on your keyboard.
5. To enroll a user, click the **Enrol** button next to the user's name. The display of that user's name will change to indicate that (s)he is enrolled.
6. When you finish enrolling users, click the **Finish enrolling users** box for this window. You will return to the **Enrolled** users page, and see the user added to the list of enrolled users.

www.it-ebooks.info

Remember: Teachers can enroll users into a course, but they can't create new users.

Unless you override Moodle's default settings, teachers cannot create new users. They can only enrol existing users. By default, only a site administrator can manually create new users. In the following screenshot, the site administrator is logged-in with the browser on the left. Notice that **Site administration** | **users** | **Accounts** | **Add a new user** is available for the administrator. A teacher is-logged in with the browser on the right. Notice that the **Site administration** menu is not available to the teacher.



www.it-ebooks.info

Guest access

Your Moodle site has a special user called "Guest". This user can be granted access to courses, without requiring him/her to be enrolled. Essentially, you are allowing anonymous users to access your site and/or course.

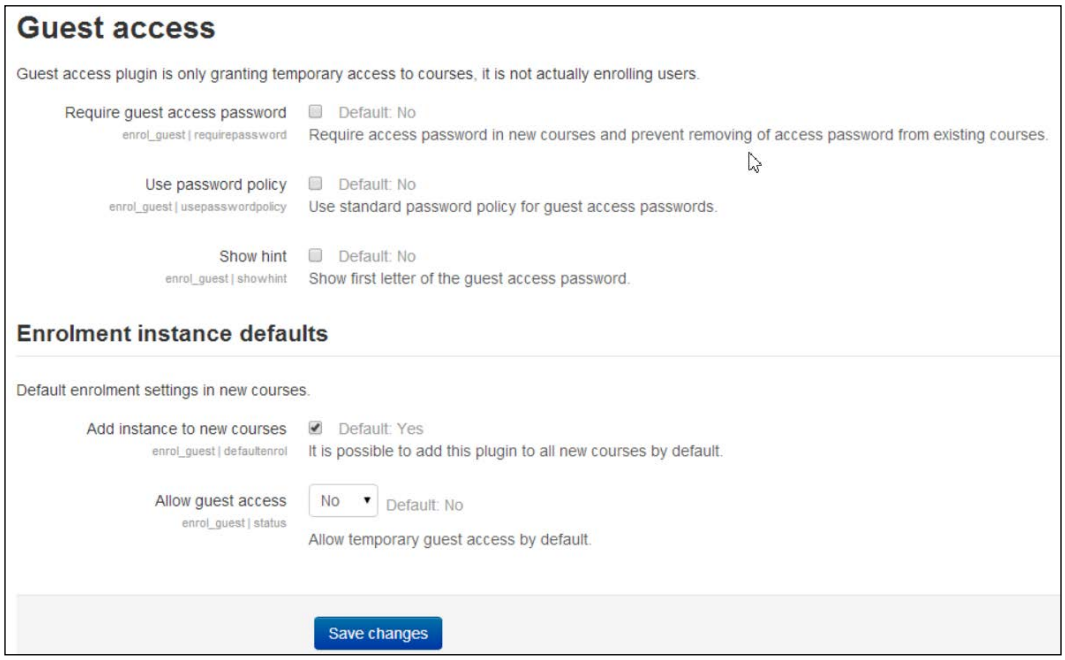
In the following screenshot, the button **Login as a guest** indicates that guest access has been enabled for this site. If you disable guest access, this button does not appear:

Who is this guest?

Who is your guest visitor? You will probably never know! That's because the guest account can be used by anyone, even multiple people at the same time. Therefore, you won't know the guest's name. When you look at your site logs and see the activity for the guest, you are looking at the activities performed by every visitor who used the guest account.

www.it-ebooks.info

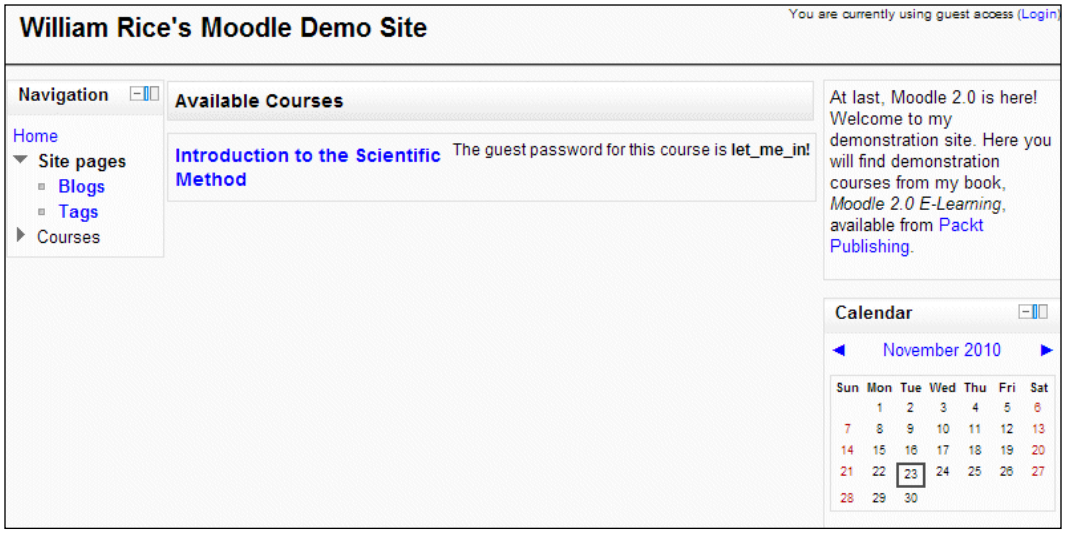
The **Settings** page for the guest access method contains some settings for a password:



It might seem odd to set a password for an anonymous guest. However, there is a good reason for requiring a password for the guest user. It prevents automated software, such as web crawlers and spam harvesters, from entering your course. Requiring a password for the guest ensures that the user entering the course is a human and not a piece of software.

www.it-ebooks.info

If you require a password for guest access, you'll need to tell your guests what the password is. You could add that to the course description that the visitors see on the front page of your site as seen in the following screenshot:



We'll talk about the course description later, when we create new courses.

Enabling guest access for a course

First, make sure that the guest authentication method is available, and that guest enrollment is activated.

1. Enter the course as a teacher or administrator.
2. Select **Administration** | **Course administration** | **Users** | **Enrolled users** | **Enrolment methods**.
3. If the Guest access enrollment method is not listed on this page, use the **Add method** drop-down list to add it. If it's not available under that list, have your system administrator add it.
4. Once the guest access enrollment method is listed, activate it. Under the **Edit** column, click the eye icon to open the eye.
5. Second, enable this method under the course settings.
6. Select **Administration** | **Course administration** | **Edit settings**. The **Course settings** page is displayed.

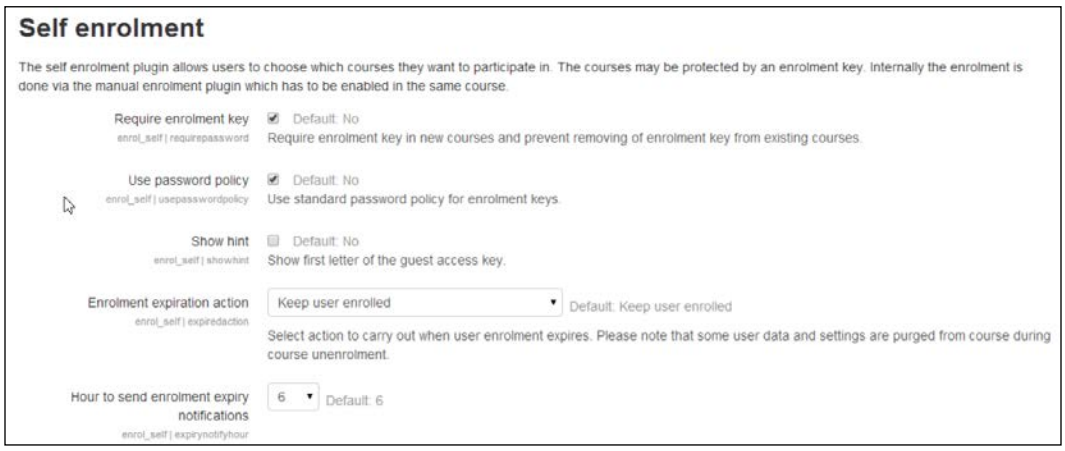
www.it-ebooks.info

7. For the **Allow guest access** drop-down list, select **Yes**.
8. If you require a password for guest access, enter it into the **Password** field.
9. At the bottom of the page, click the **Save Changes** button.

Self enrolment

This allows users to enroll themselves in courses. As with guest access, you must enable this method under **Site administration** for your entire site, and also activate it for a specific course.

On the **Settings** page for **Self enrolment**, you can choose to require an enrollment key:



An enrollment key is a code that the user must enter when enrolling in a course. Once the user is enrolled, the enrollment key is no longer needed.

You can allow self-registration on your site, and then require users to have an enrollment key for a course. The self-registration removes the burden of you creating accounts for users. The enrollment key ensures that only those to whom you give the key can enter your course.

Cohort sync

In a Moodle course, you can add students to a group. Then, you can manage that group's access to activities and resources in the course instead of managing the students one at a time. Moodle also enables you to create site-wide groups. These are called cohorts.

www.it-ebooks.info

The cohorts sync enrollment method enables you to enroll a cohort into a course. This enrolls everyone in that cohort in one go.

Inside a course, a teacher can create a group. But because a cohort is a site-wide group, by default, only your site's administrator can create a cohort and enable cohort sync in the enrollment methods. After these are enabled, a teacher can add a cohort into a course.

Creating a cohort

1. Log in to your site as an administrator.
2. Select **Administration** | **Site administration** | **Users** | **Accounts** | **Cohorts**. The cohorts page is displayed.
3. Click the **Add** button. The **Edit Cohort** page is displayed.
4. Give the cohort a **Name** and **ID**. You will probably leave the **Context** set to **System**, so that you can use the cohort throughout your site.
5. Optionally, add a **Description**.
6. Click the **Save Changes** button. You are returned to the cohorts page, where your new cohort is listed.

Adding users to a cohort

At any time, you can add or remove users from a cohort. This subsection shows you two methods.

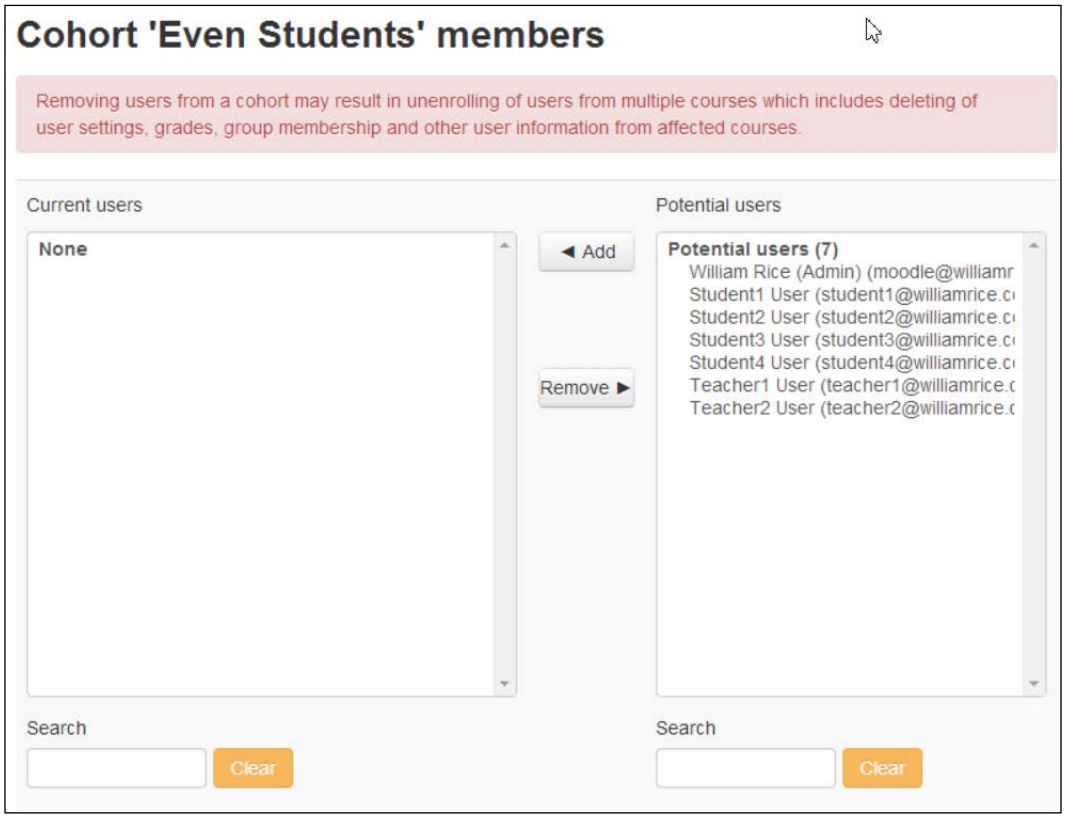
Adding a user from the cohort page

As long as we are on the cohort page, let's add some users. This method assumes that you have logged in to your site as an administrator, and that you are at the **Administration** | **Site administration** | **Users** | **Accounts** | **Cohorts** page. The cohorts page is displayed, and the list of cohorts is on this page.

1. Next to the cohort to which you want to add users, click the person icon:

www.it-ebooks.info

2. The **Search** screen is displayed, where you can search among all the users in the system.



3. Notice that in this screen, you can search only for the first name, last name, and e-mail address. If you need to find and enroll students on some other criteria, then try the bulk user method described next.
4. After finding and adding the students that you want, at the bottom of the page, click the **Back to cohorts** button to return to the cohorts page.

Adding a student using the bulk action method

When you search for students using the bulk action page, you get more search fields than just the first name, last name, and e-mail. This can help you find the students that you are looking for. To add students to a cohort using the bulk action page, do the following:

1. Log in to your site as an administrator.

www.it-ebooks.info

2. Select **Site administration** | **Users** | **Accounts** | **Bulk user actions**. The bulk user actions page is displayed.
3. Under the **New filter** section, select and/or enter the search criteria for your students.
4. Click the **Add filter** button. Under the **Users** in the list section, the users that meet the criteria will be displayed in the left column.
5. Select the users that you want in the cohort.
6. Click the **Add to selection** button. The users will be added to the right column.
7. Under **With selected users…** select **Add to cohort**. Then, click the **Go** button.
8. A page listing the cohorts available is displayed. Select the cohort, and then click the **Add to cohort** button.

To enroll a cohort in a course

1. Enter the course as a teacher or administrator.
2. Select **Administration** | **Course administration** | **Users** | **Enrolled users**.
3. Click the **Enrol cohort** button (by default, this button doesn't appear for teachers, but only for administrators). A popup window appears. This window lists the cohorts on the site.
4. Next to the cohort that you want to enroll, click **Enrol users**. The system displays a confirmation message.
5. At the confirmation message, click the **OK** button. You are taken back to the enrolled users page.

Category enrollments

If you used a previous version of Moodle, and enrolled students in courses using the category roles, then activating this enrollment method will enable you to import those enrollments into the new Moodle. If you're not importing category roles from a previous version, you can leave this enrollment method deactivated.

The flat file

A **flat file** is a text file that contains information from a database. The flat file method of student enrollment causes Moodle to read in a text file, and use that as the source for enrollment information. The flat file method is especially useful if you need to enroll a large group of people who have records in another system.

www.it-ebooks.info

For example, suppose that all the nurses at your hospital need to be trained in patient privacy laws. We can assume that the nurses have records in the hospital's human resource or payroll system. Or, suppose all the teachers at your school need to be trained on new educational standards. These teachers will probably have records in the school's e-mail or human resource system. If you can get a flat file, or text file, containing a list of everyone who needs to be trained, and that file contains their Moodle ID numbers, you are well on your way to enrolling them all at once. When you speak to the system administrator of the other system, you might ask them for an *extract* from the system.

The file

The flat file has the following format:

```
operation, role, ID number of user, ID number of course
```

Where:

- `operation` is add or delete. These enroll and unenroll the user from the course.
- `role` is the role, or function, that the user will have in the course. For example, **student** or **teacher editing**.
- `ID number of user` is a unique identifier for the user (Note: this is not the same as username).
- `ID number of course` is a unique identifier for the course (Note: this is not the same as the course short name).

Moodle periodically reads in this file, and modifies its enrollment data according to what the file says. For example, the line

```
add, student, 007, EM102
```

will add the **student** with the **ID number** of **007** to the course with the **ID number** of **EM102**.

The flat file is read into Moodle on the schedule that is set up under **Administration | Site administration | Server | Scheduled tasks**.

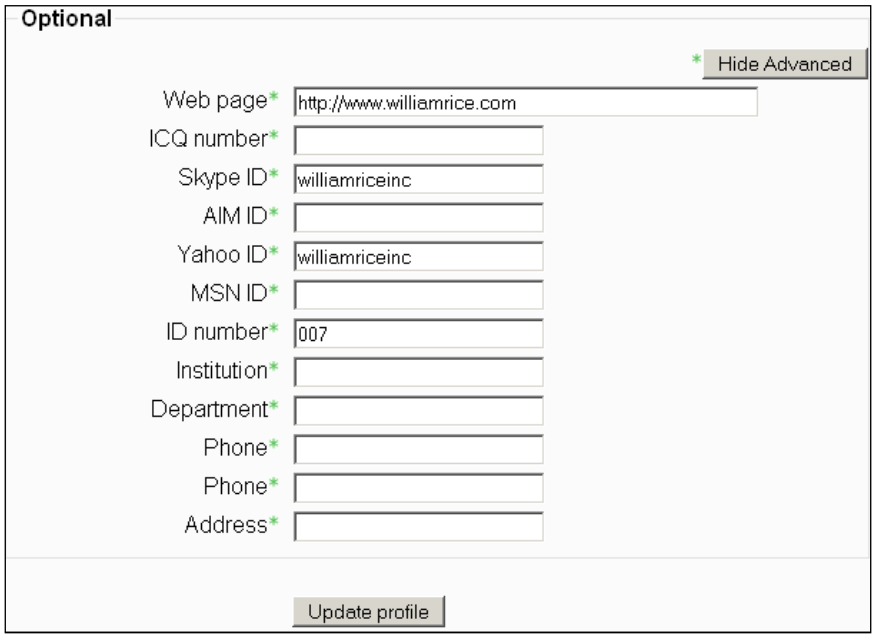
Place this file in a directory that is accessible to your web server. For example, you can put it inside the Moodle data directory.

www.it-ebooks.info

Student ID number required

Before you can enroll a person into a course, that person needs to be a member of your site. That is, the person needs to be authenticated. In this case, your first step is to authenticate the users using one of the methods discussed in the previous section *Authenticating against an external source*.

If you use a flat file to enroll students in a course, the file will identify each student by their ID number. Whatever method you use to authenticate your users, it should include a unique ID number for each user. This number should consist of only digits, and be up to ten characters in length. In the user profile page as seen in the following screenshot, you can see that **ID number** is an optional field:

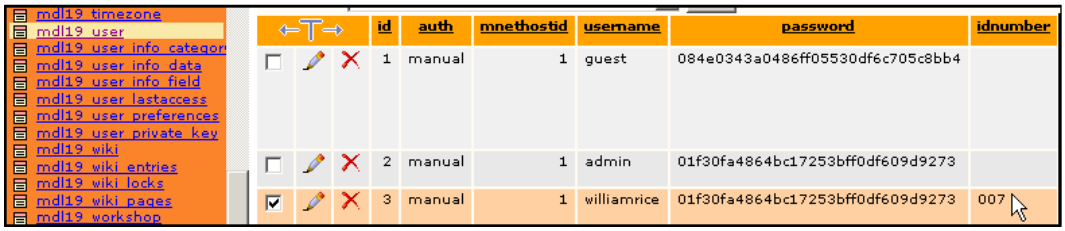


This **ID number** will match the student in Moodle to a record in the enrollment file. For example, the following line from the file enrolls student `007` into the course with the ID of `EM102`:

```
add, student, 007, EM102
```


www.it-ebooks.info

In the Moodle database, you will find the student's **ID number** in the table **mdl_user**, in the field **idnumber** as seen in the following screenshot:



If you want to use a flat file to mass-enroll a group of students, and your users don't have ID numbers, speak to your administrator about loading those numbers directly into the Moodle database. They might be able to use a database command to fill that field.

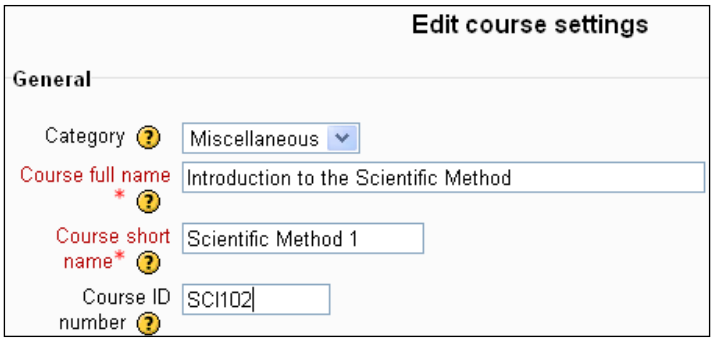
If your database administrator cannot add ID numbers for your users, you will need to edit each user's profile manually and add the ID numbers.

Course ID required

If you use a flat file to enroll students in a course, the file will identify each course by its ID number. The example we used earlier was as follows:

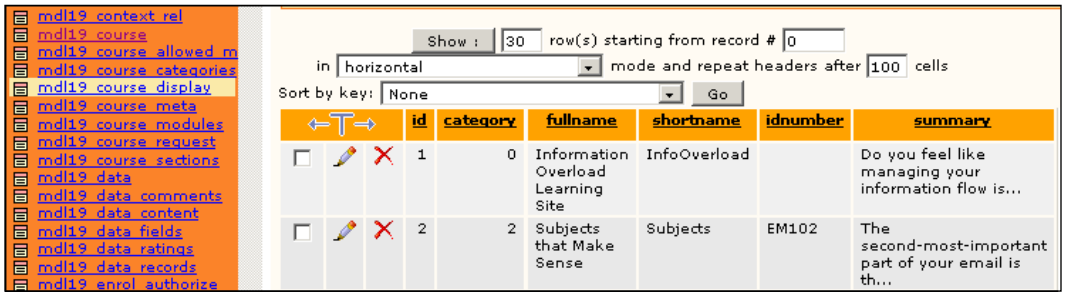
```
add, student, 007, EM102
```

This ID can consist of any alphanumeric characters, not just digits, and be up to 100 characters in length. In the **Edit course settings** page, you can see that **CourseID number** is an optional field:



www.it-ebooks.info

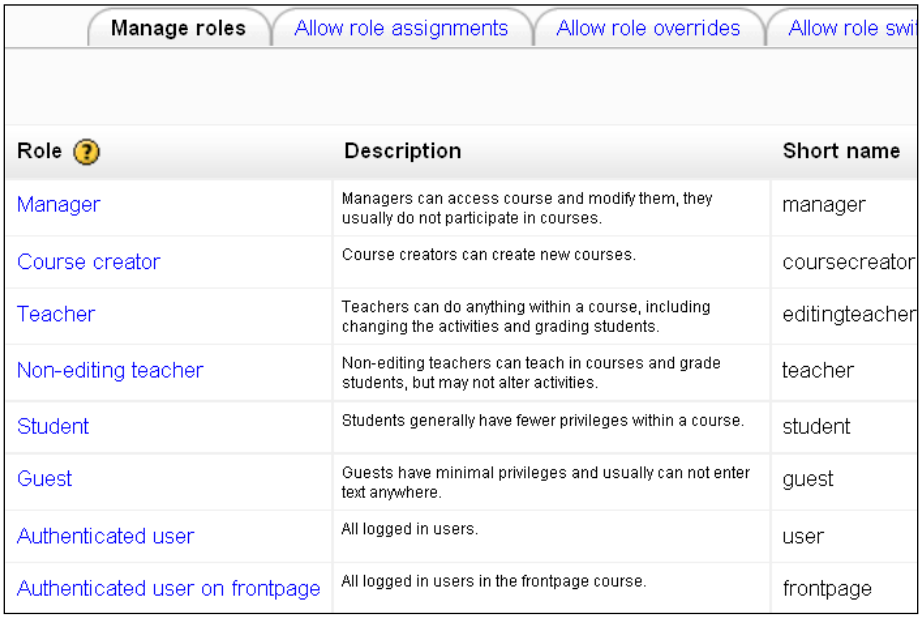
In the Moodle database, you will find the **CourseID number** in the table **mdl_course**, in the field; **idnumber**:



If you want to use a flat file to mass-enroll a group of students, and your courses don't have ID numbers, you can add them in the **Edit course settings** page for each course. If you need ID numbers for a lot of courses, your database administrator might be able to use a database command to fill that field.

Role

A user's role in a course determines what the user can do in that course. Later in the book, we'll discuss Moodle's built-in roles in detail, how to customize roles, and how to create new ones. For now, let's look at the built-in roles that Moodle gives you in a standard installation:



www.it-ebooks.info

A user can have a role in the site, and a role in a course.

When you use a flat file to enroll students in a course(s), the file specifies what role each user will have in the course. Let's return to our example:

```
add, student, 007, WP102
```

The preceding line from the file specifies that the user ID number `007` will be added as a `student` to the course ID number `WP102`.

Notice that the flat file uses *student* with a lowercase *s* while the role is called *Student* with a capital *S*. They don't match exactly because the flat file uses the short name of the role. To find out the short name of a role, go to **Administration** | **Site** | **Administration** | **Users** | **Permissions** | **Define roles**.

Summary of flat files

A flat file is an effective way to mass-enroll a large group of students into one or multiple courses at once. Remember that this method requires you to have a student ID number and course ID number. You'll need to populate those fields in your student records and course settings manually or automatically. If you're authenticating users against an external system that has ID numbers, such as your school's LDAP server, consider mapping the student ID number field to your server's ID numbers.

IMS Enterprise File

An IMS Enterprise File is a flat file (text file) that conforms to standards set by the IMS Global Learning Consortium. Many student information systems and human resources information systems can export an IMS-compliant file. For example, PeopleSoft and Oracle can export IMS files. These standards enable human resources systems and learning management systems to exchange data. Just like many word processors can read and write `.rtf` files, many human resources and learning systems can read and create IMS files.

If your organization uses an HR system that can produce IMS files, you can use this method to enroll and unenroll students. You can also use this method to create new courses. This would be especially useful for a school that wanted to offer teachers the option of an online work space for every course. Each semester, the school could export an IMS file from their enrollment system, read this into Moodle, and use it to create an online course for every class that your school offers.

www.it-ebooks.info

Or, let's return to an example used in the preceding flat file section. Suppose that all the nurses at your hospital need to be trained in patient privacy laws. We can assume that these nurses have records in the hospital's HR system. The HR system might also be used to track the courses and certifications that the nurses need. You could export the nurses' information from the HR system, including the courses and certifications that they need. When you import the IMS file into Moodle, it will create the courses needed and enroll the nurses in them.

You can find the IMS Enterprise Best Practice and Implementation Guide at `http://www.imsglobal.org/enterprise/enbest03.html`. That document states:

Corporations, schools, government agencies, and software vendors have a major investment in their systems for training administration, human resource management, student administration, financial management, library management, and many other functions. They also have existing infrastructure and systems for managing access to electronic resources. To be effective and efficient, Instructional Management Systems need to operate as an integrated part of this Enterprise system environment.

The objective of the IMS Enterprise specification documents is to define a standardized set of structures that can be used to exchange data between different systems.

LDAP

Remember that authentication happens when a user logs into your site, and enrollment happens when a user is made a student in a specific course. LDAP can be used for both, authentication and/or enrollment. If you use LDAP for one, you do not need to use it for the other.

LDAP, external database, and IMS Enterprise File are all able to create new courses as they enroll students. All the other methods can only enroll students in existing courses.

External database

You can use an external database to control student enrollment. In this case, Moodle looks in the designated database and determines if the student is enrolled.

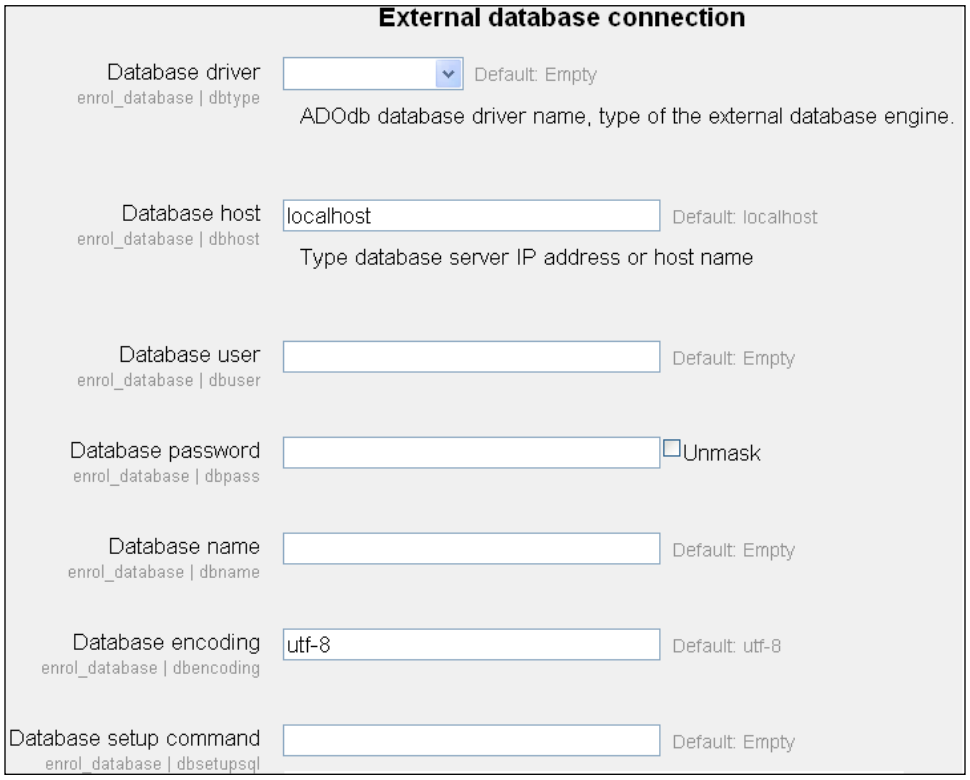
Moodle will not write back to the external database. All changes in the external database are made by another program. So to enroll and unenroll students, you will need to change the external database.

www.it-ebooks.info

In addition to using the external database, you can also allow Moodle's normal enrollment routine. If you enable manual enrollments in addition to the external database, Moodle checks two databases when a student tries to enter a course: the external one, and its internal one.

External database connection

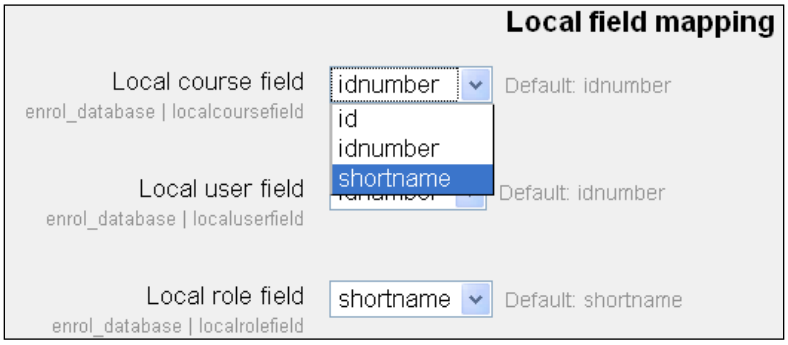
In the **External database connection** settings, you enter information that enables Moodle to connect to the external database. You should get this information from the administrator of the external database.



www.it-ebooks.info

Local field mappings

In the **Local field mapping** settings, you answer the question, *What name does the external database use for the course?* In the following screenshot, you can see that you have three choices:

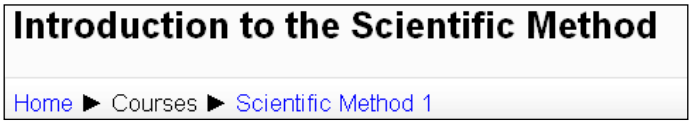


In Moodle, every course has an ID. The front page of your Moodle site is always `course number 1`. The next course that you create is `course number 2`, and so on. In your external database, you can use this ID to specify your courses. However, I recommend against using the ID in an external database. Let me explain why.

Suppose you install a new version of Moodle. Then, you export your courses out of your old Moodle installation. Now, suppose you import those courses into your new Moodle installation. The first course that you import will have an ID of `2`. The second course that you import will have an ID of `3`, and so on. These course IDs might be different from those in the external database. Therefore, when you connect your new Moodle site to the external database, the course IDs will no longer match.

Consider using the **idnumber** or **shortname** of the course in the external database. One advantage of using the **shortname** is that this is a required field for every course, so you know that every course will have one.

The **shortname** is used in the navigation bar at the top of the page. In the following screenshot, the **shortname** of the course is **Scientific Method 1**.



The **idnumber** of a course is optional. Students will not see the **idnumber**; only administrators and teachers see it.

www.it-ebooks.info

Remote enrolment sync and creation of new courses

In the **Remote enrolment sync** settings, you tell Moodle where in the external database, the student information and course identifiers are stored. In the **Creation of new courses** settings, you tell Moodle where in the external database to find information for creating new courses. In both areas, you are entering the name of tables and fields in the external database that holds the data which Moodle needs.

PayPal

The PayPal option enables you to set up paid access to the site, or to individual courses. When you select this option, you enter a value into the field **Enrol Cost**. This becomes the fee for joining the site. If you enter zero into **enrol_cost**, students can access the site for free. If you enter a non-zero amount, students must pay to access the site.

Selecting this option also puts an **Enrol Cost** field into each of the **Course Settings** pages. Again, entering zero into **Enrol Cost** for a course enables students to access it for free. Entering a non-zero amount requires students to pay in order to access the course.

The PayPal payment screen displays a notice that the course requires a payment for entry.

Mnet remote enrolments (formerly Moodle networking)

The official *Moodle documentation* describes Moodle networking as follows:

The network feature allows a Moodle administrator to establish a link with another Moodle, and to share some resources with the users of that Moodle.

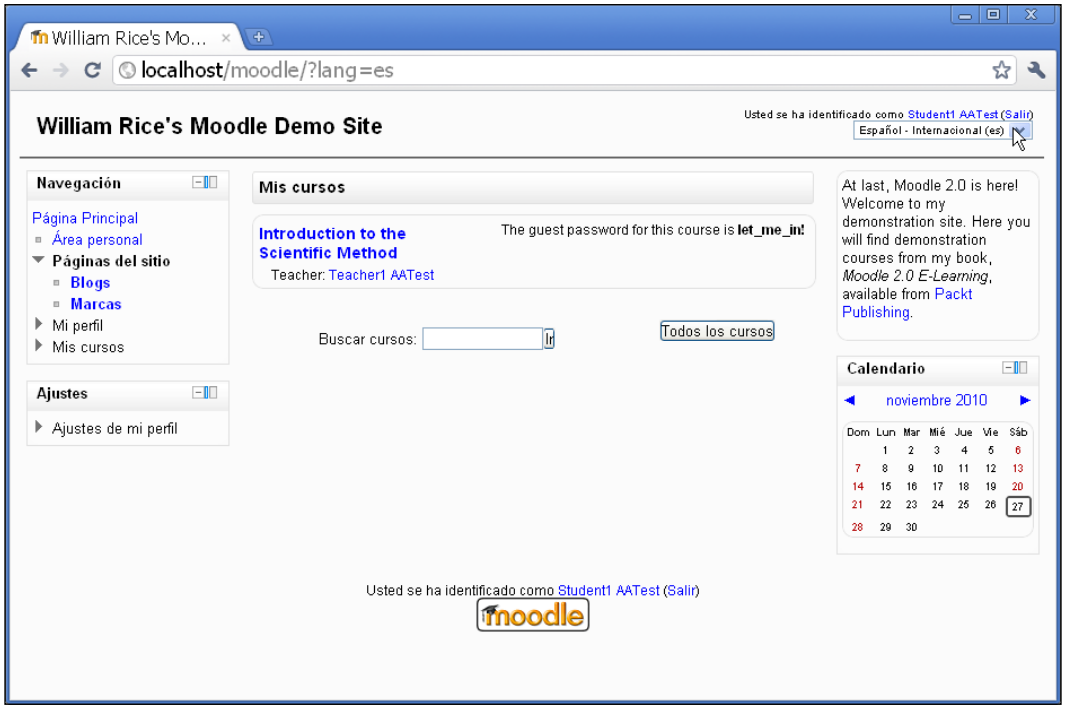
The initial release of the Moodle network is bundled with a new authentication plugin, which makes single-sign-on between Moodles possible. A user with the username `Jody` logs in to her Moodle server as normal, and clicks on a link that takes her to a page on another Moodle server. Normally, she would have only the privileges of a guest on the remote Moodle, but behind the scenes, single-sign-on has established a fully authenticated session for `Jody` on the remote site.

www.it-ebooks.info

If you need to authenticate users across Moodle sites that are owned by different people, then Moodle networking is an obvious choice. However, if all the sites are owned by the same person or institution, you need to weigh the advantages and disadvantages of using Moodle networking versus some kind of central login. For example, suppose several departments in your university install their own Moodle sites. If they want to authenticate students on all their sites, they could use Moodle networking to share student login information. This would make sense if the university's IT department could not, or would not, let them authenticate students against the university's LDAP server or student database. But if all the departments could authenticate against a central database maintained by the university, it would probably be easier for them to do so.

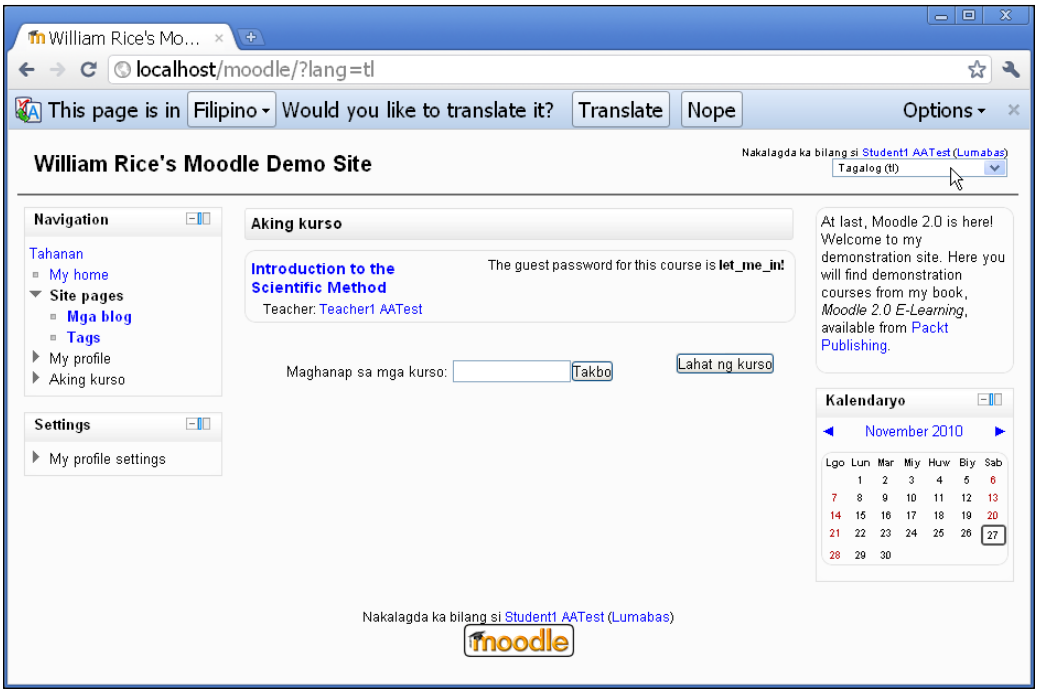
Language

The default Moodle installation includes many language packs. A language pack is a set of translations for the Moodle interface. *Language packs translate the Moodle interface, not the course content*. The following screenshot depicts the front page of a site when the user selects Spanish from the language menu:



www.it-ebooks.info

Notice that the interface is being presented in Spanish: menu names, menu items, section names, buttons, and system messages. Now, let's take a look at the same front page when the user selects **Tagalog** from the language menu in the following screenshot:

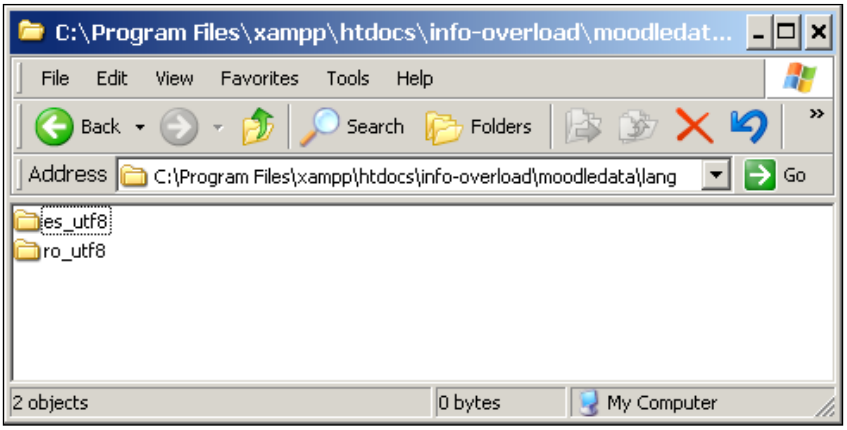


Notice that some of the interface has not been translated. For example, the month name in the calendar and some of the links under **Navigation** are still in English. When a part of Moodle's interface is not translated into the selected language, Moodle uses the English version.

www.it-ebooks.info

About language files

When you install an additional language, Moodle places the language pack in its home directory, under the subdirectory `/lang`. It creates a subdirectory for each language's files. The following screenshot shows the results of installing the International Spanish and Romanian languages:

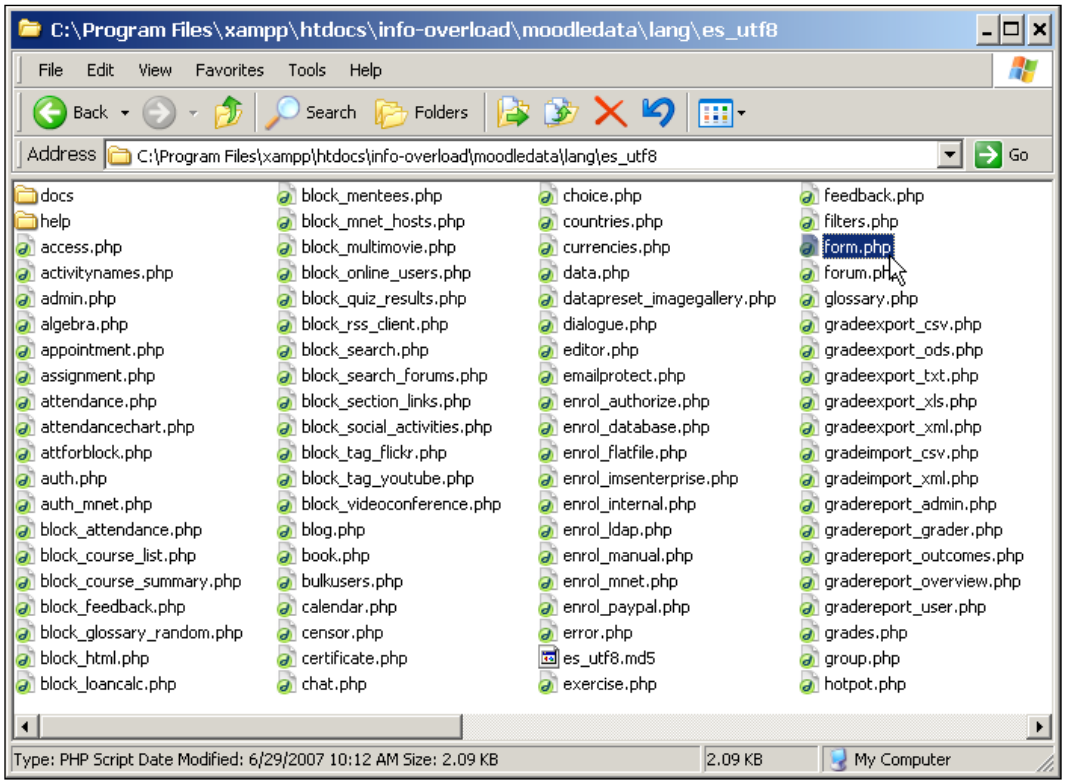


For example, the subdirectory `/lang/en_us` holds files for the U.S. English translation, and `/lang/es_es` holds the files for traditional Spanish (Espanol/Espana) translation.

The name of the subdirectory is the "language code." Knowing that code can be useful. In the preceding example, `es_utf8` tells us that the language code for International Spanish is `es`.

www.it-ebooks.info

Inside the directory of a language pack, we see a list of files that contain the translations as seen in the following screenshot:



For example, the file `/lang/es_utf8/forum.php` holds text used on the forum pages. This includes text that is displayed to the course creator when creating the forum, and text that is displayed to the students when they use the forum. The following are the first few lines from the English version of that file:

```
$string['addanewdiscussion'] = 'Add a new discussion topic';
$string['addanewtopic'] = 'Add a new topic';
$string['advancedsearch'] = 'Advanced search';
```


www.it-ebooks.info

And the following are the same first three lines from the Spanish version of that file:

```
$string['addanewdiscussion'] = 'Colocar un nuevo tema de discusión
aquí';
$string['addanewtopic'] = 'Agregar un nuevo tema';
$string['advancedsearch'] = 'Búsqueda'Búsquedaavanzada';
```

The biggest task in localizing Moodle consists of translating these language files into the appropriate language. Some translations are surprisingly complete. For example, most of the interface has been translated to **Irish Gaelic**, even though this language is used daily by only about 350,000 people. This is the nature of open source software: it's not always the largest group of users who get what they want, but often the most active one.

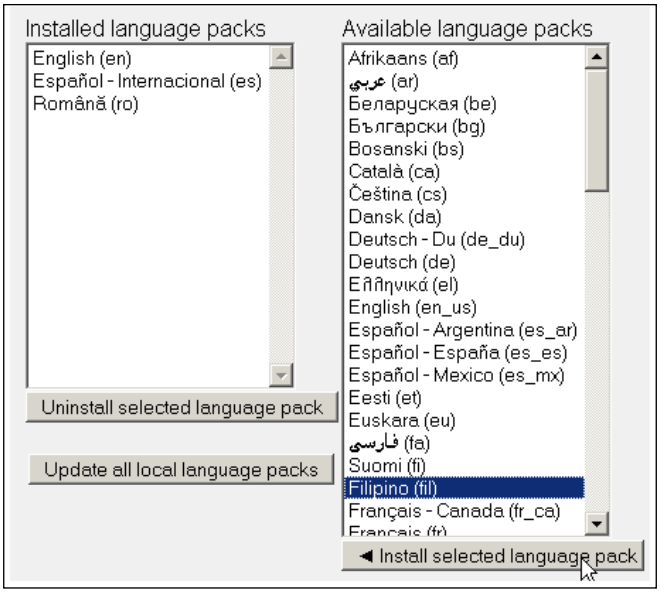
Installing and enabling additional languages

Using the **Site Administration** menu, you can install additional languages and make them available to your users. In the following subsections, we'll cover installing an additional language and configuring the language settings.

Installing additional languages

To install additional languages, your Moodle site must be connected to the Internet.

1. Select **Administration** | **Site Administration** | **Language** | **Language packs**. The page displays a list of all the available language packs:



www.it-ebooks.info

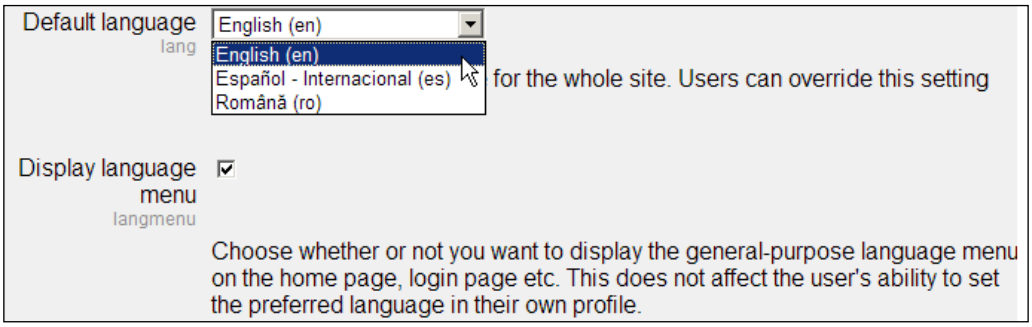
2. From the list of available languages on the right, select the language that you want to install.
3. Click the button for **Install selected language pack**. Moodle retrieves the most recent version of the language pack from the Web and installs it. This is why Moodle must be connected to the Web to use this feature. If Moodle is not connected, you will need to download the language pack and copy it into the `/lang` directory yourself.

If you don't see the language you want on the list of **Available language packs**, it's not available from the official Moodle site.

Configuring the language

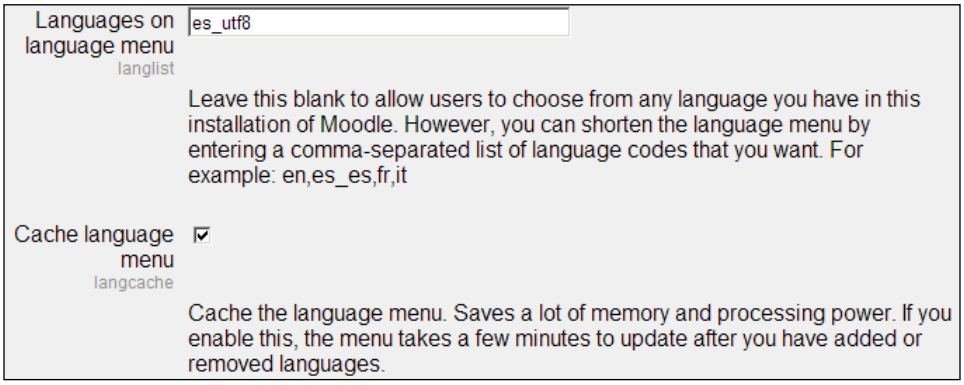
The settings covered in this subsection are found under **Administration** | **Site** | **Administration** | **Language** | **Language settings**.

The **Default language** setting specifies the language that users will see when they first encounter your site. If you also select **Display language menu**, users can change the language. Selecting this displays a language menu on your front page.



www.it-ebooks.info

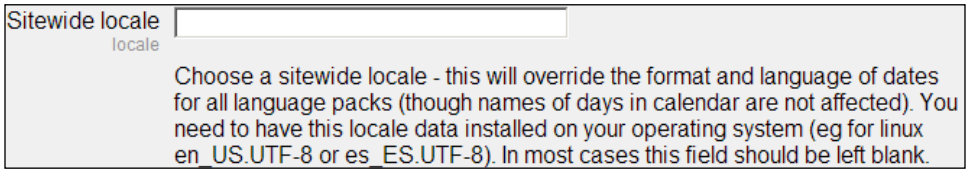
The setting **Languages on language menu** enables you to specify the languages that the users can pick from the language menu. The directions tell you to enter *language codes*. These codes are the names of the directories which hold the language packs. In the preceding subsection on language files, you saw that the directory `es_utf8` holds the language files for International Spanish. If you wanted to enter that language in the list, it would look as follows:



Leaving this field blank will enable your students to pick from all the available and installed languages. Entering the names of languages in this field limits the list to only those entered.

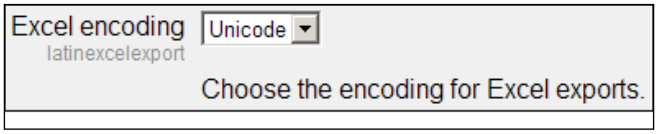
Sitewide locale

Enter a language code into this field, and the system displays dates in the format appropriate for that language.



Excel encoding

Most of the reports that Moodle generates can be downloaded as Excel files. User logs and grades are two examples. This setting lets you choose the encoding for those Excel files.



www.it-ebooks.info

Your choices are **Unicode** and **Latin**. The default is **Unicode**, because this character set includes many more characters than **Latin**. In many cases, Latin encoding doesn't offer enough characters to completely represent a non-English language.

Offering courses in multiple languages

The settings on the **Language Settings** page apply to the translation of the Moodle interface. However, they do not apply to the translation of course content.

If you want to offer course content in multiple languages, you have several choices.

1. You could put all the different languages into each course. That is, each document would appear in a course in several languages. For example, if you offered a botany course in English and Spanish, you might have a document defining the different types of plants in both English and Spanish, side by side in the same course: **Types of Plants** or **Tipos de Plantaras**. While taking the course, students would select the documents in their language. Course names would appear in only one language.
2. You could create separate courses for each language, and offer them on the same site. Course names would appear in each language. In this case, students would select the course in English or Spanish: **Basic Botany** or **BotánicaBásica**.
3. You could create a separate Moodle site for each language. For example, `http://moodle.williamrice.com/english` and `http://moodle.williamrice.com/spanish`. At the home page of your site, students would select their language and be directed to the correct Moodle installation. In this case, the entire Moodle site would appear in the student's language: the site name, menus, course names, and course content. These are things you should consider before installing Moodle.
4. You could use the *Multi-Language content* filter described later in this chapter to display the course content in the language selected by your user.
5. And lastly, you could use groupings to hide the different languages from different users.

Security settings

You will find security settings under **Site administration | Security**. This section will not cover every option under that menu. Instead, it will focus on the options that are not self-explanatory, and how they affect the user experience.

www.it-ebooks.info

The IP blocker: Limiting access to specific locations

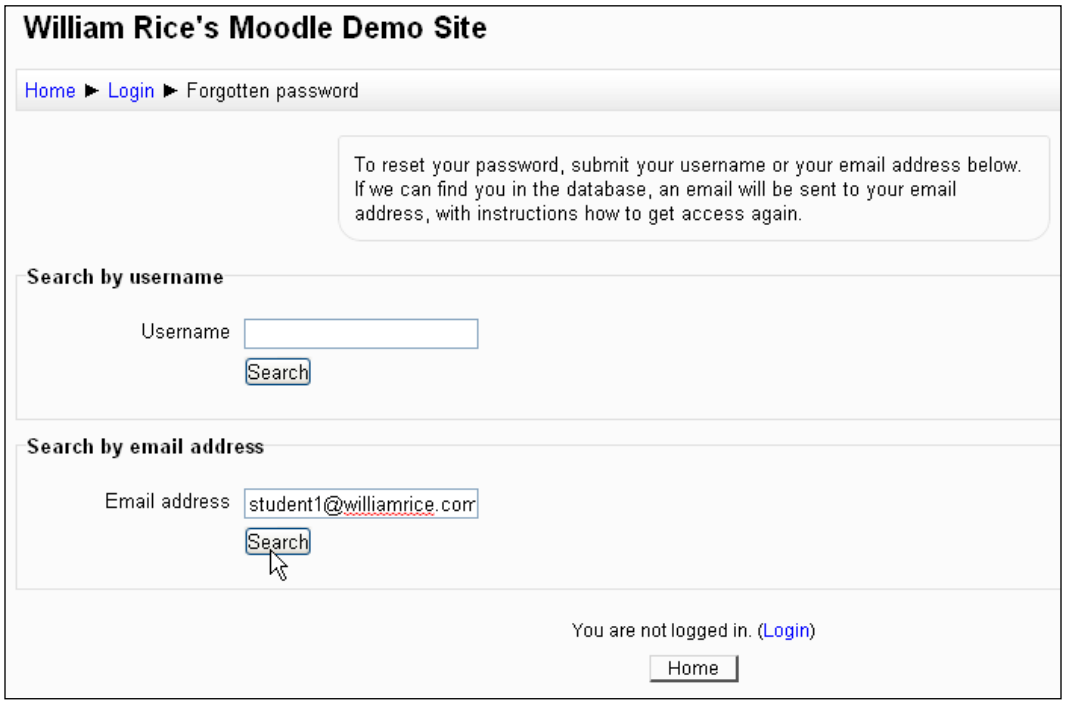
This page enables you to block and allow users from specific IP addresses. If you want to limit access to your Moodle to only the users who are on campus, this is especially useful.

Site policies

The site policies page contains a variety of security settings that you should either set yourself, or work with your administrator to set.

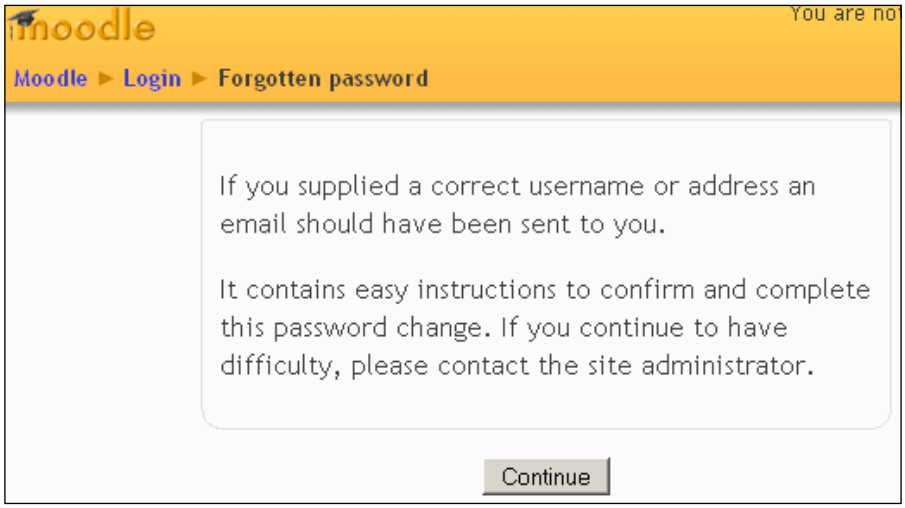
Protect usernames

If you forget your password, Moodle can display a page that enables you to retrieve it. If you enter your username or e-mail address, Moodle will send an e-mail with your login information:



www.it-ebooks.info

When Moodle sends this e-mail, it confirms the sending but does not display the e-mail address to which the message was sent:



The e-mail address is hidden to protect the user's privacy. Many countries have laws that forbid the disclosure of personal information. If someone could guess the usernames (which is often the case in large institutions), they could enter them into the lost password page and harvest e-mail addresses for abuse.

Forcing users to log in

As stated in the directions, setting this to **Yes** causes the front page to become hidden until a visitor logs in to Moodle. When visitors first hit your Moodle site, they see the Moodle login page.

Setting this to **Yes** means that you cannot use Moodle's front page as an information and sales tool. You can customize the text on the login page, but you won't be able to add all the features available on the front page.

Force users to login for profiles

What the directions don't state is that setting this to **No** enables anonymous visitors to read, not only teacher profiles, but also the profiles of any students enrolled in courses that have guest access. This may be a privacy issue.

The effect of enabling **Force users to login for profiles** is that anonymous visitors cannot read the profiles for the teachers in a course that accepts guest access. They must register as a student before being able to read student and user profiles. This may be a drawback if your teacher profiles are a selling point for the course.

www.it-ebooks.info

Consider enabling this to force people to register before reading student or teacher profiles. Then, if your teacher profiles are a selling point, you can add a section to the front page for *About Our Teachers*.

Open to Google

This setting lets the Google indexing robot into courses that allow guest access. If you want to know more about the **Googlebot**, see `http://www.google.com/bot.html`.

It seems that everyone with a website wants their site to be ranked high in Google's search results. However, you should consider whether you really want Google to add each of your guest-enabled courses to its search engine. There are several disadvantages:

- If your course content changes frequently, Google might index out-of-date information for your courses.
- Your students and teachers might not want their names and materials to be indexed and available to the public.
- If Google indexes all your guest-enabled courses, you have less control over what information about your site appears in Google. Everything on the pages that the Googlebot searches, is used in indexing your site. There might be items on those pages that don't accurately represent your site. For example, a negative forum posting or an off-topic discussion could become associated with your site. Also, if the focus or structure of your Moodle site changes, it may take awhile before all the Google references to all those pages are corrected.

If you want strict control over what information appears in Google about your site, then set **Open to Google** to **No**. Put only the information that you want to appear in Google on the front page of your site, and do not allow teachers or students to modify anything on the front page. This way, Google will index only your front page.

You should also request anyone who links to your site to link only to the front page (for example, "Please link only to `http//www.williamrice.com/moodle`, not directly to a course page.") Google and other search engines use links to your site to calculate your ranking. If all those links point to the same page, you can better control your site's public image. By disabling **Open to google**, and requesting that people link only to the front page, you are trading away some of your search engine presence in exchange for greater control of your site's public.

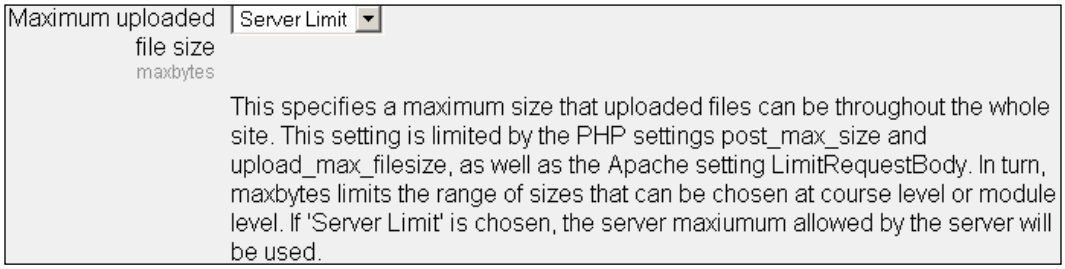
www.it-ebooks.info

For the ultimate in controlling what kind of indexed information is available about your site, consider this plan: Disable **Open to google** and enable **Force users to login** to keep search engine robots out of Moodle completely. Under **Users | Authentication**, set **Guest login button** to **Hide** to eliminate the possibility of any other search engine robots crawling your guest courses. Now you've locked out all but the registered users.

Put Moodle into a subdirectory of your site. Link to Moodle from the index page at the root of your site. In the demo site, we would put Moodle into `moodle.williamrice.com/moodle/` and link to it from `moodle.williamrice.com/index.htm`. Then, use `index.htm` as an introduction to the site. Ensure that `index.htm` contains exactly the kind of information you want the public to know about your site, and optimize it for the best search engine placement.

Maximum uploaded file size

On this page, you will also find a setting to limit the size of files that users and course creators can upload:



This setting affects students, teachers, and course creators. If you're creating a course that has a large file, such as a video, and Moodle forbids you from uploading the file, this setting might be the cause.

As stated in the directions on the page, there are three other settings that limit the size of a file that can be uploaded to your server. The first two are PHP settings and the third is an Apache setting. To see the PHP settings on your server, go to **Site Administration | Server | PHP info**. Scroll down until you see `post_max_size` and `upload_max_filesize`.

www.it-ebooks.info

The Apache setting `LimitRequestBody` also sets a limit on the size of uploaded files. The official Apache 2 documentation states the following:

> *This directive specifies the number of bytes from 0 (meaning unlimited) to 2147483647 (2 GB) that are allowed in a request body.*
>
> *The* `LimitRequestBody` *directive allows the user to set a limit on the allowed size of an HTTP request message body within the context in which the directive is given (server, per-directory, per-file or per-location). If the client request exceeds that limit, the server will return an error response instead of servicing the request. The size of a normal request message body will vary greatly depending on the nature of the resource and the methods allowed on that resource. CGI scripts typically use the message body for retrieving form information. Implementations of the* `PUT` *method will require a value at least as large as any representation that the server wishes to accept for that resource.*

Changing the limit on uploaded file size in PHP

If you have your own server, you can change the values for `post_max_size` and `upload_max_filesize` in the file `php.ini`. You will usually find this file in `/apache/bin`.

If you are using someone else's server (such as a hosting service), you probably can't change anything in `php.ini`. Try creating a file called `.htaccess` in the root of your Moodle installation that contains the following lines:

```
php_valuevaluepost_max_sizesize128M
php_valuevalueupload_max_filesizefilesize128M
```

Replace `128M` with any value that you need. If the server times out while uploading large files, you might add lines like the following to `.htaccess`:

```
php_valuevaluemax_input_time 600
php_valuevaluemax_execution_time 600
```

The variables `max_execution_time` and `max_input_time` set the maximum time allowed by a page to upload and process the files to be uploaded. If you will be uploading several megabytes of data, you may want to increase this setting. The execution time is specified in milliseconds (thousandths of a second). You can check your host settings for these under **Site Administration** | **Server** | **PHP info**.

www.it-ebooks.info

Then, place `.htaccess` into the directory with the PHP scripts that you want to run. For example, the script for uploading files is in the directory `/files`.

Your hosting service can disable `.htaccess`, which would make this solution impossible. You would need to ask your hosting service to change these values for you.

Changing the limit on uploaded file size in Apache

Just like you might be able to use `.htaccess` to override the PHP settings, you also might be able to use it to override the Apache settings. For example, placing the following line in `.htaccess` changes the limit on uploaded files to 10 MB:

```
LimitRequestBody 10240000
```

Notice that the limit is specified in bytes, not megabytes. Setting it to zero will make the setting unlimited. The highest number you can specify is `2147483647`, or 2 GB.

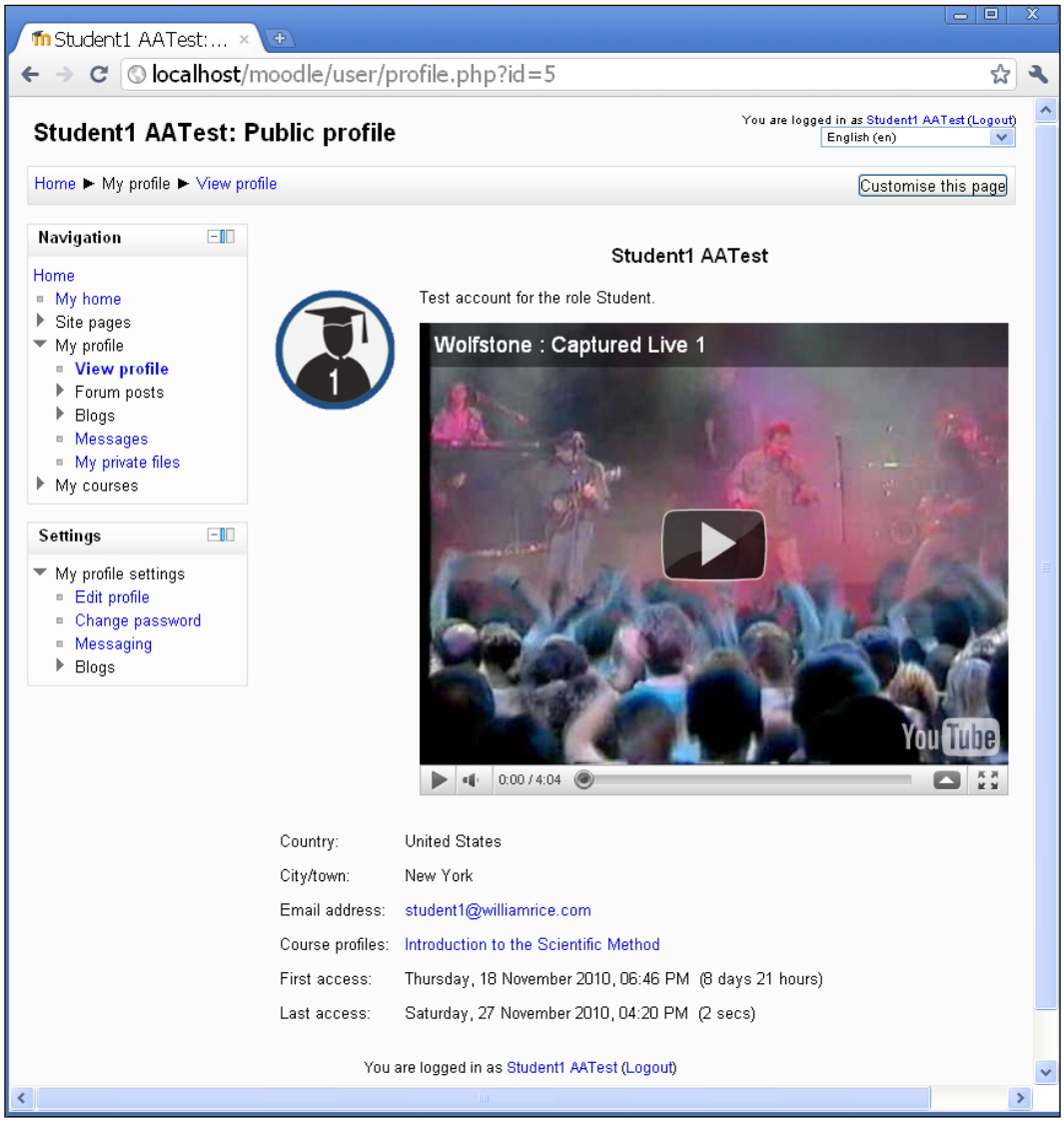
Allowing Embed and Object tags

By default, you cannot embed a Flash or any other media file in a Moodle page. Instead, media files are automatically embedded and played in Moodle's built-in media player. However, many course developers do not like to use Moodle's built-in media player. Instead, they prefer that their media plays on the course page, in the player designed for that media. One example of this is embedding a YouTube video in a web page.

If you allow users to embed objects in a Moodle page, then users can embed objects only in pages where they have editing rights. For example, a teacher can embed a YouTube video on a page in the teacher's course. But a student cannot, because the student cannot edit course pages.

www.it-ebooks.info

However, every user has a profile that they can edit. In the following screenshot, **Student1** has embedded a video in his profile:



HTTP security

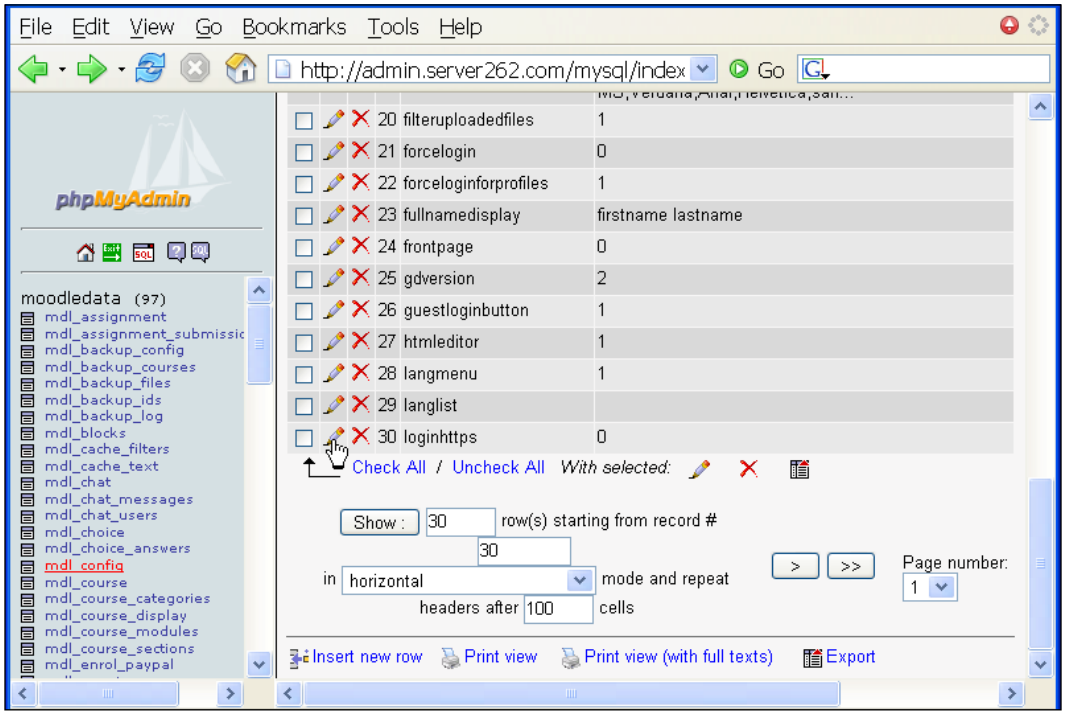
The HTTP security page has several options that you can use to further secure your site.

www.it-ebooks.info

Using HTTPS for logins

This setting is found under **Security** | **HTTP security**. If you enable this setting, but your server doesn't have HTTPS enabled for your site, you will be locked out of your site. Moodle will require you to use HTTPS when you log in, but you won't be able to comply. If that happens to you, then you must go into the Moodle database and change this setting to **No**.

The following screenshot shows an administrator using the web-based product **phpMyAdmin** to edit this setting in Moodle's database. Notice the setting for logging in via HTTPS is in the table `mdl_config`. The administrator is clicking on the edit icon. If this cell contains a `0`, HTTPS login is not required. If it contains a `1`, HTTPS login is required. If you're locked out because of HTTPS login, change the contents of this cell to **0**. Then try logging in again.



www.it-ebooks.info

Running Moodle entirely from HTTPS

While this is not a setting on the HTTP security page, we should note at this point that you can run Moodle entirely from a secure connection. You can do this by configuring your web server to serve Moodle's address using a secure connection. You will need to speak to your web server administrator for this.

Note that this greatly increases the amount of memory and processing time that your server will use when serving Moodle. Your system administrator will need to closely monitor the performance of the server to ensure that it gives your users acceptable performance.

Filters

Moodle's filters read text and media that the users put on the site. The filters can then do three things with that material: **link**, **interpret**, and/or **restrict**.

These filters can now be enabled site-wide by the administrator, disabled site-wide, or be turned off by default with the option of the teacher enabling them in individual courses.

A filter can automatically link words and phrases to items in your site. For example, suppose you create a Glossary that contains the phrase "self-determination." If you activate the Glossary Auto-linking filter, whenever that phrase appears on your site, it will be highlighted and will link to its glossary entry. When a reader clicks on the phrase, the reader is taken to the glossary entry.

Secondly, a filter can interpret what you have uploaded. For example, you could upload a document that is written in the markup language called; TeX (think HTML on steroids). The TeX Notation filter would interpret this document and enable Moodle to display it correctly. There's also an Algebra Notation filter that interprets a special markup language for writing math formulas.

Lastly a filter can restrict the kind of content that a user can place on the site. For example, the Word Censorship filter can filter out a list of "bad words" that you don't want to appear on your site. Every time that text is uploaded or entered, it is checked against the list of forbidden words.

You'll find the **Filters** settings under **SiteAdministration | Plugins | Filters**. Read the following descriptions for detailed information about what each filter can do for your site.

www.it-ebooks.info

Activity names and glossary auto-linking filters

The Auto-linking filters search the text on your site, and automatically link to items when they find an item mentioned in the text. For example, **GlossaryAuto-linking** looks for terms that are in any glossary, and when it finds them, it links the term to the glossary entry. The term is highlighted, and when a user clicks it, the user is taken to the glossary.

Activity Names Auto-linking searches course text for the names of course activities. When it finds the name of an activity, it links the activity. This means that whenever a student sees the name of an activity, the student can just click on the name and be taken to the activity, wherever he/she may be in the course. **Activity Names Auto-linking** works the same way for course activities.

Math filters

Algebra Notation and **TeX Notation** search the text for special characters used to describe mathematical formulas. For example, if you enter `@@cosh(x,2)@@` the **Algebra Notation** filter will display it as:

$$\cos \mathrm{h}^2\left(x\right)$$

If you enter `$$\Bigsum_{i=\1}^{n-\1}$$`, the **TeX Notation** filter will display it as:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n-1}$$

Algebra Notation and **TeX Notation** are standard markup languages. The `http://www.moodle.org` site contains more information about **Algebra Notation**. For more information about **TeX**, see the **TeX Users Group** at `http://tug.org/`. TeX is more mature and complete than **Algebra Notation**. If you plan on writing more complex equations, I suggest making the **TeX Notation** filter active and leaving the **Algebra Notation** filter inactive.

The **MathJax** filter enables you to include mathematical expressions that are created using the MathJax language in your course material. MathJax is supported in the latest versions of all major browsers. The user's browser does not require any plugins or special fonts to render the mathematical expressions. It has several other advantages over the alternatives for displaying equations. See more at `http://mathjax.org`.

www.it-ebooks.info

Email protection filter

Activating this filter makes e-mail addresses on the site unreadable to search engines, while keeping them 'human-readable'. If you set **Open to google** to **No**, or require users to log in, then you probably don't need to worry about search engines automatically picking up the e-mail addresses of your students. If your site is open to search engines and anonymous users, then you might want to use this filter to protect user's e-mail addresses.

Multimedia plugins

If you leave the multimedia plugins filter inactive, then multimedia content will usually play in a separate window. For example, without this filter, when a user clicks on a video, that video might open and play in a separate **Windows Media Player** or **RealPlayer** window. By activating this filter, you cause multimedia to play in Moodle's multimedia player.

Multi-language content

Earlier, you might have used the setting **Display language menu** to give your users a list of languages for the site. When a user selects one of these languages, only the Moodle interface is translated. The course content remains in whatever language you created it. If you want your site to be truly **multi-lingual**, you can also create course content in several languages. Activating the **Multi-Language Content** filter will then cause the course material to be displayed in the selected language.

To create course content in multiple languages, you must enclose the text written in each language in a `<span>` tag, as follows:

```
<span lang="en" class="multilang">Basic Botany</span>
<span lang="es" class="multilang">Botánica Básica</span>
```

This requires that you write the course material in HTML. This can be done for headings, course descriptions, course material, and any other HTML document that Moodle displays.

Word censorship

When this filter is activated, any word on the list of offensive words is blacked out. You can enter a list of banned words under the **Settings** for this filter. If you don't enter your own list, Moodle will use a default list that is found in the language pack.

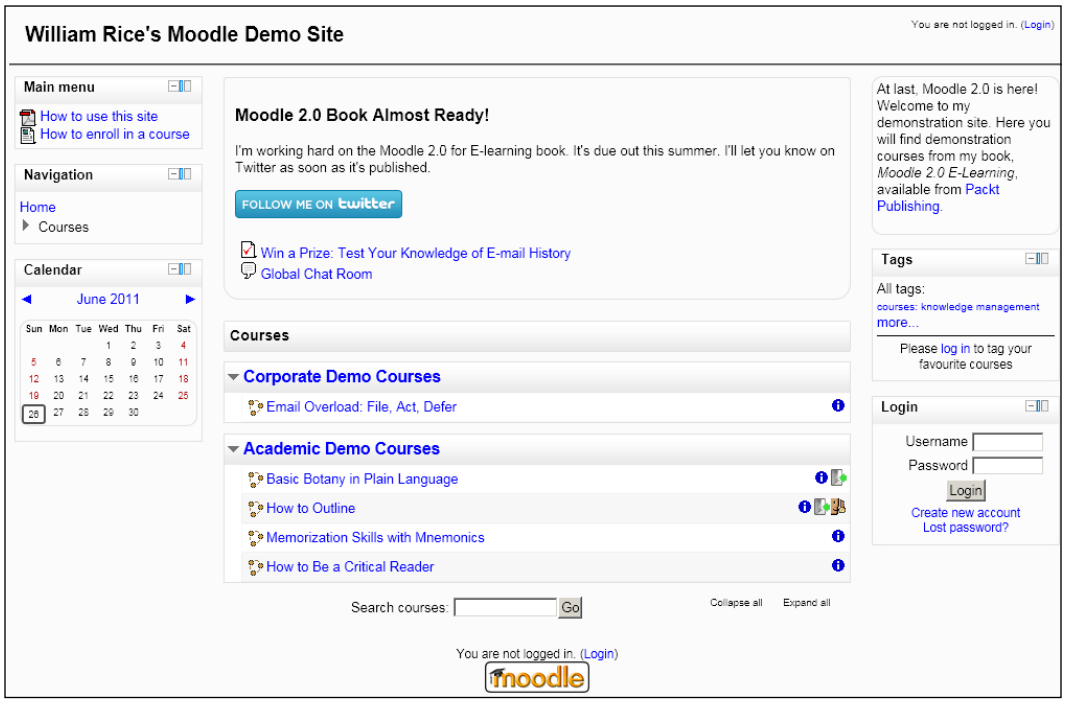
www.it-ebooks.info

HTML tidy

This filter checks the HTML that is written or uploaded to Moodle, and attempts to *tidy* it by making it compliant with the XHTML standard. If your audience is using a wide variety of browsers (or browser versions), or a screen reader for the blind, making your pages compliant with this standard could make them easier to render.

Configuring the front page

Your site's front page welcomes the world to your learning site. Moodle treats your front page as a special course. This means that you can do everything on the front page that you can do in a normal course, plus make a few additional settings.



How to use this section

Early in the process of building your site, you can make some decisions about the look and functioning of your front page. This section deals with those settings that make sense to select when you're first building your site. However, some configuration settings on the front page won't make sense until you've created some courses, and seen how Moodle works.

www.it-ebooks.info

Front page settings page

The settings for the front page of your site are found under **SiteAdministration | Front Page | Front Page Settings**.

Full site name

The **Full site name** appears at the top of the front page, in the browser's title bar, and also on the page tab when browsing with tabs.

The **Full site name** also appears in the metadata for the front page. The following are the first few lines of HTML code from the Front Page. The line containing the **Full site name** is in bold:

```
<htmlhtmldir="ltr">
<head>
<meta http-equiv="content-type" content="text/html; charset=iso-
8859-1" />
<style type="text/css">@import
url(http://moodle.williamrice.com/lib/editor/htmlarea.css);
</style>
<meta name="description" content="
Welcome to the Wilderness Skills site. If you have an interest in
primitive living/survival skills, you're at the right place. This
site offers courses in basic botany (just enough for a beginning
forager), shelter building, firestarting without matches,
orienteering, and other wilderness skills.The first course, Basic
Botany for Foragers, is free. It covers the terms and concepts you
need to know to understand most field guides and to talk about
wild plants. Try the free course, and if you like it, you can join
us for other courses for a low fee.">

<title>Wilderness Skills
</title>
<meta name="keywords" content="moodle, Wilderness Skills " />
```


www.it-ebooks.info

Front page summary

This summary appears in the left or right column of your site's front page. If you require visitors to register and log in before seeing the front page, remember that visitors will see this description *after* they have logged in. In that case, the front page summary can't be used to sell your site. Instead, it can instruct students on how to get started with your site. For example, "Take the introduction course to learn how to use this site…"

If your front page is visible to all visitors, then you can use this summary to sell your site, tempt visitors to take a sample course, tell them what's inside, and so on.

Also, this summary appears in the metadata of the first page. For example, we used the browser's **Show Source Code** function to show the HTML code for the site's front page. The description is highlighted so it's easier for you to spot:

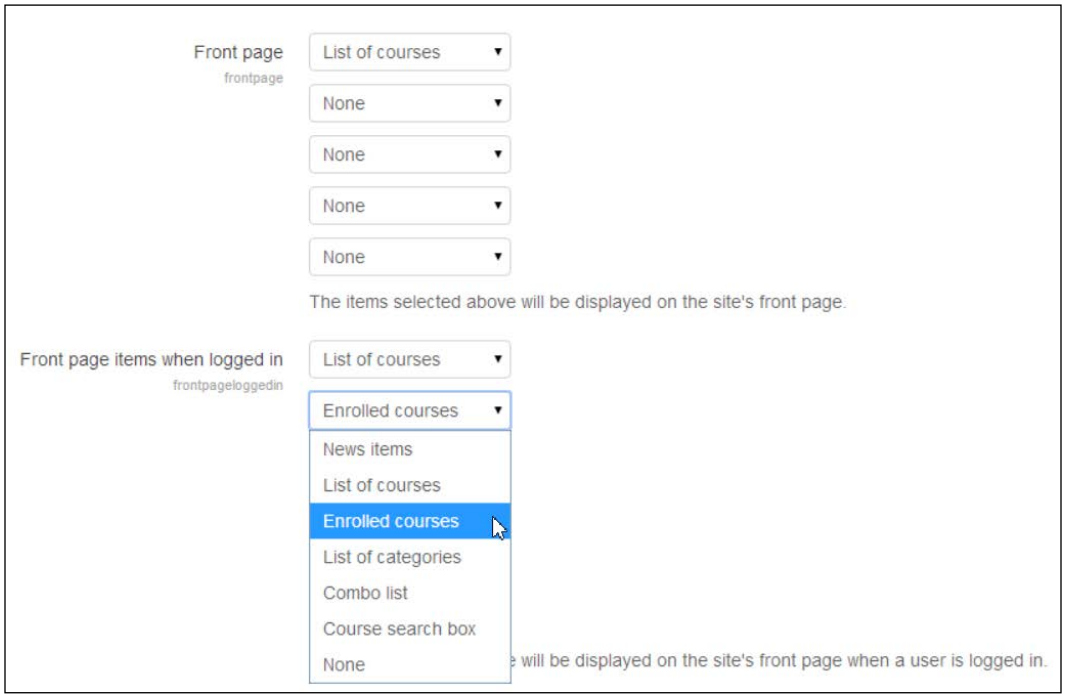
```
<htmlhtmldir="ltr">
<head>
<meta http-equiv="content-type" content="text/html; charset=iso-
8859-1" />
<style type="text/css">@import
url(http://moodle.williamrice.com/lib/editor/htmlarea.css);</style
>
<metametaname="description" content="
Welcome to the Wilderness Skills site. If you have an interest in
primitive living/survival skills, you're at the right place. This
site offers courses in basic botany (just enough for a beginning
forager), shelter building, firestarting without matches,
orienteering, and other wilderness skills.The first course, Basic
Botany for Foragers, is free. It covers the terms and concepts
you need to know to understand most field guides and to talk
about wild plants. Try the free course, and if you like it, you
can join us for other courses for a low fee.">

<title>Wilderness Skills</title>
<meta name="keywords" content="moodle, Wilderness Skills ""/>
```

The metadata of a page is used by search engines to help place it in the correct search results. So even if you decide to hide the box that displays the front page description, enter the description into the front page settings. It will make your site more findable on search engines.

www.it-ebooks.info

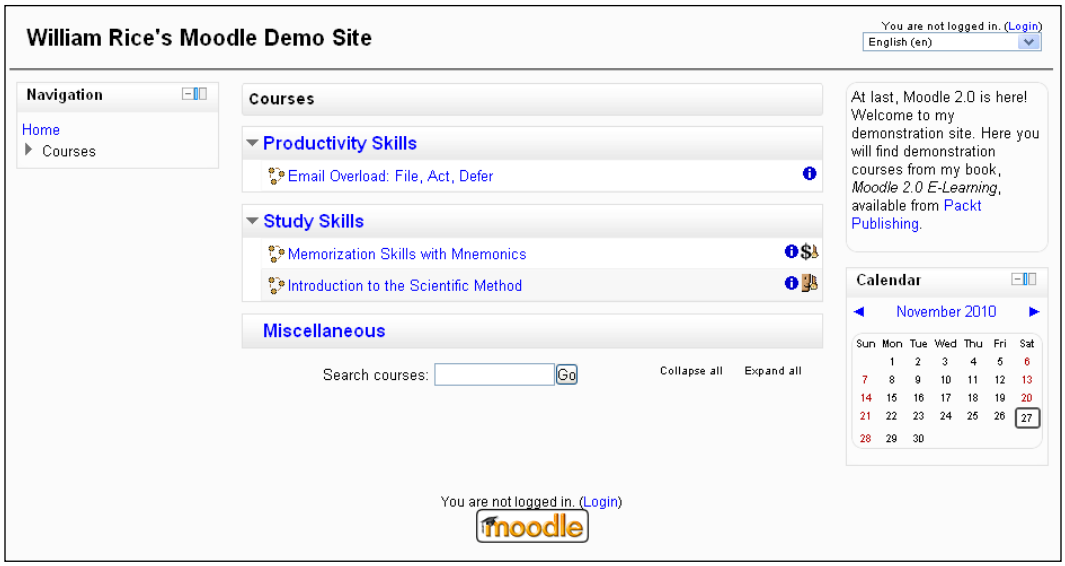
Front page items

Two settings determine whether the center column of the front page shows news items, a list of courses, and/or a list of course categories. These settings are **Front Page** and **Front page items when logged in**:



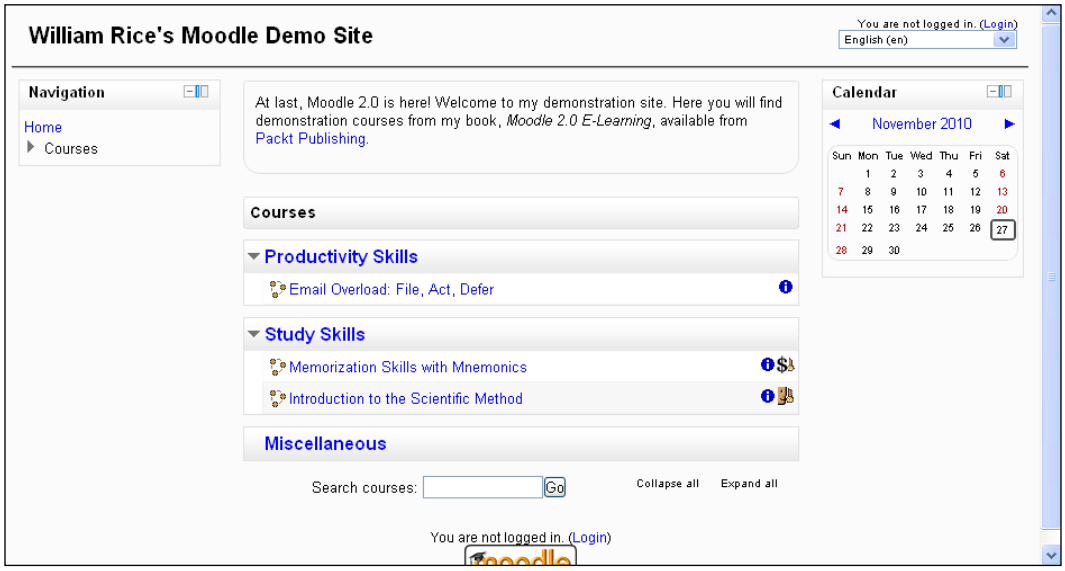
Notice that the front page settings apply to visitors who are not logged in. In the preceding example, we want to entice visitors with a list of the courses that we offer. However, since site news would probably not be of interest to anonymous visitors, we will show site news only to logged-in users. Each choice has its unique advantages.

www.it-ebooks.info



Using a topic section on the front page

Remember that the front page description always appears in the left or right column of the front page. It does not appear in the center column. If you want your site description (for example; `Welcome to the....`) at the top and center, you'll need to include a topic section, which always appears in the center of your front page, as seen in the following screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

You could make your site description the first topic. In this example, we turned the **Front Page Description** off. We are using the first topic to introduce the site instead. That puts the site description top and center, where it's most noticeable.

Show news items

This setting is useful if the content of your site changes frequently, and you want to keep the visitors informed. If one of the primary purposes of your front page is serving repeat customers, showing news items on the front page is a good idea.

Backup

You'll find the backup settings under **Site Administration** | **Courses** | **Backups**. Most of these settings enable you to choose the type of data that gets backed-up. You also choose which days of the week the backup will automatically run, and the hour the backup job will start. Usually, you want to choose a time when there are few users on the site. The backup is activated by the cron job routine.

Setting up the cron job

Some of Moodle's functions happen on a regular, timed schedule. The most visible example is mailing out notices to the subscribers of a forum that a new message has been posted. A script called `cron.php` checks periodically to see if new messages have been posted to any forum. If so, the script causes the notice to be e-mailed to the members of that forum.

The cron job also triggers routines that clean up old data and back up your courses.

The script `cron.php` must be triggered at regular intervals. You can set this interval. The mechanism that triggers the script is called a **cronjob**. Directions for setting up the cron job are in the `http://moodle.org/` installation guide.

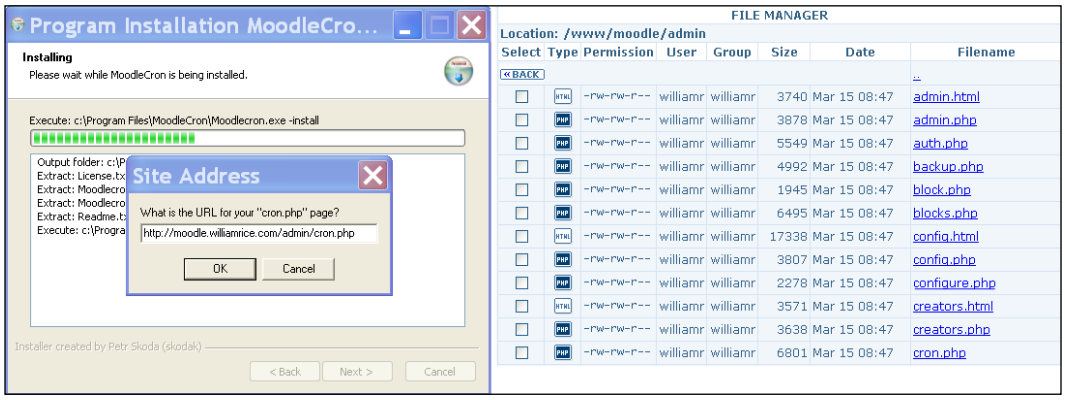
Some web-hosting services allow you to set up cron jobs. If you're buying hosting services, look for a host that allows you to set a cron job to run every hour or even every few minutes. Some hosting services allow you to run a cron job only once a day. This means that Moodle will perform those functions that depend on `cron.php` only once a day.

If you've been given space on your school or company's web server, speak to the system administrator about setting up the cron job. Moodle's `cron.php` uses very little memory and few system resources. Most servers could run it every 15 minutes without affecting the server's performance.

www.it-ebooks.info

If you cannot set up the cron job on your host, then your only other option is to set up the cron job on a Windows machine that you control. The cron job will reach out over the Internet to your Moodle site, and activate the script `cron.php`. Again, directions for this are in the `http://moodle.org/` installation guide. However, if you choose this option, you must keep that Windows PC running all the time, and it must also be connected to the Internet at all times. If the Windows PC goes down or offline, the Moodle functions that require periodic triggering will also go down.

The following is a screenshot of the installation of the **MoodleCron** application, where we specify the location of the `cron.php` script. In this example, you can see the line **Location: /www/moodle/admin**, which on our server corresponds to `www.moodle.williamrice.com/admin`. Moodle's `/admin` directory holds `cron.php`.



Summary

This chapter tells you how to make changes to your site's configuration. It covers the settings that, in our experience, you are most likely to change. Many of these settings affect the behavior of the entire site. You don't need to get these choices perfect the first time, because you can return to these settings and edit them at will. As you proceed with building your site, you will probably want to experiment with some of them.

In the next chapter, we will create courses and categories for our course catalog.

www.it-ebooks.info

www.it-ebooks.info

4
Creating Categories and Courses

This chapter shows you how to create a new, blank course. In this chapter, you will see how to create the course, choose the best format for your course, and enroll students into the course.

You will also learn how to create course categories, and to use those categories for organizing your course catalog. While someone else may have installed Moodle and created categories for you, you can always go back and change them.

We will also cover some of the more advanced settings that you can use in your course —completion and conditional activities. These settings will enable you to better track your students' progress through the course, and to require students to complete the course material in a specific order.

Later chapters in this book will show you how to fill your course with resources and activities.

If your students enroll themselves, they will usually choose the course from a list or a catalog of courses. The list of courses is organized by category. So, let's begin by learning how to use course categories to organize our courses.

Using course categories and the user experience

Categories are a site-wide way to organize your courses. You can also create subcategories. The categories or subcategories become an online course catalog. Organize them in the same intuitive way you would a printed course catalog.

www.it-ebooks.info

Every Moodle course belongs to one course category. Even if you choose to hide the display of categories, each course must still belong to a category. For sites with one or a few courses, we often hide and ignore the categories and display just the courses. When we need to show our users an organized catalog, then we display the categories and subcategories.

Displaying courses and categories on your front page

There are several ways to display categories on the front page of your Moodle site.

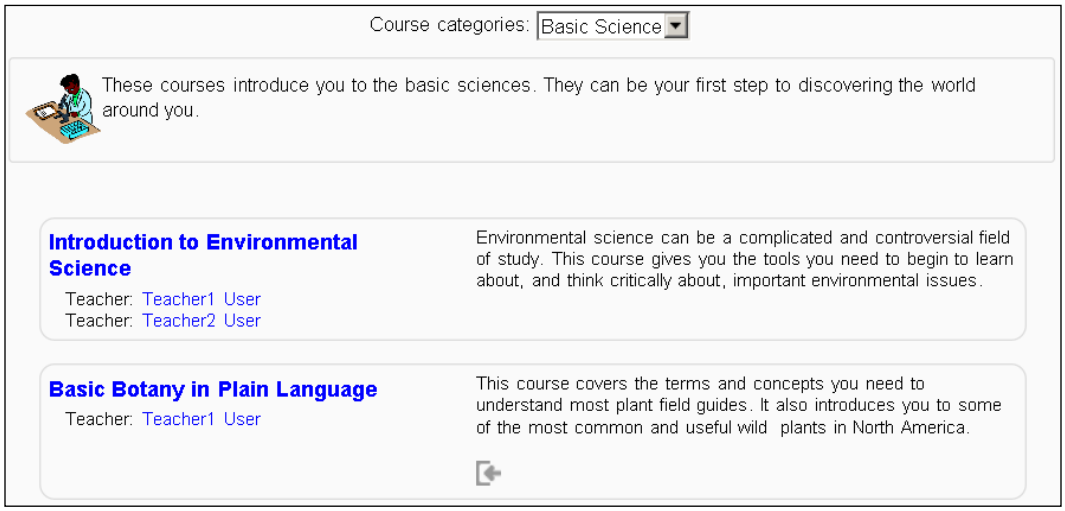
The list that shows both course categories and the courses is called the *combo list*. It looks like what is seen in the following screenshot:

The combo list gives your front page an organized appearance. If you have a moderate number of courses, and the categories are self-explanatory for your users, this might be a good option for your front page.

www.it-ebooks.info

If you have a lot of categories and courses, a combo list might be too long for your front page. In that case, you could display just the course categories, as in the next screenshot:

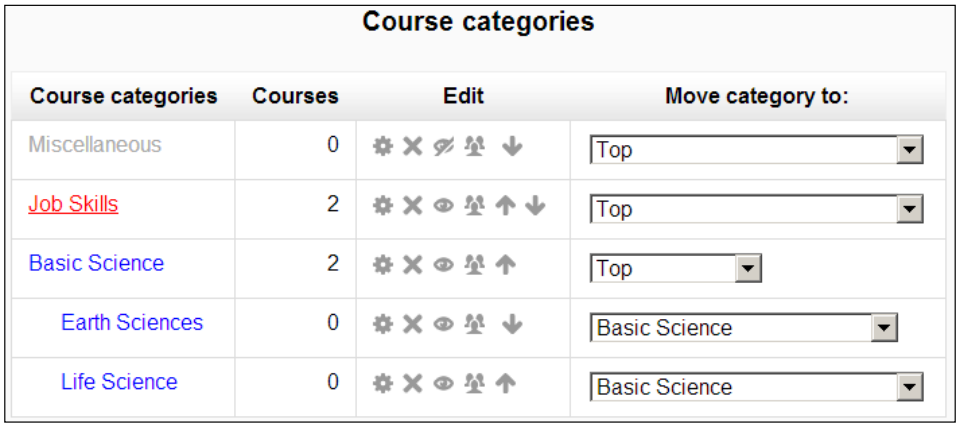
Then, the user would select a category and see the courses under that category, as displayed in the following screenshot:



Notice that unlike the combo list, in this list, the description for each course is displayed. And, even though the student is looking at the **Basic Science** category, a drop-down list of **Course categories** enables the student to see the other categories as well. Typical of Moodle, this enables the student to jump to another part of the site without having to return to the front page.

www.it-ebooks.info

You can also create subcategories. In the following screenshot, you can see the subcategories under **Basic Science**:

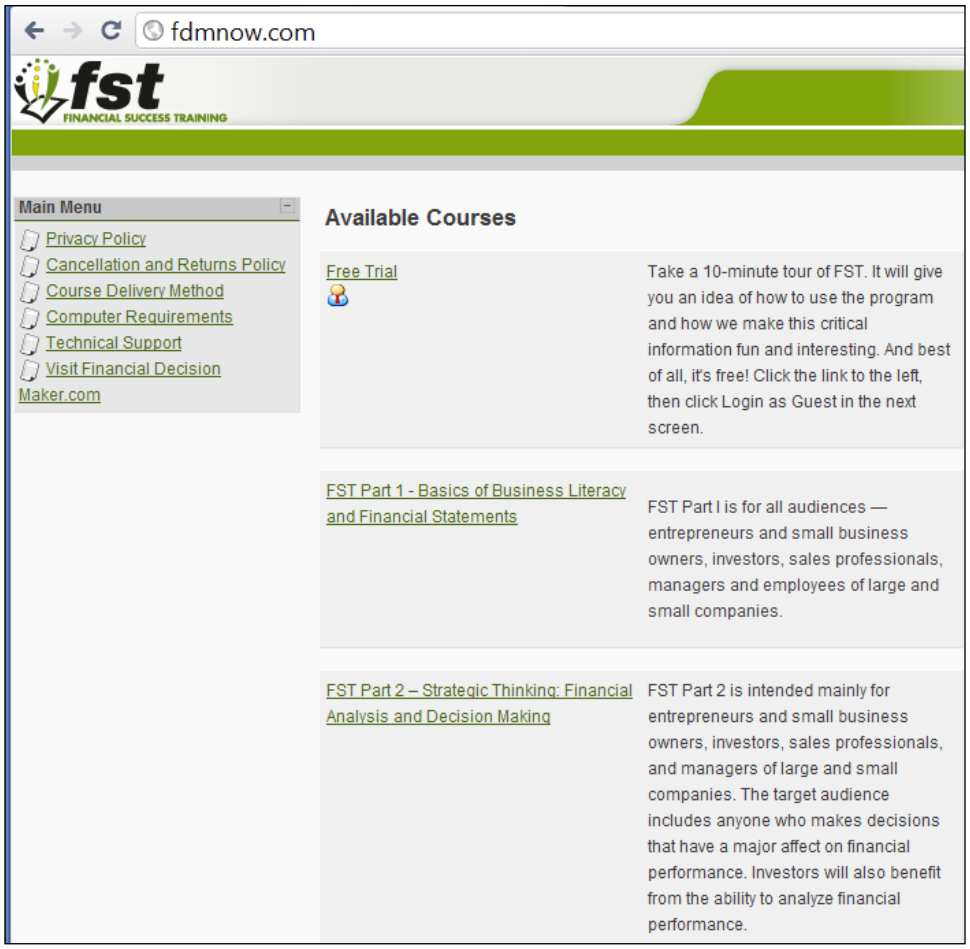


If you have too many categories to display on the front page, organize them into categories and subcategories. Then, hide the subcategories using the setting under **Site Administration** | **Front page** | **Front page settings** | **Maximum Category Depth**.

Displaying an uncategorized list of courses on your front page

The third option for showing courses on the front page is an uncategorized list of courses. This is a good option if your site has only a few courses. Some sites start out with only one course. In that case, creating a separate category for that course and displaying a category list, doesn't make sense. For example, the site shown in the following screenshot offers a demonstration course and two courses that require payment. A simple list of courses with the course descriptions makes the most sense for this site:

www.it-ebooks.info



Choosing the best option for your front page

When you are deciding which option to use for your front page, try to put yourself into your student's situation.

If your students will be looking for…	…then consider using…
A specific course by name.	An uncategorized list of courses, displayed alphabetically.
A specific type of course, but they are unsure of the name.	A combo list or category list, so that the student sees the types of courses offered.

www.it-ebooks.info

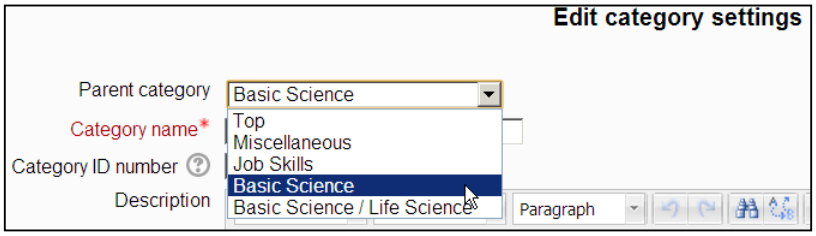
If your students will be looking for…	…then consider using…
Either specific courses by name, or types of courses.	A combo list. Add a notice to the front page that the student can search for courses by name (see *Add instructions to your front page with labels* in *Chapter 5, Resources, Activities and Conditional Access*).
They don't know.	An uncategorized list of courses, if you have only a few courses. You can use the course description to sell each course. If your list of courses is too long for the front page, you'll need to use a category list and include information on the front page to convince visitors to explore the categories (*Add instructions to your front page with labels* in *Chapter 5, Resources, Activities and Conditional Access*).

Now that we have discussed how each option can affect how your student sees and uses the site, let's see how to implement each of these options:

Creating course categories

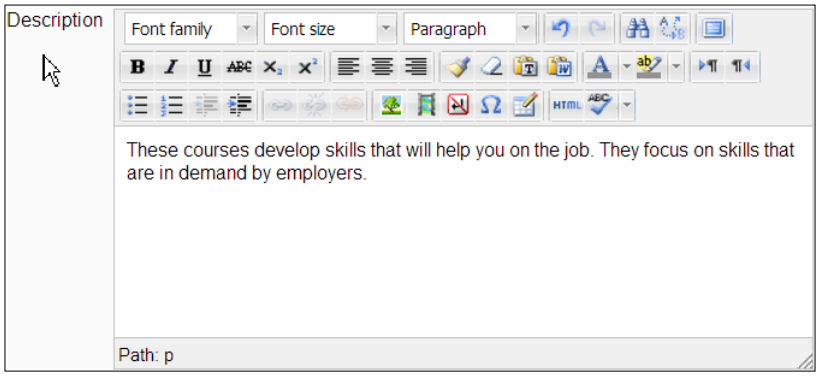
You must be a site administrator to create, edit, and delete course categories. Perform the following steps to create course categories:

1. If you're not logged in as the administrative user, log in now. Use the **Login** link in the upper-right corner of the page.
2. You should be looking at the home page of your new Moodle site.
3. From the **Administration** menu on the left side of the page, click **Site Administration | Courses | Manage courses and categories**. This displays the **Course categories** page. In this page, you create new categories and courses. Here, you can also arrange the order in which the categories are displayed on the front page.
4. Click the **Create a new category** link. The **Add new category page** is displayed.
5. Select where, in the hierarchy of categories, this one will be. In the following example, it will be a subcategory of **Basic Science**:

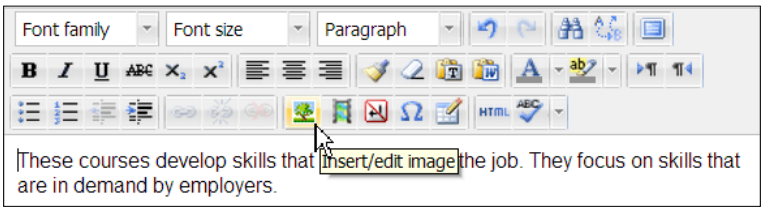


www.it-ebooks.info

6. In the **Category name** field, enter a name for the category. Your users will see this in the category list.
7. In the **Description** field, enter a description for the category. If you configure your front page to show a list of categories, the user will see this description on selecting a particular category. Enter some information in order to help your users decide if this is the category they need.



8. The category description can have the same features as any Moodle web page. For example, you can add a graphic to the category description, as shown in the following screenshot:



In *Chapter 5*, *Resources, Activities, and Conditional Access*, we show you how to use Moodle's web page editor. This is the same editor that you see in the preceding screenshot.

9. Click the **Create category** button. Moodle creates the category and returns you to the **Manage courses and categories** screen.

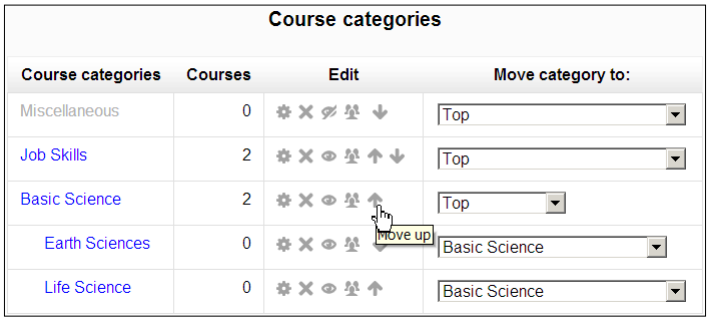
www.it-ebooks.info

Rearranging course categories

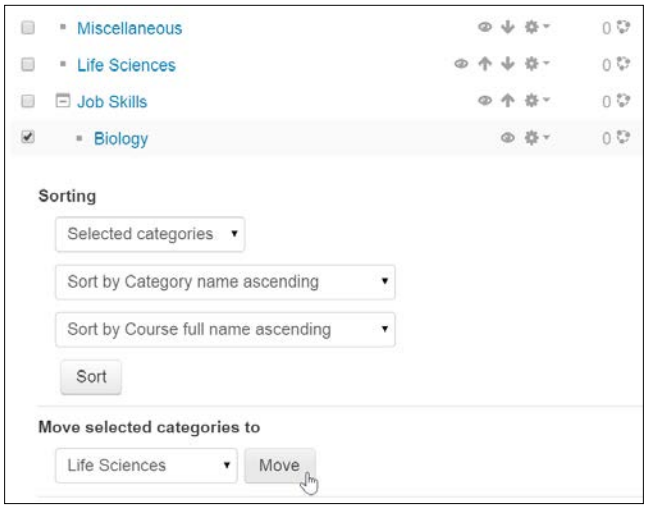
You must be a site administrator to rearrange course categories. The order in which you put them on this page, is the order in which your users will see them listed.

If you're not logged in as a site administrator, log in now. Use the `Login` link in the upper-right corner of the page.

1. You should be looking at the home page of your new Moodle site.
2. From the **Administration** menu on the left side of the page, click **Site Administration | Courses | Manage courses and categories**. This displays the **Course categories** page.
3. To move a category up or down in the list, click the arrow button next to the category:



4. To convert a category into a subcategory, select the category and then use the **Move selected categories to** drop-down list:



www.it-ebooks.info

5. You do not need to save your changes. The changes you made on this page are automatically saved as you make them.

Creating courses

As stated earlier, every course belongs to a category. Don't worry if you mistakenly put a course into the wrong category. It is easy for a site administrator manager to change the category of a course.

Creating a course and filling it with content are two different functions. In this section, we talk about creating a blank course, with no content. In later chapters, we talk about adding material to a course.

To create a course, a user must have the site-wide role of the site administrator or manager. To add material to a course, a user must be the site administrator, course creator, manager, or teacher (usually the teacher adds material).

Creating a new, blank course

When you create a blank course, most of your choices and settings will be done on the settings page for the course. The Moodle help icons on this page do a good job of explaining the purpose of each setting. However, the directions do not specify the implications of the choices you make on this page.

In the instructions given next, I've added some commentary to help you determine how your choices will affect the operation of your course, and how the student/teacher is affected by those choices. My goal is to help you make the right choices in order to create the teacher/student experience that you want.

The result of this procedure is a new course, ready for adding course material.

To create a new, blank course follow the given steps:

1. Log in to the site as a site administrator, manager, or course creator.
2. Select **Site Administration** | **Courses** | **Manage courses and categories**.
3. Click the **Create new course** link. The **Edit course settings** page is displayed.
4. From the drop-down list at the top of the page, select a category for the course.

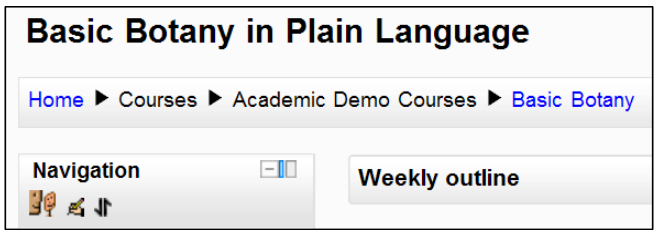
   You can use the drop-down list to change the category at any time. The list shows both visible and hidden categories.

www.it-ebooks.info

As your site grows and you add more categories, you might want to reorganize your site. However, if a student logs in while you are in the middle of creating categories and moving courses, he or she might be confused. It would be best if you can make the reorganization as quickly as possible —ideally, instantaneously.

You can speed up the reorganization time by hiding your categories as you create them. This lets you take your time while thinking about what categories to use. Then, move the courses into the categories. Each course will disappear until you finally reveal the new categories.

5. Enter a **Full name** and a **Short name** for the course.
6. The full name of the course appears at the top of the page when viewing the course, and also in the course listings. The short name appears in the breadcrumb, or **Navigation** bar, at the top of the page. In the following example, the full name is **Basic Botany** in plain language and the short name is **Basic Botany**:



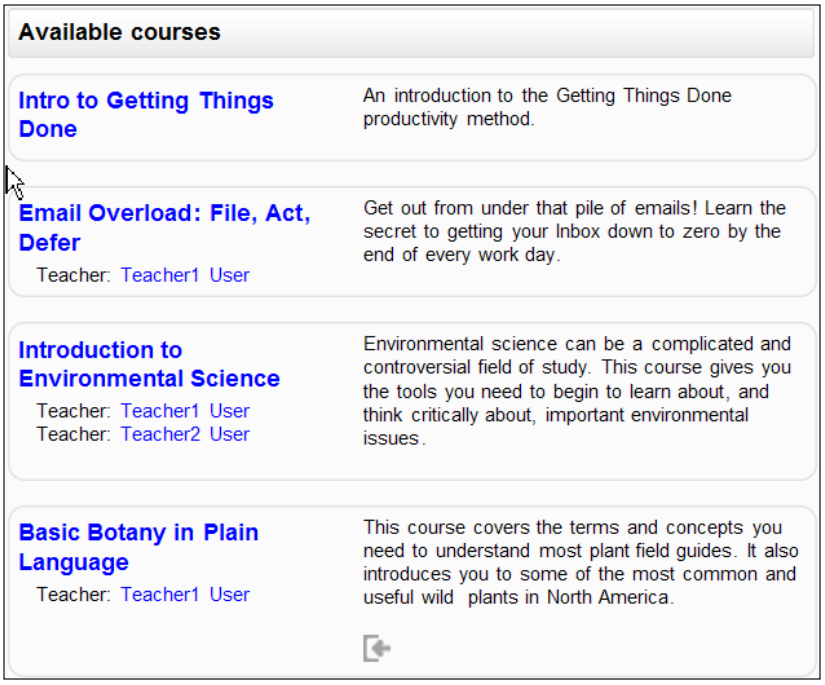
The full name also appears in the page's title and meta data, which influences how it appears in the search engines. The following is the HTML code, generated by Moodle, for the preceding example:

```
<head>
    <title>Course: Basic Botany in Plain Language</title>
    <link rel="shortcut icon"
href="http://localhost/moodle/theme/image.php/standard/
theme/1359480837/favicon" />
    <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html;
charset=utf-8" />
<meta name="keywords" content="moodle, Course: Basic Botany in
Plain Language" />
```

Notice the full course name in the `<title>` and `<meta>` tags. Many search engines give a lot of weight to the title tag. If your Moodle system is open to search engines, choose your course title with this in mind.

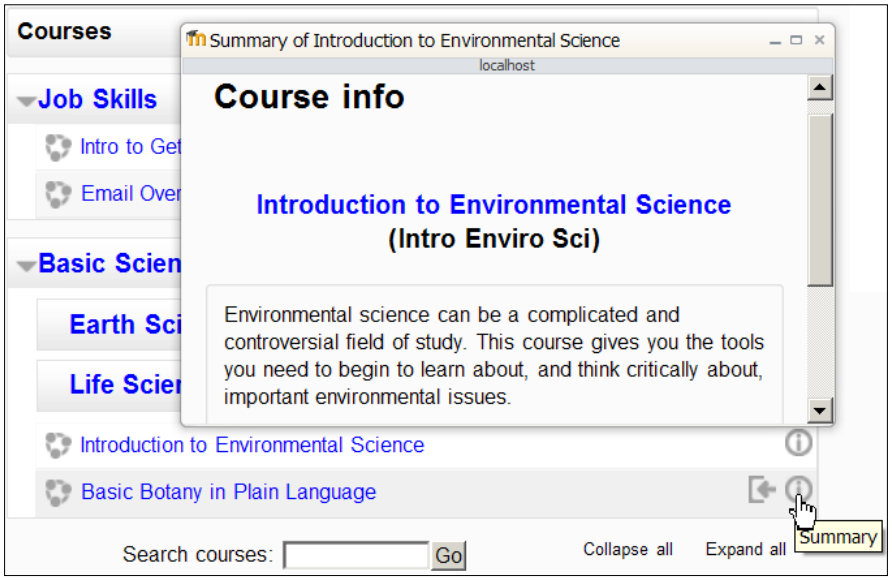
www.it-ebooks.info

7. Enter a **Course ID Number**: *Chapter 3*, *Configuring Your Site* talks about using an external database for enrollment information. If you are using an external database to enroll students, then the ID number that you enter into this field must match the ID number of the course in the external database. If you're not using an external database for enrollment information, you can leave this field blank.
8. Enter a **Course summary**: If you choose to display a list of courses on the front page, then the course summaries are displayed with the names of the courses, as seen in the following screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

If you choose to display a combo list on the front page, then the course summary is displayed when the user clicks on the info icon next to the course name, as in the following screenshot:



9. If you allow visitors to see your front page without logging in, they will probably read your course summaries before enrolling. Consider the summary to be a resume of the course. Your course summaries need to be informative and work as a sales tool. They should offer enough information to help your visitors decide if they want to enroll, and should describe the courses in their best light.
10. Select a format for the course. Among your choices are the following:
    - Topics
    - Weekly (unless this is changed by the site administrator, this is the default format for a new course)
    - Social
    - Single Activity Format

    The *Topics format* is the most intuitive format to use for a course. Because it displays each part of the course as a numbered topic, this format encourages most students to proceed through the course sequentially. However, by default, Moodle does not enforce this sequence, so students are free to jump ahead and behind in the course.

www.it-ebooks.info

You can force students to complete the activities in a specific order by using conditional activities. This is covered in detail later in the book. To use conditional activities, your system administrator must enable the feature Enable conditional access under **Site Administration | Advanced Features** . If you want to force students to complete sections of your course only at designated times, then consider using the **Restrict Access** setting under each topic's (or each week's) **Summary Settings**. Again, this is covered later in the book. For now, just select the Topics format. Later, we'll show how to force students to complete topics in a specific order or during a specific time period.

The *Weekly format* appears almost identical to the Topics format, except that it displays dates for each topic. As of this writing, Moodle does not automatically enforce these dates. That is, Moodle does not turn the weekly sections on and off on the appropriate dates. The site administrator or teacher must do that.

The *Social format* turns the entire course into one discussion forum. Discussion topics are displayed on the home page of the course. Replies to a topic are added and read by clicking on **Discuss this topic** link.

The Social format is very different from a traditional, sequential course. It lacks the ability to add activities and resources in the main course area, which you find in the Topic and Weekly formats. However, because the Social format turns the entire course into a discussion forum, it offers you the chance to put a discussion forum right into the course listings. Then, you can have a discussion appear in the course listing on the front page of your site.

The SCORM format enables you to upload a SCORM compliant activity. This activity then becomes the entire course.

When to use the SCORM course format?

If you want to use a **Sharable Content Object Reference Model** (**SCORM**) package as a part of your course, then use the Topics or Weekly format. Then, you can add the SCORM package as an activity in the course. If you want to use a SCORM package as your entire course, then use the Single Activity format and upload the SCORM. That package becomes the entire course.

www.it-ebooks.info

11. Select the **Number of weeks/topics**.

    If you selected the Topics or Weekly format for your course, you must specify how many topics or weeks your course will have. You can change the number of weeks or topics in a course whenever you want. If you increase the number, then blank weeks/topics are added. If you decrease the number, then weeks/topics are deleted. Or, so it seems.

    One of Moodle's quirks is that when you decrease the number of sections in a course, the topics that are dropped are not really deleted. They're just not displayed to the students. If you increase the number of topics, those hidden topics will again be displayed to the students with their content intact. And teachers who are in editing mode will see the dropped topics as greyed out, under a section called *Orphan*. The teacher can still access and edit those orphaned topics.

    Notice that this is different from hiding weeks/topics from students. When you hide topics or weeks, students can't see them but the teacher can. When a section disappears because the number of weeks/topics in the course was reduced, it is unseen to everyone, even the teacher. The only way to bring it back is to increase the number of weeks/topics.

If you accidentally decrease the number of weeks or topics too much and some of the sections that you created disappear, don't panic. They are still there. Just increase the number of weeks or topics and the sections will reappear, or go into the editing mode for the course and you will see the orphaned topics.

12. Set the **Course start date**.

    For a Weekly course, this field sets the starting date shown. It has no effect on the display of Topic or Social courses. Students can enter a course as soon as you display it; the course start date does not shut off or hide a course until the start date. The only other effect of this field is that logs for the course activity begin on this date.

If you want to limit the dates that a course is available for the students to enroll, look under **Course administration** | **Enrolled users** | **Enrolment methods**. Enable the enrolment method for **Self enrolment**. Then under the settings for **Self enrolment**, set the **Enrolment duration**.

    If you want to test a course without creating user records, then enter a date in the future into the **Enrolment duration**. As you test the course, your activity will not be included in the logs.

www.it-ebooks.info

13. Select how the course will display **Hidden sections**.

    The setting **Number of weeks/topics** determines how many weeks or topics your course has. Each week or topic is a section. You can hide and reveal any section at will except for Topic 0, which is always displayed. To hide and reveal a section, turn course editing on and click on the open or closed eye icon next to the section.

    If you select **Hidden sections are shown in collapsed form** under **Hidden Sections**, then the titles or dates of sections that you have hidden will appear grayed out. The user cannot enter that section of the course, but does see that it is there. This is most useful if you plan to make sections of a course available in sequence, instead of making them available all at once. If you select **Hidden sections are completely invisible**, then hidden sections are invisible to the students. Course creators and teachers can still see those sections and access the resources and activities in them.

    If you choose to make hidden sections completely invisible to the students, then there is no real disadvantage to having more sections than you're using. You can keep a section that you're working on hidden, and then reveal it when you're finished. If you want to modify an existing section, you can create a hidden duplicate of the section, work on it and with a few clicks in a few seconds, hide the old section and reveal the new one.

You can move resources between sections in a course. This makes a hidden section a convenient place to hold that resources that you might want to use later, or that you want to archive. For example, if you find a site on the Web that you might want to use in your course later, but you're not sure, you can create a link to the site in a hidden section. If you eventually decide that you want to use the site, you can just move that link from the hidden section to one of the sections in use.

14. Specify how many News Items to show in the Latest news block.

    For **Weekly** and **Topics** course formats, a News forum automatically appears on the Home Page of the course. If you want to delete this forum, set the **News Items to Show** to zero and then delete the forum.

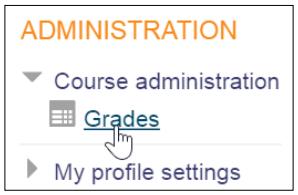
    The News forum is like any other forum, except that its postings appear in the **Latest news** block. Like other forums, the course creator and editor can enable or disable the ability of the students to create new topics, and to reply to existing topics.

www.it-ebooks.info

The **Latest news** block automatically disappears if you have **News items to show** set to zero, or if there are no news items (no topics in the forum). Also, the **Latest news** block can be manually hidden, regardless of this setting or how many news items are posted.

The maximum number of news items that the block will show is 10.

15. If **Show gradebook to students** is set to **Yes**, then a student can view a list of all their grades for the course by clicking the **Grades** link in the **Course administration** block, as shown in the following screenshot:



If the course allows Guest access, the guests will not be able to earn grades. So if your site has a free sample course, and you want people to see how Moodle displays their grades, you might want to make people register for that free sample.

16. You can see a report of your activity in each course that you take under your profile. Note that your personal activity report is in your profile, not in the courses. Whether or not a student's activity for a course will be kept in the student profile is determined by the setting **Show activity reports**. For a course that allows guest access, setting this to **Yes** usually doesn't make much sense. Remember that every anonymous, unregistered user enters the course under the name Guest. So having a report that shows the grades and activities for a Guest is usually not very useful. To track how many people tried a sample course and the parts of the course that they sampled, allow the users to create a free account in the fully functioning sample course. Make this especially easy by not requiring e-mail confirmation when the student registers; instead, give instant approval. Now you can track and study individual usage in the sample course. To keep anonymous users out of the courses requiring registration or payment, use a Login page for such courses.

www.it-ebooks.info

17. The setting for **Maximum upload file size** limits the size of a file that a student can upload into this course. There is also a site-wide limit set under **Site Administration** | **Security** | **Site policies**. The smaller of the two settings—site-wide or course—takes precedence here.
18. The color and icons that Moodle uses are determined by its theme. Usually, you would use the same theme throughout your site. However, teachers and even students can change the theme that they use. The setting **Force theme** determines if users can choose a different theme when they are in this course, or if they must use the selected theme.

A theme can do more than just provide a pleasant color scheme. For example, you can assign the courses a distinctive theme for each teacher, or assign the same theme to all the courses in a category, and so on. For more about themes, see the official Moodle site at `http://moodle.org`.

19. Under Guest access, choose whether or not to allow guests to take the course. You can also set a guest password. This password applies only to guests, not to enrolled students.
20. Select the **Group mode**.

    Later in the book, you will learn how to separate the students in a course into groups. This setting determines how the individual activities in the course react to the presence of groups in the course. If you do not use groups in the course, this setting has no effect.

    When set to **No**, all students in the course are considered to be in one big group. When set to **Separate**, students in a group cannot see the names of any other groups. That is, the work done by different groups is kept separate. When set to **Visible**, students in different groups can see the students from other groups.

    You can change this setting for individual activities. For example, suppose you want to run groups through a course separately. However, you have one project where you want all the students, in all the groups, to be able to see each other's work. You can choose **Separate** for the course, and for that one project, override the setting with **Visible**. Now, only for that one project, each group can see the other group's work.

www.it-ebooks.info

Running Separate Groups Through a Course, Versus Having Separate Courses

Using **Separate** groups enables you to reuse a course for many groups, while giving the impression to each group that the course is theirs alone. However, this doesn't work well for a Weekly format course, where the weeks are dated. That's because the course home page displays the dates for each week. If you start each group on a different date, the weekly dates will become incorrect.

If you're running a Topics format course, you can easily reuse the course by separating your students into groups and running each group individually. Later, you'll see how to assign teachers to a course. You can assign a teacher to a group, and remove their ability to see other groups (remove the capability *accessallgroups*). This will result in each teacher seeing only his or her students.

If you run several groups through a course, and those groups are at different points in the course, be aware that the teacher cannot regulate the flow of students through the course by turning the topics off and on. That is, you cannot reveal just Topic 1 until the group has finished it, and then reveal Topic 2 until the group has worked through it, and then Topic 3 and so on. If you tried this while running several groups who were at different points in the course, you'd be turning off topics that some groups need.

If you really must enforce the order of topics, use conditional activities to reveal activities after the previous ones have been completed by a student.

21. Normally, the group mode of the course can be overridden for each activity. When the course creator adds an activity, the teacher can choose a different group mode than the default one set for the course. However, when **Force group mode** is set to **Yes**, all activities are forced to have the same group mode as the course.
22. The **Default grouping** for the course determines how groups are filtered in the gradebook. This setting has no effect unless you are using groupings. A grouping is a group of groups. It can consist of one or more groups from the course that is put into a grouping. All groups can then be managed as one single group.
23. While you're working on a course, you may want to set **Availability** to **This course is not available to students**. This will completely hide your course from the students' view. Teachers and administrators can still see the course, so you can collaborate on the course content with them.
24. Select a setting for **Force language**. Selecting **Do not force** enables a student to select any language on the pull-down list of languages.

www.it-ebooks.info

Remember that the languages on the pull-down list are limited by the setting you choose under **Site Administration | Language | Language Settings | Display language menu** and **Languages on language menu**. And, you must have the language pack installed for any language that you want to use.

Also remember that only the standard Moodle menus and messages are translated automatically when a student selects a different language. Course material is not translated unless the course creator entered material in another language and used the Multi-language content filter.

25. If you want to use different terms for the roles in your course, you can use **Role Renaming**. Moodle inserts your term for a teacher or student into its standard messages. You can substitute the term teacher with anything like instructor, leader, and facilitator. For students, you could use terms like participant or member.
26. At the bottom of the page, click the **Save Changes** button.

Congratulations! You now have a new, blank course. You're ready to start configuring and filling it with great material.

Enrolling teachers and students

Who will teach your course? And how will students be enrolled? The settings that you choose for your course enrolment will determine that.

Assigning teachers

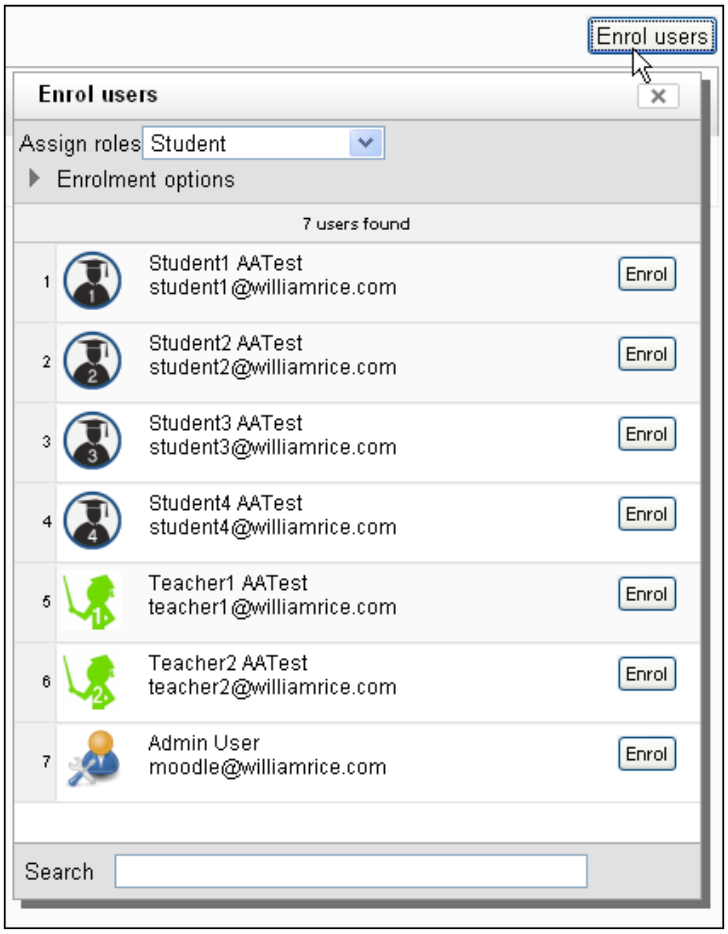
After a site administrator, manager, or a course creator has created a blank course, (s) he can assign a teacher to build the course.

To assign a teacher to a course:

1. The teacher needs an account on your site. If you need to manually create the teacher's account, see the *Creating test accounts* section in *Chapter 3*, *Configuring Your Site*.
2. Enter the course as administrator or manager.
3. From within the course, select **Course administration | Users | Enrolled users**.

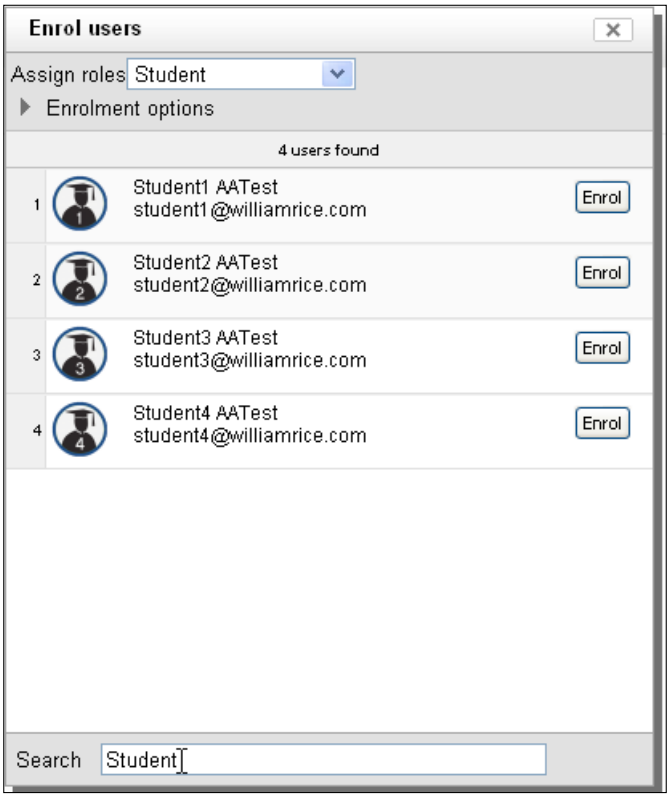
www.it-ebooks.info

4. In the upper-right corner of the page, click the **Enrol users** button. The **Enrol users** window is displayed as in the following screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

To find a user, enter any part of the user's name into the **Search** field and then press [*Enter*] or [*Return*] on your keyboard:



5. From the **Assign roles** drop-down list, select **Teacher**.
6. Next to the user's name, click the **Enrol** button. The display of that user's name will change to indicate that (s)he is enrolled.
7. When you finish enrolling users, click the close box for this window. On returning to the **Enrolled users** page, you will see the user added to the list of enrolled users.

How to set enrolment methods

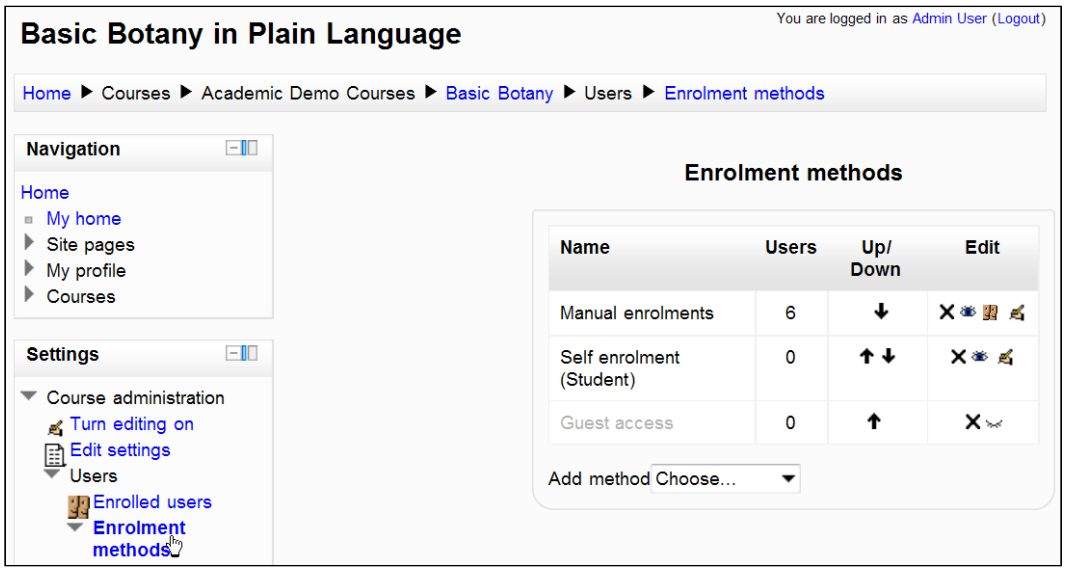
In *Chapter 3, Configuring Your Site* in the section *Enrolment Methods*, you enabled a list of enrolment methods for your site. For each course, you can enable or disable any or all of these enrolment methods.

www.it-ebooks.info

The teacher can enable, disable, and arrange only the interactive enrolment methods. Interactive enrolment happens when a user tries to enroll on a course. The user must do something to be enrolled, such as select a course and confirm that they want to enroll, or paying for a course.

Non-interactive enrolment methods are checked when a user tries to login to a course. For example, an external database or LDAP server. Only a site administrator can enable or disable a login-time enrolment method. These are not managed at the course level, but at the site level.

1. Enter the course as a site administrator or teacher.
2. Select **Course administration** | **Users** | **Enrolment methods**. The **Enrolment methods** page displays all of the enrolment methods that are enabled for the site, as shown in the following screenshot:



3. To enable or disable an enrolment method for a course, click the eye icon. When the eye is open, that enrolment method can be used for that particular course. When the eye is closed, that enrolment method is not available for that course.
4. Place the enrolment methods in the order in which you want this course to use them. Do this by clicking on the up and down arrows next to each enrolment method.

www.it-ebooks.info

Many enrollment methods have a separate page for settings where you can configure that method, as shown in the following screenshot:

If you enable an enrollment method, you should at least look at the settings page for that method and determine if you need to change any of the settings.

www.it-ebooks.info

Handling course requests

The site administrator can enable course requests. When this is enabled, any logged-in user can request a course. The site administrator, manager, and course creator can then create the requested course.

Enabling course requests

1. The site administrator must enable course requests.
2. While logged in as the administrator, select **Administration** | **Site administration** | **Courses** | **Course request**.
3. Click to place a check mark in the field labeled **Enable course** requests.
4. Other settings on this page will enable the users to select a category for the course that they select.
5. For the field **Course request notification**, select everyone who you want to be notified when someone requests a course. If you want to select several users, use control-click to select them all.
6. Save your changes.

Getting notified about course requests

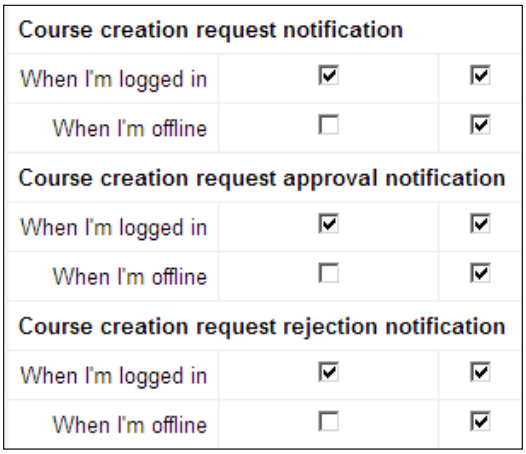
By default, when someone requests a new course, Moodle will send an e-mail to the users who have the ability to create courses. It will also send an e-mail to the course requestor when the course is denied or created. How you receive these messages can be changed in your profile.

The following procedure can be used to change when you are notified about course requests that involve you, and also how you are notified:

1. After logging in, select **Home** | **My profile** | **Messages**.
2. The messages page is displayed. Select **Administration** | **My profile settings** | **Messaging**.
3. The page displays settings for configuring notification methods for incoming messages.

www.it-ebooks.info

4. Select if, and how, you want to be notified about the requests to create courses, as shown in the following screenshot:

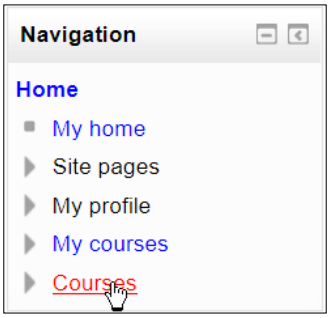


5. Click the **Update profile** button to save your changes.

How to request a new course (teachers and students)

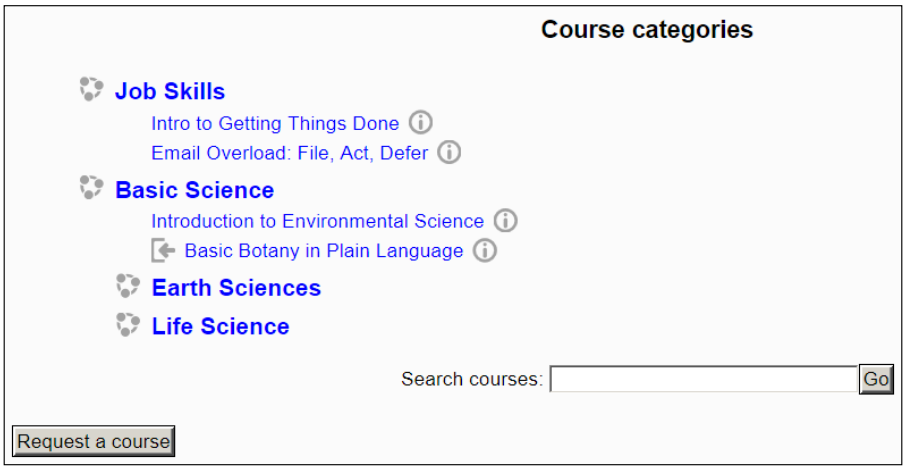
Any logged-in user can request a new course.

1. Log in to the site.
2. From the **Navigation** menu, select **Courses**:



www.it-ebooks.info

3. A list of courses will be displayed:



4. Click the **Request a course** button.
5. The **Course request** form will be displayed.
6. Fill out all the required fields, and then click the **Request a course** button.
7. The course request is sent to the users specified by the administrator.

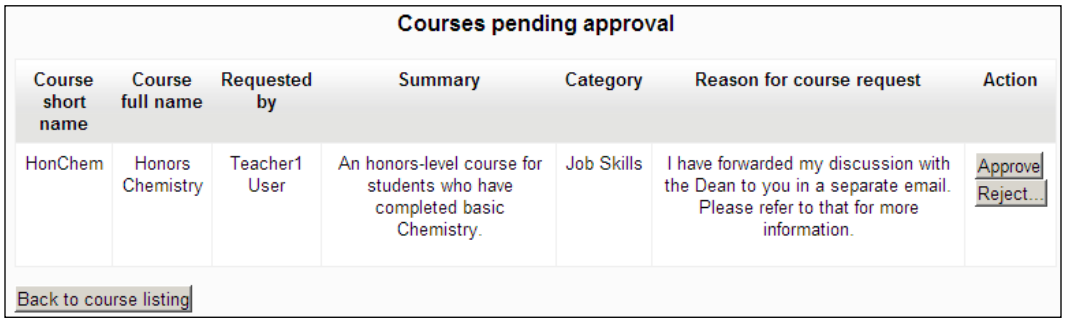
How to respond to a request for a new course (managers, course creators, and administrators)

When you are one of the users who is notified about course requests, you will be notified by an e-mail, a popup message when you log in, or both. This is determined by your **Messages** settings.

1. Log in to the site.
2. From the **Navigation** menu, select **Courses**.
3. A list of courses will be displayed.
4. Click the **Courses pending approval** button.

www.it-ebooks.info

5. The **Course pending approval** page will be displayed:



6. If you click the **Reject…** button, you will be required to enter a message that is sent back to the requestor of the course. The course will not be created.
7. If you click the **Approve** button, you are taken to the **Edit course settings** page for this course. Select the desired settings for this course, save your work, and the course is created.
8. The course requestor is automatically made a teacher in the course.
9. A notification that the course has been created is sent to the course requestor.

Summary

Just as Moodle enables students to explore courses in a non-linear fashion, it also allows you to build courses in a flexible, non-linear method. After you fill out the course settings page, the order in which you add material and features to your course is up to you. Don't get stuck if you don't know where to begin. For example, if you're unsure whether to use a Weekly or Topics format, just pick one and start adding material. If the course content begins to suggest a different type of course format, you can change the format later.

If your course is still under development when it's time to go live, use hidden sections to hide the unfinished portions. You can reveal them as you complete them.

www.it-ebooks.info

When deciding which blocks to display, consider the comfort level of your students. If they're experienced web surfers, they may be comfortable with a full complement of blocks displaying information about the course. Experienced web surfers are adept at ignoring information they don't need (when was the last time you paid attention to a banner ad on the Web?). If your students are new computer users, they may assume that the presence of a block means that it requires their attention or interaction. And remember that you can turn blocks off and on, as needed.

In general, make your best guesses when you first create a course, and don't let uncertainties about any of these settings stop you. Continue with the next chapter, *Adding Static Course Material*. As you add static, interactive, and social materials in the coming chapters, you can revisit the course structure and settings in this chapter and change them as needed.

www.it-ebooks.info

5
Resources, Activities, and Conditional Access

On Moodle, the course material is either a resource or an activity. A resource is an item that the student views, listens to, reads, or downloads. Examples would be:

- A web page
- A link to another location on the Web
- A file that the student downloads
- A video that the student watches

An activity is an item that the student interacts with, or one that enables the student to interact with the teacher or other students. Examples would be:

- A quiz
- An assignment that the student uploads for the teacher to review
- A wiki
- A forum

Usually, resources are ungraded while activities are graded.

Settings that are common to all resources and activities

For all the different kinds of resources and activities, the first few clicks for adding them are the same. Also, there are some common settings that you will need to choose for all the resources and activities that you add.

www.it-ebooks.info

Adding a resource or activity

Before you begin adding a resource or an activity, make sure that you are logged into the course as an administrator, course creator, manager, or teacher. Also, make sure that you click **Turn editing on**. Look in the upper-right corner or in the **Administration** menu for that button.

To begin adding a resource or activity, take the following steps:

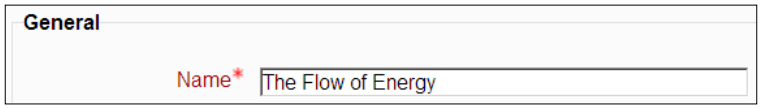
1. In the topic or week where you want to add the resource, click **Add an activity or resource**. If you're not sure where you want to add the resource, just make your best guess. You can move it around the course later.
2. The **Add an activity or resource** dialog box will be displayed. Click the radio button next to the kind of resource or activity that you want to add.
3. Click the **Add** button.
4. An editing page is displayed. Some of the settings on this page are unique for that type of resource or activity. Some of them are common to all the resources and activities. The common settings are covered in the following sections.

Entering the name and description

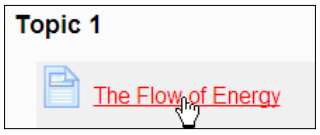
For every resource or activity that you add, you must enter a name and description. You will also choose if and when the description is displayed. Because these fields are common to every resource or activity that you add, let's cover them under the respective sections.

To give a name and description for a resource or an activity, do the following:

1. Enter a **Name**:

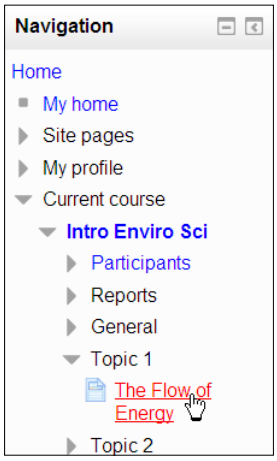


When you are done with editing and save the resource or activity, this name will appear as a link on the course page, as seen in the following screenshot:

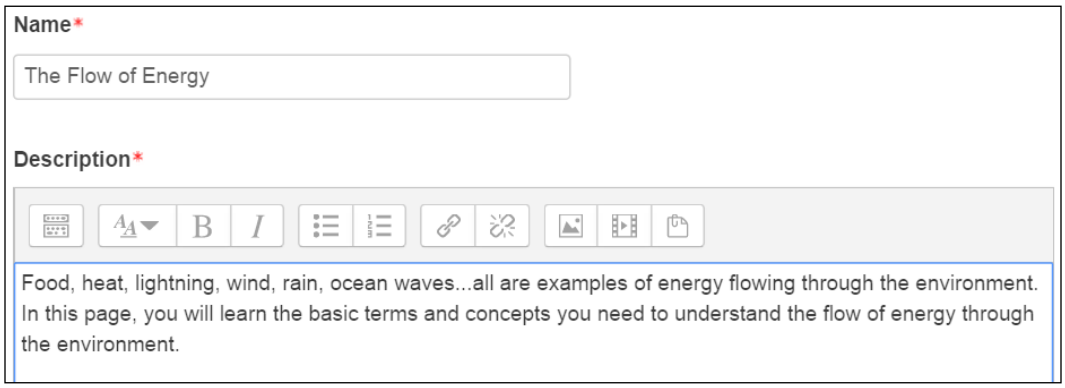


www.it-ebooks.info

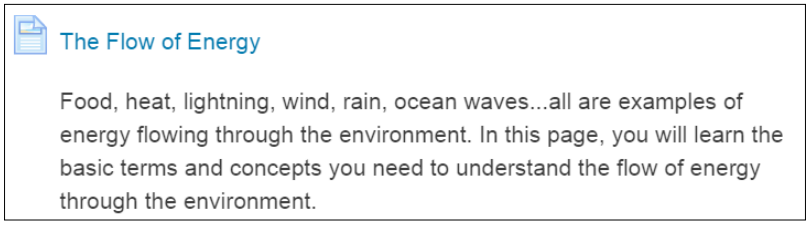
The name will also appear as a link on the navigation menu of the course. It is usually in the left or right column:



2. Enter a **Description**:



The item's description can appear on the course home page and also when the item appears in a list of resources for your course:



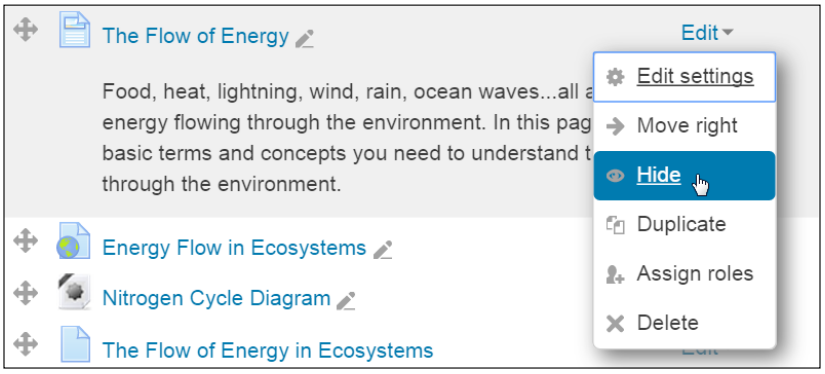
www.it-ebooks.info

Showing and hiding a resource or an activity

When you add a resource or an activity to a course, you can make the item invisible to the students until you are ready for them to see it. For example, you might want to keep a web page hidden until you have finished writing it. Or, you might want to reveal a series of activities as the class completes them, as a group.

When you hide an item, it is still visible to the teacher, course manager, and site administrator. It is hidden only from the students and visitors.

To show or hide an item, click the eye icon next to it to get the options as follows:



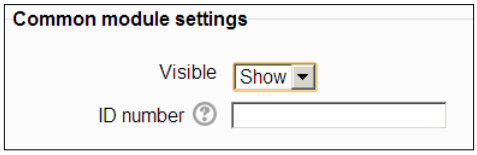
Setting the availability of a resource or an activity

Every resource or activity that you add will have **Common module settings**. If conditional access and/or completion tracking is enabled for the site, then **Restrict access** settings are also added. Because each item comes with these settings, let's explain them once, in the following sections.

www.it-ebooks.info

Using the visibility setting to show or hide a resource

Under **Common module settings**, the **Visible** setting determines if this resource or activity is visible to students:



Teachers and site administrators can *always* see the item. Setting this to **Hide** will hide the item from the students. Teachers can hide some resources and activities at the beginning of a course, and reveal them as the course progresses. Or, you can keep an item hidden while you're developing it, and reveal it only when it's complete.

Using the ID number to include a resource in the gradebook

The field **ID number** enables you to add an identifying number to a resource. Remember that we said most resources are ungraded. By default, an activity is automatically included in the course's gradebook, but a resource is not.

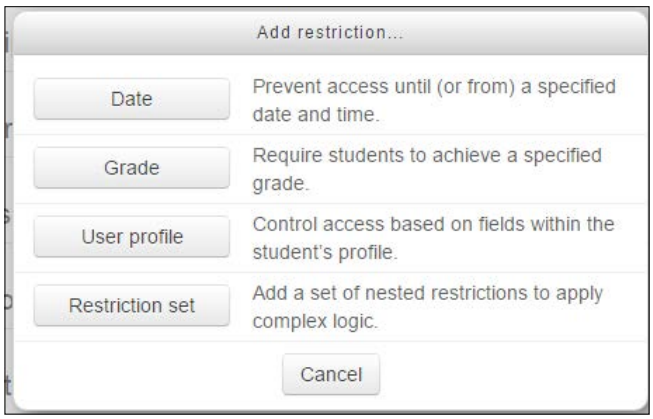
Now suppose that you want to give the students credit (a grade, or some points) for viewing a web page. A web page is a resource. Somehow, you need to include the resource in the course's gradebook. To do that, give it an ID number.

It will be the ID number of the resource, not its name, that appears in the gradebook. Later on, you will learn how to add the resource to the gradebook. For now, just add the ID number to the resource so that it is possible to add it to the gradebook. The ID number of each course must be unique.

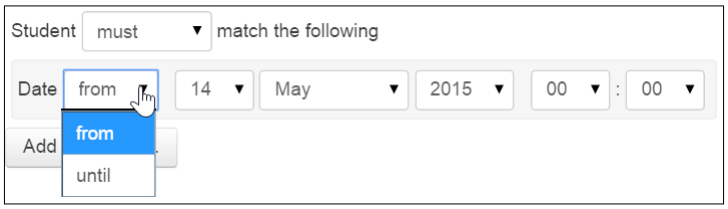
www.it-ebooks.info

Restricting access

The **Restrict access** setting enables you to set conditions that control whether or not the student can see this resource. You can use three kinds of conditions: dates, user fields, and grades. Let us discuss each one now:



In the following screenshot, the user is adding a date restriction to a resource:



Adding a **from** restriction makes the resource available on that date and time onwards. If you do not add a **from** restriction, then the resource becomes available immediately.

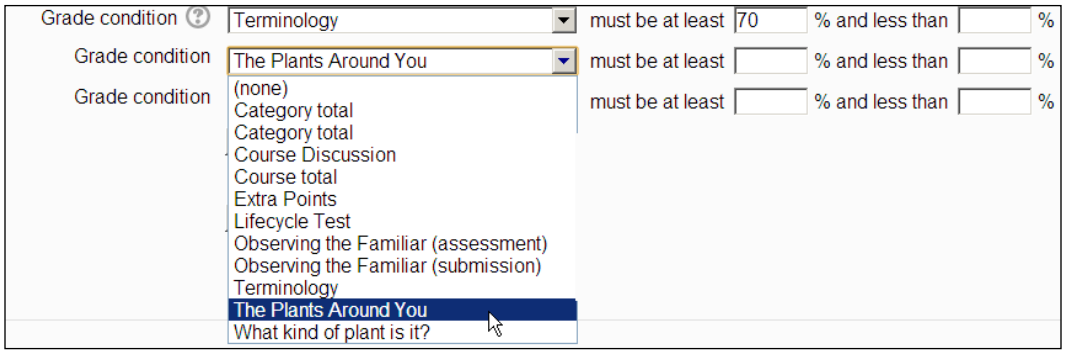
Adding an **until** restriction sets a date and time when the resource becomes unavailable. If you do not add a **from** restriction, the resource remains available indefinitely.

If you leave **Allow access from** blank, the item is available immediately. If you leave **Allow access to** blank, the item will stay available forever.

The **Grade condition** setting enables you to specify the grade that a student must achieve in another activity in this course, before being able to access this item.

www.it-ebooks.info

In the following screenshot, you can see that the item will become available to the student only after the student scores at least 70 percent in an activity called **Terminology**. And the teacher is about to add another grade condition for an activity called **The Plants Around You**:



Summary of the process to use completion conditions

Using completion conditions to restrict access is not difficult. However, you do need to do some things in a specific order.

1. The site administrator must enable completion tracking site-wide, and the teacher must enable it in the course settings.
2. Create the activities and resources that will need to be completed.
3. For each item that needs to be completed, determine how it gets marked as completed (**Activity completion settings**).
4. Create the activity or resource that will be restricted.
5. In the restricted activity or resource, select the activities and resources that need to be marked as complete before it can be accessed (**Activity completion conditions**).

In the following subsections, we will look at the detailed instructions for each step.

Creating the activities and resources that need to be completed

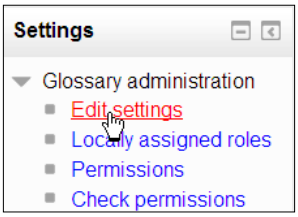
Later chapters show you how to create resources and activities. After you've created all the resources and activities that will need to be completed, return to this section for instructions on how to set their completion conditions.

www.it-ebooks.info

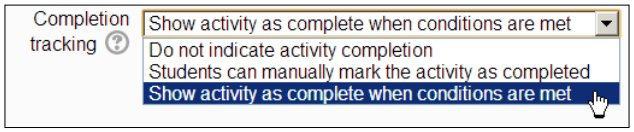
Creating the activity completion settings

The activity completion settings determine what needs to happen for an activity or resource to be marked as complete.

1. Select the activity or resource.
2. Under the **Administration** menu for the activity or resource, select **Edit settings**. In the following example, we are working with a glossary in the course:

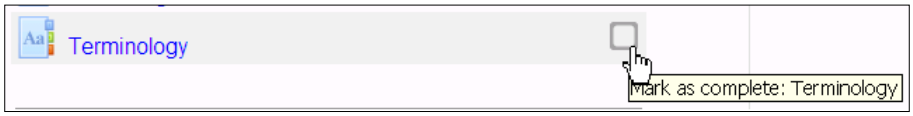


3. The **Settings** page is displayed. Scroll down to the section that is labeled **Activity completion**.
4. The **Completion tracking** field determines how this activity or resource gets marked as complete, as seen in the following screenshot:



Either the student deliberately marks it as complete (**Student can manually mark the activity as completed**) or the student does something and then the activity is automatically marked as complete (**Show activity as complete when conditions are met**).

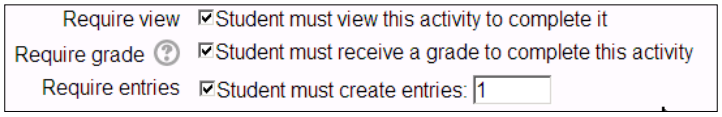
If you choose to have the student manually mark the activity or resource as complete, then the student will mark it complete from the home page of the course. For example, the following screenshot shows what the student sees on the home page when marking the glossary activity as complete:



www.it-ebooks.info

If you choose to have the activity or resource automatically marked as complete, then in the next step you will choose the conditions that cause it to be marked as complete.

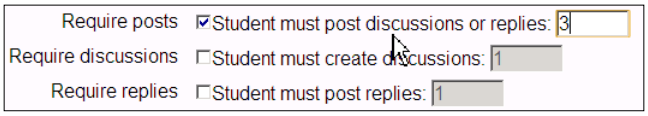
5. If you selected **Show activity as complete when conditions are met**, then you must select the conditions that will cause the activity or resource to be marked as complete:



If this is a resource, then the student cannot earn a grade for it. Only **Student must view this activity to complete it** will be available.

If this is an activity, then both **Student must view this activity to complete it** and **Student must receive a grade to complete this activity** will be available.

In the preceding example, we are using a glossary activity. The condition **Student must create entries** is unique to glossaries. Other kinds of activities also have completion conditions that are unique to them. For example, in addition to the normal completion conditions, a forum can have the following conditions for completion:



6. At some point, you might want to run a report called the **activity completion report**. We will cover that in *Chapter 14*, *Features for Teachers*. If you think you will want to use that report, then enable the setting for the expected completion date, as seen in the following screenshot:

This does not display the expected completion date to the student. You are not setting a due date with this setting. Only the teacher will see this date in the activity completion report. If you want to tell the student to complete this activity or resource by a specific date, you will need to use some other method to do so.

7. You have finished setting the completion conditions. Either save the activity or resource, or, continue modifying the other settings on the **Settings** page and then save.

www.it-ebooks.info

Creating the activities or resources that will be restricted

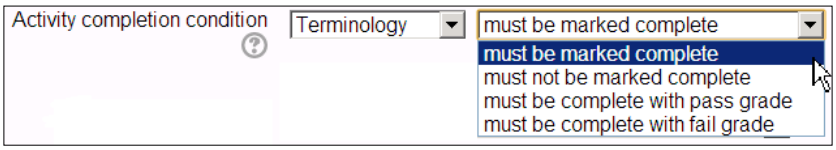
Now that you have created the activities that need to be completed, and set their completion conditions, you are ready to create the activity that will be restricted.

As stated earlier, the later chapters show you how to create resources and activities. Once you've created the resource or activity that will be restricted, proceed to the next set of instructions.

Setting the activity completion conditions

Finally, in the resource or activity that we are trying to restrict, let's choose when it becomes available.

1. Select the activity or resource.
2. Under the **Administration** menu for the activity or resource, select **Edit settings**.
3. The **Settings** page is displayed. Scroll down to the section that is labeled **Activity completion**.
4. For the field **Activity completion condition**, select the activity or resource that must be completed. In the following example, it is a resource called **Terminology**:



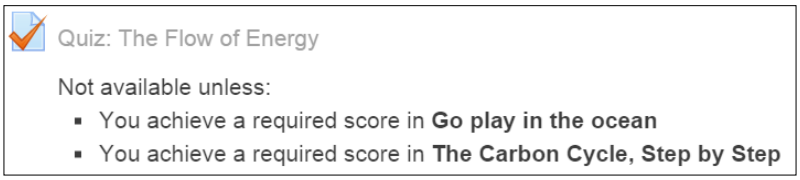
5. Select the condition: **must be marked complete**, **must not be marked complete**, and so on.
6. You can add more completion conditions by clicking the button **Add 2 activity conditions to form**.
7. Either save the activity or resource or continue modifying the other settings on the **Settings** page.

www.it-ebooks.info

Allowing students to see the activity or resource before they can access it

When an activity or resource is not yet open to a user, you can prevent users from seeing it on the course home page. The following example shows the eye icon next to the access condition. If the eye is open, then the student sees the activity/resource listed on the course home page even before the user has access. The activity/resource will be displayed in grey type. If the eye is closed, then until the user has access, the item will be hidden from the user:

The following screenshot shows what it looks like from the student's point of view:



This setting is especially useful for quizzes. You can ensure that students review the material they need before taking the quiz, and that they know what is required before the quiz becomes available.

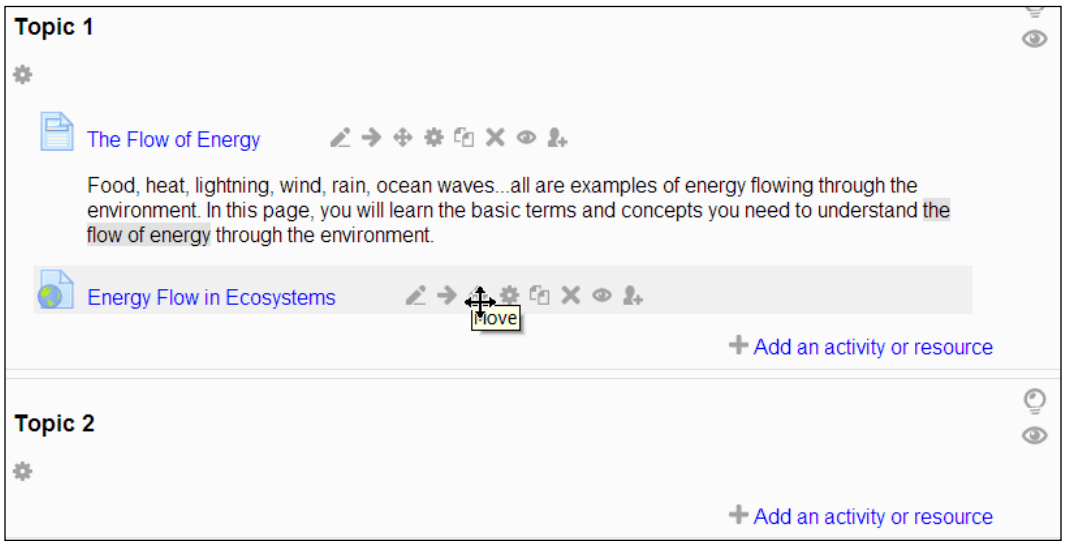
Rearrange/move items on the course home page

As you build your course, you will be adding resources and activities to the course page. Moodle enables you to easily reposition these items. It's so easy to reposition them that I recommend that you don't even worry about getting them in the right place as you are creating them. Just forge ahead, create, and rearrange later.

www.it-ebooks.info

Rearranging items on the course page:

1. Log in to your course as a teacher or site administrator.
2. In the upper-right corner of the page, if you see a button that reads, **Turn editing on**, click the button. If it reads **Turn editing off**, then you do not need to click this button.
3. Next to the item that you want to move, place the mouse pointer over the crosshairs icon, as seen in the following screenshot:



4. Drag the item to where you want it on the course page, and drop it.

You can also drag and drop entire topics, if your browser has JavaScript enabled and Moodle has Ajax enabled (both should be the default).You'll know you can do this if you see a crosshairs icon next to the topic. Just drag the crosshairs icon and drop it where you want the topic to go.

www.it-ebooks.info

Summary

In this chapter, you learned the difference between resources and activities. You learned the basics of adding them to a course. You also learned about settings that are common to the different kinds of resources and activities. In the next few chapters, you will learn about the specific settings for specific resources and activities, and how to make the best use of them. While you're learning how to work with those items, you can refer back to this chapter for a reminder on how to use the common settings.

www.it-ebooks.info

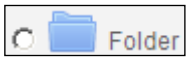
www.it-ebooks.info

6
Adding Resources

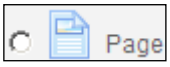
Resources are course materials that students read but don't interact with, such as presentations, graphics, and PDFs. This chapter teaches you how to add those resources to a course, and how to make the best use of them.

Adding different kinds of resources

Resources are added from the **Add an activity or resource** drop-down menu. Using this menu, you can add these resources:

Resources	Description
	A **Book** is a series of web pages, organized into chapters. A **Book** can consist of one or more chapters. This is a good option for presenting a series of web pages, that you want the student to read in order.
	Moodle can serve a single **File** to your student. If Moodle's built-in media player can play the **File**, you can configure it to automatically embed. Or, you can configure the **File** so that it downloads to the student's computer, and lets the student's computer determine how to open and display it.
	A **Folder** is a collection of files that you have added to the course. For example, you can have a **Folder** for each topic in a course, where you give the student all of the files needed to complete the exercises for that topic. Or a **Folder** for a specific activity.
	A **Label** is a text, graphic, or a media file that you put on the home page of a course. Almost anything that you can put onto a web page, you can put onto the home page of your course. You usually use a **Label** to describe or label the content around it.

www.it-ebooks.info

Resources	Description
	A Moodle **Page** is a web page that you create using Moodle's web page editor.
	A **URL** is a link to another place on the Web. Usually, you link to a page or file that exists outside of Moodle. But, you can link to a place inside your own Moodle site.

Each of these resources is covered in the following sections:

Refer to *Chapter 5*, *Resources, Activities, and Conditional Access*, for information about the settings that are common to all resources.

Adding URLs

On your Moodle site, you can show content from anywhere on the Web by using a link. You add the link to your course's home page. When the student clicks the link, the linked item is displayed.

When using the content from outside sites, you need to consider the legality and reliability of using the link. Is it legal to display the material within a window on your Moodle site? Will the material still be there when your course is running?

Display options – Embed, Open, and In pop-up

You can choose how the page is displayed. There are three options:

You can **Embed** the linked page into a Moodle page. Your students will see the Navigation bar, any blocks that you have added to the course and navigation links across the top of the page, just like when they view any other page in Moodle. The center of the page will be occupied by the linked page.

Open will take the student off of your site, and open the linked page in the window that was occupied by Moodle.

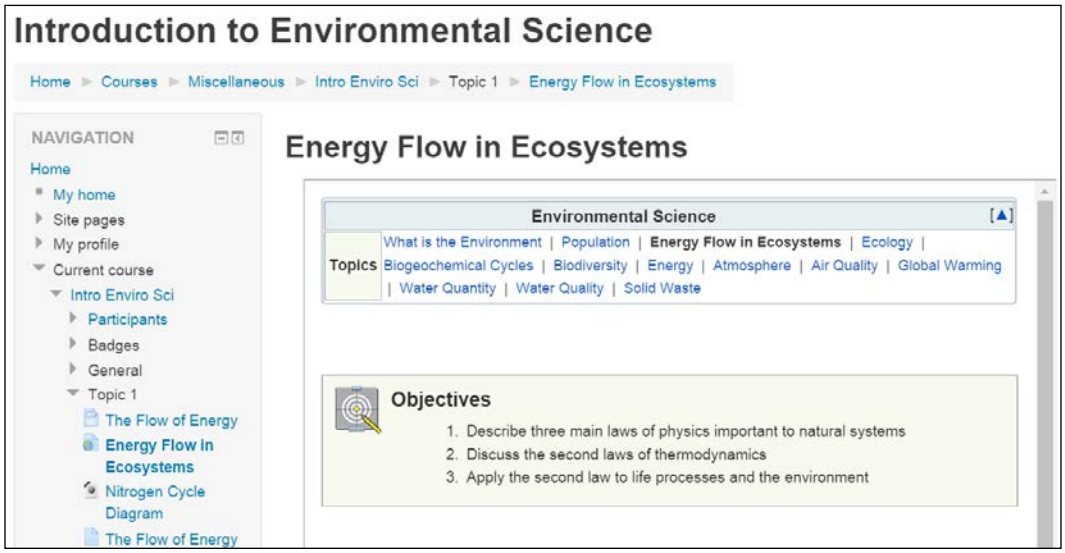
In pop-up will launch a new window on top of the Moodle page, containing the linked page.

In the following examples, we linked to a page called **Energy Flow in Ecosystems**. That page exists on another site, `http://wikieducator.org/Main_Page`. Here are some thumbnail pictures, of how each option looks:

www.it-ebooks.info

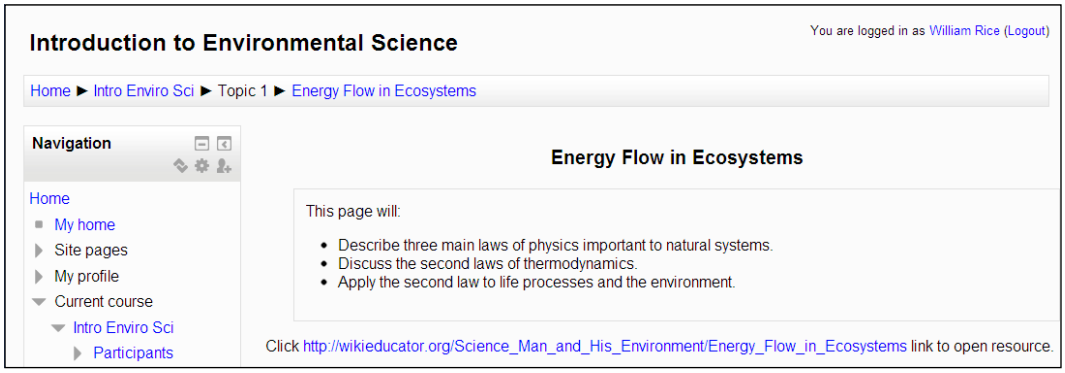
Embed

When the user clicks the link on the course home page, the outside page is displayed in a frame. The user is still on your Moodle site:



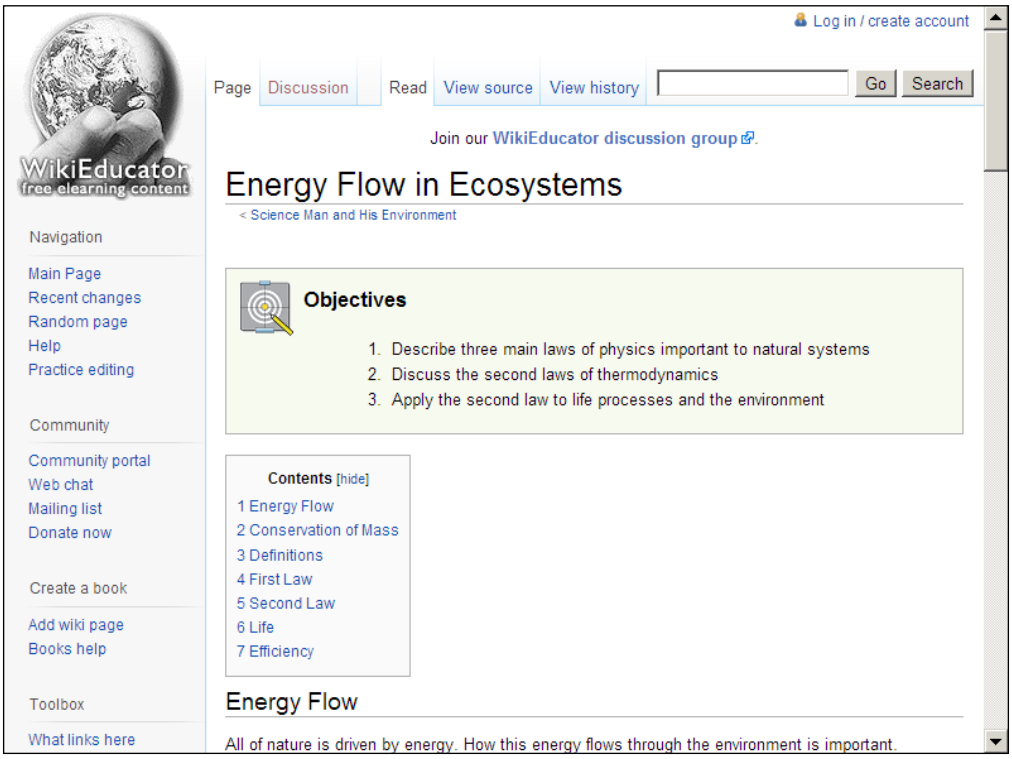
Open

When the user clicks the link on the course home page, Moodle displays the page with the description of the link and a link to the outside page:



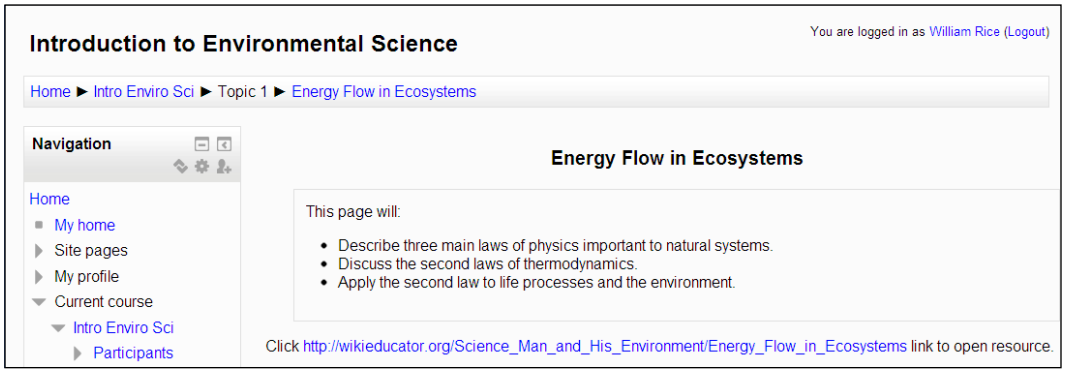
www.it-ebooks.info

Clicking the link brings the user to the outside page. They have left your Moodle site:



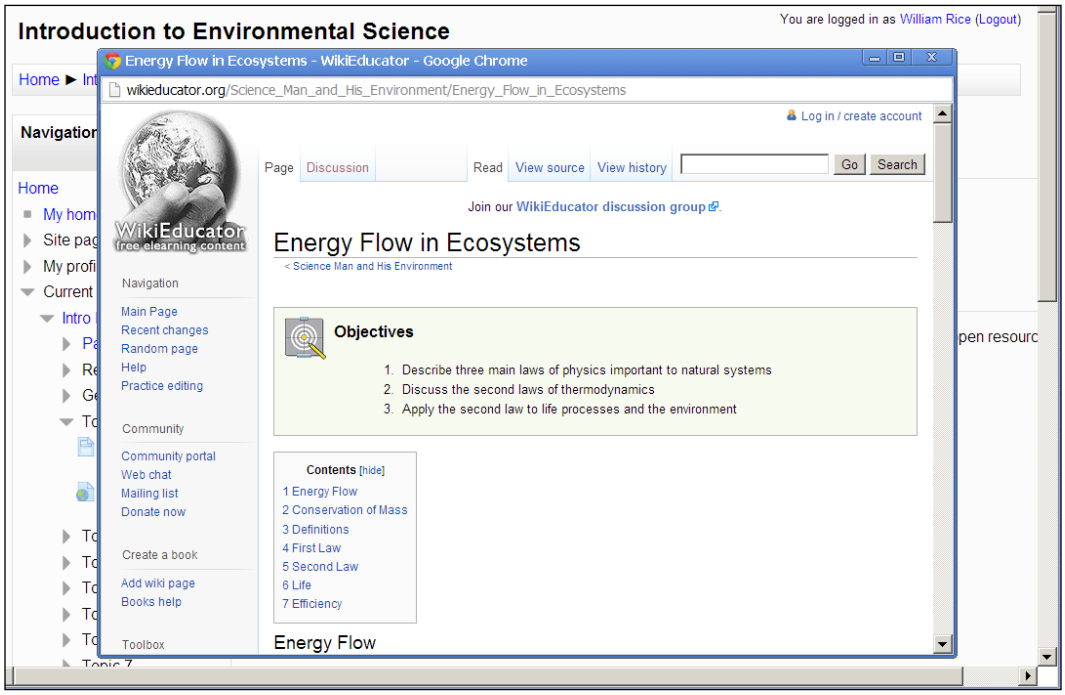
In pop-up

When the user clicks the link on the course home page, Moodle displays the page with the description of the link and a link to the outside page:



www.it-ebooks.info

Clicking the link opens a popup window with the outside page. It is displayed on top of the window with your Moodle site:



The following section contains instructions for creating a link on your course home page, and for using these options.

To add a link to a resource on the Web:

1. In the **Topic** or the **Week**, where you want to add the resource, click **Add an activity or resource**. If you're not sure where you want to add the link, just make your best guess. You can move it around the course later.
2. The **Add an activity or resource** dialog box will be displayed. Click the radio button next to **URL**.
3. Click the **Add** button.
4. Moodle displays the settings page for this resource.
5. Enter a **Name** and **Description** for the link. For more about how the name and description affect the user experience, see *Chapter 5, Resources, Activities, and Conditional Access*.
6. In the **External URL** field, enter the web address for this link.

www.it-ebooks.info

7. Under **Appearance**, from the **Display** drop-down menu, select the method that you want Moodle to use when displaying the linked page: **Embed**, **Open**, or **In pop-up**. **Automatic** will make Moodle choose the best method for displaying the linked page.

   For more about these display options, see the section *Display options – Embed, Open, and In pop-up* explained before.

8. The check box for **Display URL description** will affect the display of the page, only if **Embed** is chosen as the display method. If selected, the **Description** will be displayed below the embedded page.
9. Under **Appearance**, you can set the size of the popup window. If you don't select **In pop-up** as the display method, these fields have no effect.
10. Under **Parameters**, you can add parameters to the link. In a web link, a parameter would add information about the course or a student to the link. A discussion of URL parameters is beyond the scope of this book. If you have web programming experience, you might take advantage of this feature. For more about passing parameters in URLs, see `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Query_string`.
11. The **Common Module Settings**, **ID number** field, and **Restrict Availability** settings are covered in *Chapter 5*, *Resources, Activities, and Conditional Access*.
12. Click one of the **Save** buttons at the bottom of the page to save your work.

Adding pages

Moodle enables you to compose a web page and add it to your course. The page that you add, will be created and stored in your Moodle site.

When you add a page to your course, Moodle displays a text editor. Using this editor, you can put almost anything onto the Moodle web page that a normal web page can contain.

A link to the page that you create will appear on the course's home page.

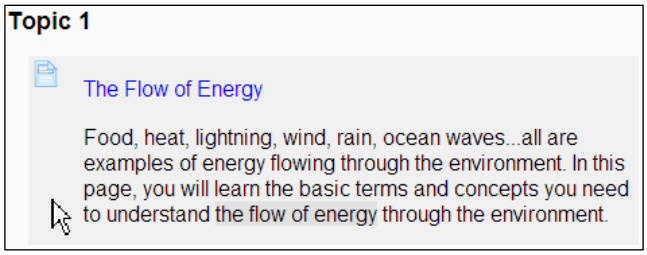
If you can use a basic word processor, you can use most of the web page editor's features. A full discussion of the editor's features is beyond the scope of this section. Instead, we will examine a few of the key features available in Moodle's HTML editor.

www.it-ebooks.info

Adding a page to your course

To add a page to your course follow the given steps:

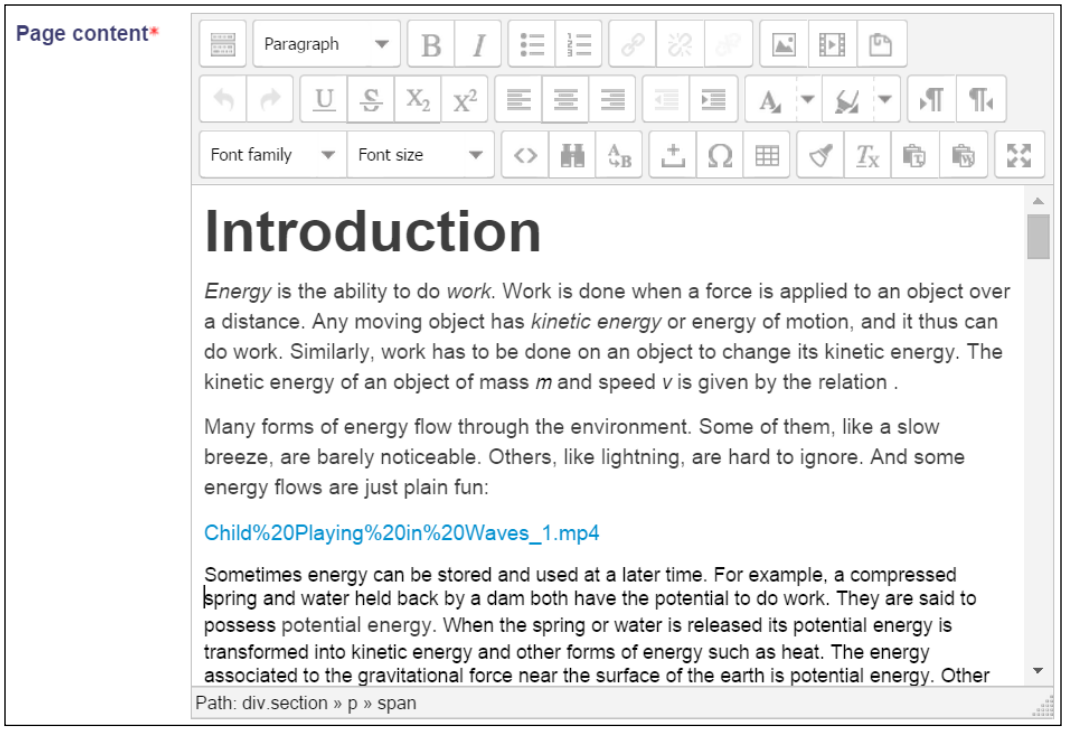
1. In the topic or the week, where you want to add the resource, click **Add an activity or resource**. If you're not sure where you want to add the link, just make your best guess. You can move it around the course later.
2. The **Add an activity or resource** dialog box will be displayed. Click the radio button next to **Page**.
3. Click the **Add** button.
4. Moodle displays the settings page for this resource.
5. Enter a **Name** and **Description** for the page. The name will become the link to this page, and appear in the section that you added it to, on the course's home page.
6. If you select the check box for **Display description on course page**, the description will appear on the course's home page. You can use this feature to tell the student what to expect when they view the page, and tell them the purpose of the page. Here is an example of a link to a page, with its description displayed below it:



7. For more about how the name and description affect the user experience, see *Chapter 5, Resources, Activities, and Conditional Access*.

www.it-ebooks.info

8. Even though this is the **Settings** page, this is also where you compose the web page. Scroll down to the **Content** section and you will see a test editor for composing the page:



9. If you can use a basic word processor, you can use Moodle's web page editor. Most of the text and paragraph formatting options are the same as what you have seen in word processors and other web-based text editors. So instead of covering those options, we will cover some of the functions that are less intuitive. See the following sections:

Adding images

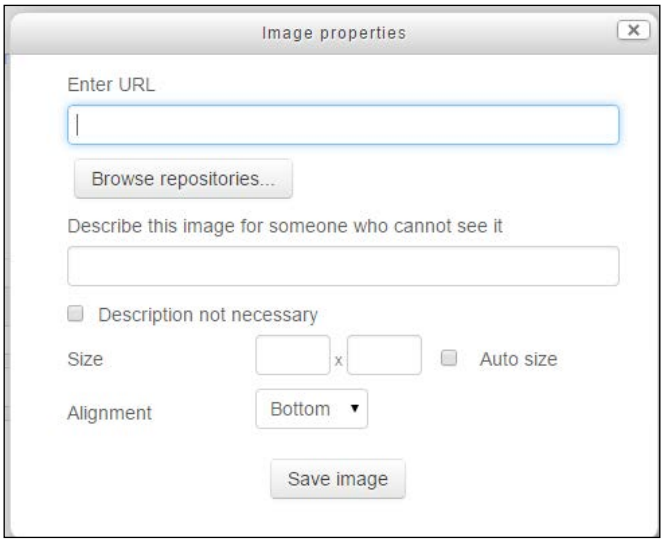
When you select an image to add to a Moodle page, you can choose images from those that you have already uploaded in Moodle, or you can upload a new image.

A less obvious feature is the ability to link to a picture that is hosted on another website. For example, you could link to a picture hosted on a Flickr account, or the one that appears on a non-profit educational website.

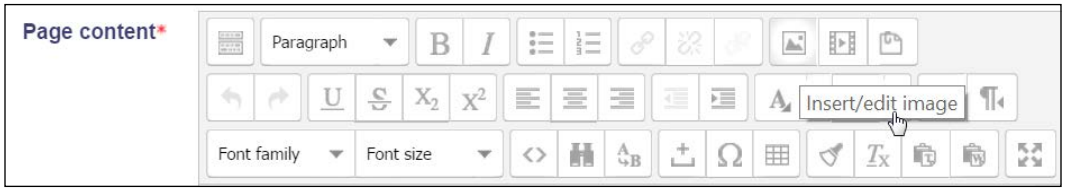
www.it-ebooks.info

Inserting an image file

This procedure is for inserting an image file that you have on your computer. In our example, the user has a diagram that he/she wants to insert into the page.



1. To insert an image file follow the given steps:
2. On the Moodle page, click to place the insertion point where you want the image to appear.
3. Click the **Insert image** icon:



4. The **Insert/Edit image** window appears. In this window, click the button labeled **Find or upload an image**.
5. The File picker window will be displayed. In this window, click the **Upload a file** link.
6. Click the **Choose File** button.
7. Locate the file on your computer, and select it.
8. Click the **Open** or **OK** button.

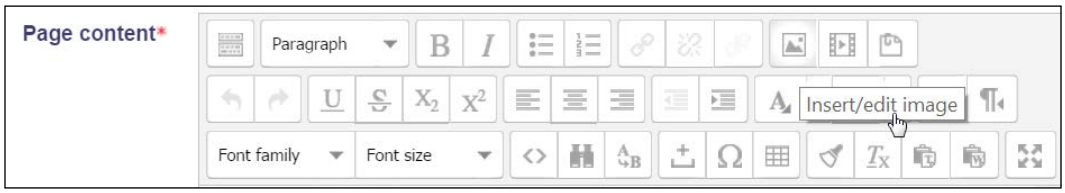
www.it-ebooks.info

9. In the **Save as…** field, give the file a user-friendly name. You can use special characters and spaces.
10. The **Author** field is automatically filled in with your name. If someone else is the owner of this file, enter their name here.
11. From the drop-down list, choose a **License** for this file. This enables you to inform other Moodle teachers who want to use this file, what they can legally do with the file.
12. Click the **Upload this file** button. The file is uploaded to your Moodle system and you are returned to the **Insert/edit image** window.
13. It is good practice to fill in the **Image description** field. This is used by visually impaired users who can't see the image, and by search engines to index the image.
14. If needed, fill out the fields under **Appearance**. Especially, you might want to resize the picture, since Moodle will, by default, display the picture at its original size.
15. Click the **Insert** button. The picture is inserted into the page.

Inserting a hot-linked picture into a Moodle page

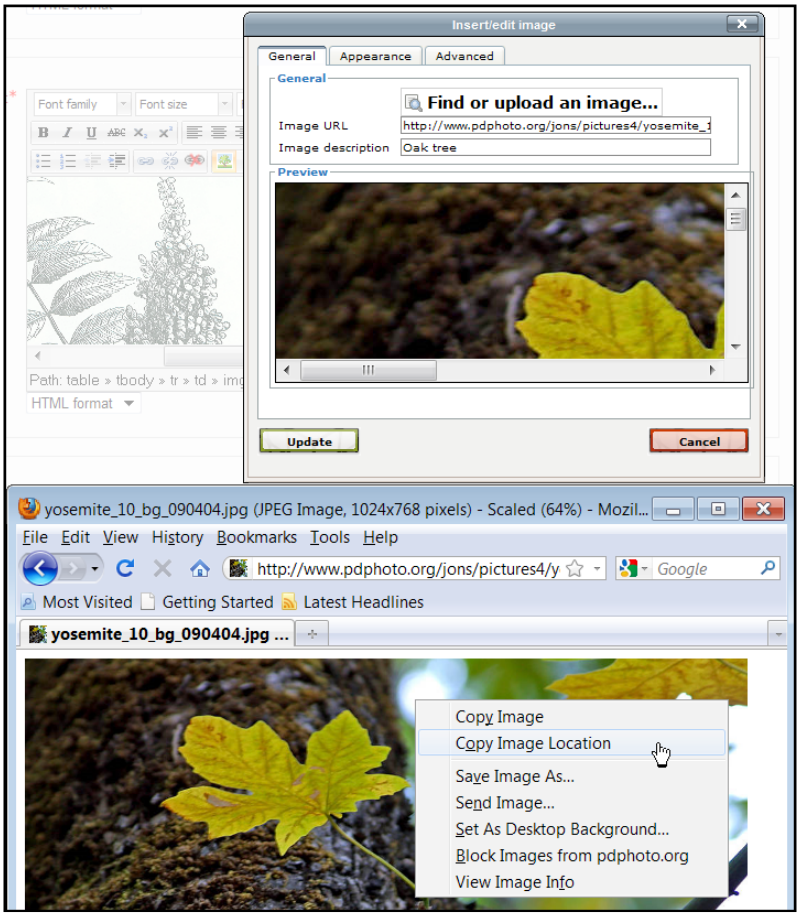
This procedure is for inserting a linked image, which appears in another location on the Web. If you want to insert an image file that you have on your computer, see *Inserting an image file* in the previous section.

1. Find the image that you want to link to.
2. In your browser, right-click on the image. A popup menu will appear. One of the options on this menu will enable you to copy the URL (the web address) of the picture. For example, in **Internet Explorer**, you would select **Properties** and then copy the **Address** of the image. In **Firefox**, you would select **Copy Image Location**.
3. Switch back to Moodle, where you are editing the page.
4. Click on the page, so the insertion point is where you want the picture to appear.
5. Click the **Insert Image** icon.



www.it-ebooks.info

6. A popup window appears. In this window, paste the address of the image into the **Image URL** field. In the following screenshot, you can see the **HTML editor** window in the background. On top of that, you can see the **Insert/edit image** window. At the bottom of the screen is the original location of the image.



7. If needed, fill out the fields under **Appearance**. Especially, you might want to resize the picture, since Moodle will, by default, display the picture at its original size.

www.it-ebooks.info

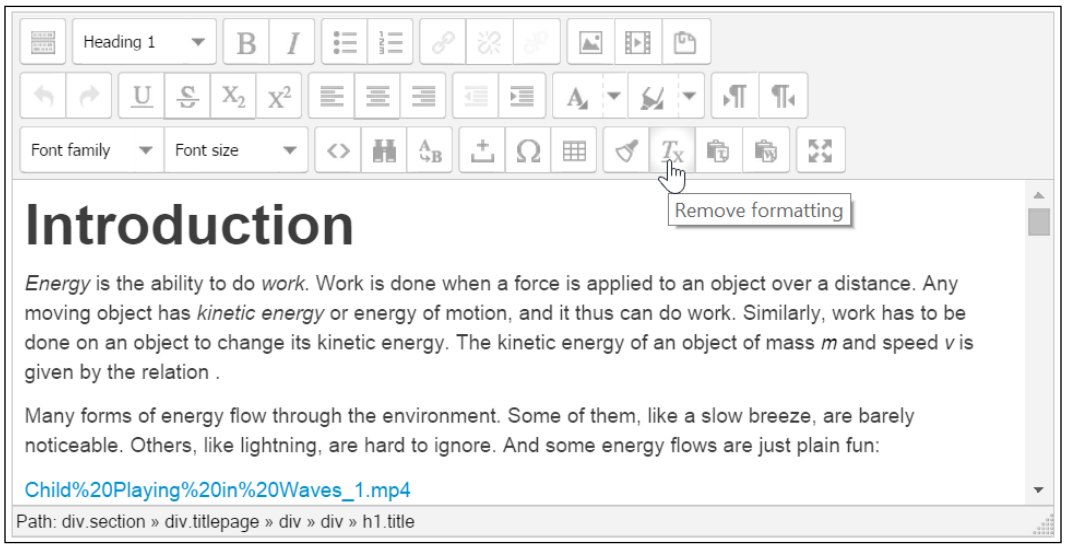
Pasting text

Many times, we prefer to write text in our favorite word processor instead of writing it in Moodle. Or, we find text that we can legally copy and paste into Moodle. Moodle's text editor does enable you to do this.

To paste text into a page, you can just use the keyboard shortcut. Try *Ctrl+V* for Windows PCs and `Command-V` for Macintoshes. If you use this method, the format of the text will be preserved.

Stripping out the formatting: pasting plain text

To paste plain text, without the format of the original text, click the **Paste as Plain Text** icon:

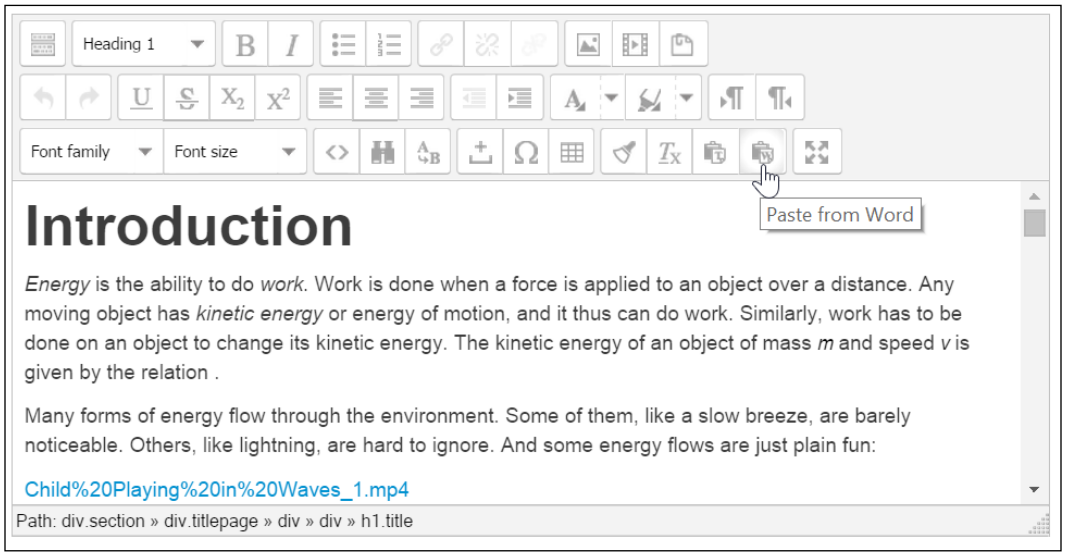


Pasting text from Microsoft Word

When you paste text from a Microsoft Word document into a web page, it usually includes a lot of non-standard HTML code. This code doesn't work well in all the browsers, and, it makes it more difficult to edit the HTML code in your page. Many advanced web page editors, like Adobe Dreamweaver, have the ability to clean up the Word HTML code. Moodle's web page editor can also clean up Word HTML code.

www.it-ebooks.info

When pasting text that was copied from Word, use the **Paste from Word** icon. This will strip out most of Word's non-standard HTML code:



Composing in an HTML editor and uploading to Moodle

For long or complex HTML pages, or just for your own comfort, you might want to compose your web page in an HTML editor like Dreamweaver. This is especially true if you want to take advantage of these editors' ability to insert JavaScript timing, and other advanced features into your web page. How then, do you get that page into your Moodle course? You can copy and paste the HTML code from your web page editor into the Moodle page editing window. To do this, you would:

- Select HTML view in your web page editor. For example, in Dreamweaver you would select **View | Code**, and in the front page, you would select **View | Reveal Codes**.
- Select the HTML code in your web page, between the two body tags. That is, drag from just after the `<body>` tag near the top, to just before the `</body>` tag at the end. Copy the code with **Edit | Copy** or by pressing *Ctrl+C*.
- Switch over to Moodle, and create the new web page.
- Show the HTML code by clicking the icon.
- Paste the code by pressing *Ctrl+V*.

www.it-ebooks.info

A second method is to publish your web page to someplace outside of Moodle, and create a link to it from your course.

Learn more about HTML

To learn more about HTML code, you can start with the organization responsible for defining the standards. The World Wide Web Consortium maintains the complete standards for HTML online at `http://www.w3.org/TR/html4`. It maintains a basic tutorial at `http://www.w3.org/MarkUp/Guide/`. Everything covered in this basic guide can be done using the editor in Moodle, in its normal mode. The advanced HTML guide at `http://www.w3.org/MarkUp/Guide/Advanced.html` covers some features that you would need to go into HTML view to add, such as defining clickable regions within images and using roll-overs.

Adding files for your students to download

You can add files to a course, so that your students can download them onto their personal computers. Some examples of files you might want students to have are forms to fill out, readings to complete before class, and word processing files to edit.

When a student selects a file from the course

When a student selects a file from your course, the student's computer will attempt to open that file. Moodle will only pass the file to the student's computer. For example, if it's a PDF file, your student's computer will probably try to use Adobe Reader or the Preview app to open the file. If it's a word processing file, your student's computer will attempt to use Word or some other word processor to open it. If your student's computer doesn't have a program that can open that type of file, it will probably prompt the student to save the file.

You can override this behavior with a setting called **Force download**. When you choose that setting, your student's computer will not try to open the file. Instead, it will download the file and prompt the student to save it.

If you want the student to use the file immediately upon accessing the file, then just go with the default behavior. If you want the student to save the file for future use, then select the **Force download** setting.

You will see this setting in a later section, when we look at the instructions for adding files to your course.

www.it-ebooks.info

File repositories

Every file that you upload into a Moodle course, is stored in a Moodle repository. Before we add files to our course, we need to understand how repositories work and how to choose the right kind for our course.

Types of repositories

A repository is a storage area that Moodle can access. The repository doesn't need to be on your server. It just needs to be accessible to your Moodle system.

Repositories need to be enabled by the site administrator, under **Site administration | Plugins | Repository | Manage repositories**. Here are some examples of file repositories:

Type of Repository	Use this when…
Server files	You want to re-use a file that you uploaded into another course. For example, you want to re-use a graphic that you added to a page in another course, or a document that you added to another course.
Upload a file	The file that you want to add to your course resides on your computer, and you want to use it in the current course. The file must be no larger than the upload limit for your Moodle system.
File system	The file that you want to use has been uploaded to the Moodle data directory. You usually do this when the file is too big to upload directly into Moodle, or, when you need to upload a lot of files all at once.
Box.net, Dropbox, Google Docs, Amazon S3	You want to use a service outside of Moodle to store your files. If you're using an inexpensive, shared hosting service for Moodle, you might get more storage space and better upload/download speed by using a third party to store your large course files.
Flickr, Picasa Web Album	You want to use photos that are part of an online album.

Using file sharing services to collaborate

When you use a file repository like Dropbox, Google Drive, or Box.net, you are storing your files outside of Moodle. This is a great way to collaborate. However, be aware that only with Google Docs, can you push files up into the cloud. If you use the Dropbox and Box.net repositories, you can only pull files down into Moodle. You will need to go outside of Moodle to push files up into those repositories.

www.it-ebooks.info

Using repositories to overcome Moodle's limit on file sizes

There is a limit to the size of a file that can be uploaded into your Moodle system. This limit changes for different Moodle sites.

There are three settings that limit the size of a file than can be uploaded into Moodle. Two of those settings are on your web server. The administrator for your web server would need to change them. If you are using a shared hosting service, you might not be able to change these settings. The third setting is in Moodle. It can be changed by the system administrator.

The size limit for uploaded files is the smallest of these three settings.

Your web server is probably using Apache to serve web pages. Apache can (but does not need to) have a limit set on the size of files that can be uploaded to the server through web pages. To determine if Apache is limiting the size of uploaded files, you should ask your web server administrator.

Moodle uses the PHP programming language. The PHP language is in addition to Apache. PHP can also set a limit on the size of files that can be uploaded. In the file `php.ini`, look for the line that says `upload_max_filesize =`.

The Apache limits, and the PHP limit, are settings that you should discuss with your server administrator.

In Moodle, under **Site administration** | **Courses** | **Course default settings**, look for the setting labeled **Maximum upload size**. The maximum size available under that setting is taken from the `php.ini` file. You can set a lower limit than this, but not a higher limit.

When you upload a file into Moodle, it will be placed in a file repository. By default, it will appear in the repository **Server Files**. If the repository **Recent Files** is enabled, the file might also appear there. If the file is too large, Moodle will not allow it to upload.

The most common way to get around Moodle's size limit on file uploads is using a **File system** repository. When the site administrator creates a file system repository, the administrator first creates a folder, or directory, on the server where the Moodle data is stored. The administrator then creates a repository in Moodle that points to this directory. When you need to add a large file to a Moodle course, you go outside of Moodle and upload the file to this directory. Usually, you use an FTP client like WinSCP or FileZilla to upload the file to the server. Now that the file is on the server, and in the repository's directory, you can go into Moodle and add the file to your course.

www.it-ebooks.info

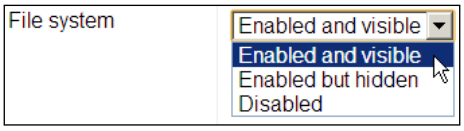
The following are the step-by-step instructions for each of these processes:

1. Enabling the file system repository.
2. Creating the directory for the file system repository.
3. Uploading files to the file system repository.
4. Creating the file system repository in your course.
5. Selecting a file from a file system repository.

Enabling the file system repository

Before anyone in your Moodle site can use a file system repository, the site administrator needs to enable that option.

1. Log in to your site as an administrator.
2. Select **Site administration** | **Plugins** | **Repositories** | **Manage repositories**.
3. Next to **File system**, select **Enabled and visible**.

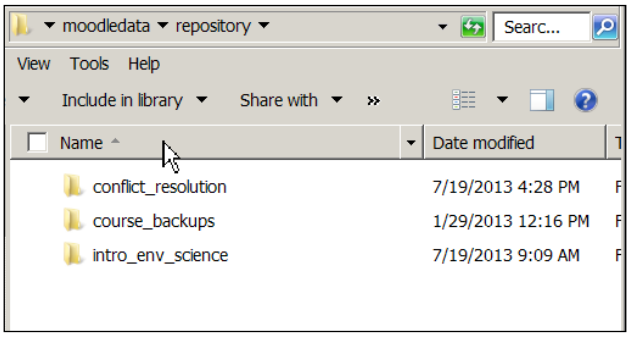


Creating the directory for the file system repository

We are creating a file system repository, which means the files will be stored on your server. Therefore, we need a directory in which to store them.

This part of the process needs to be done by someone with access to the server.

In the Moodle data directory, create a subdirectory named `repository`. In that subdirectory, create a subdirectory for each repository that your users will want.



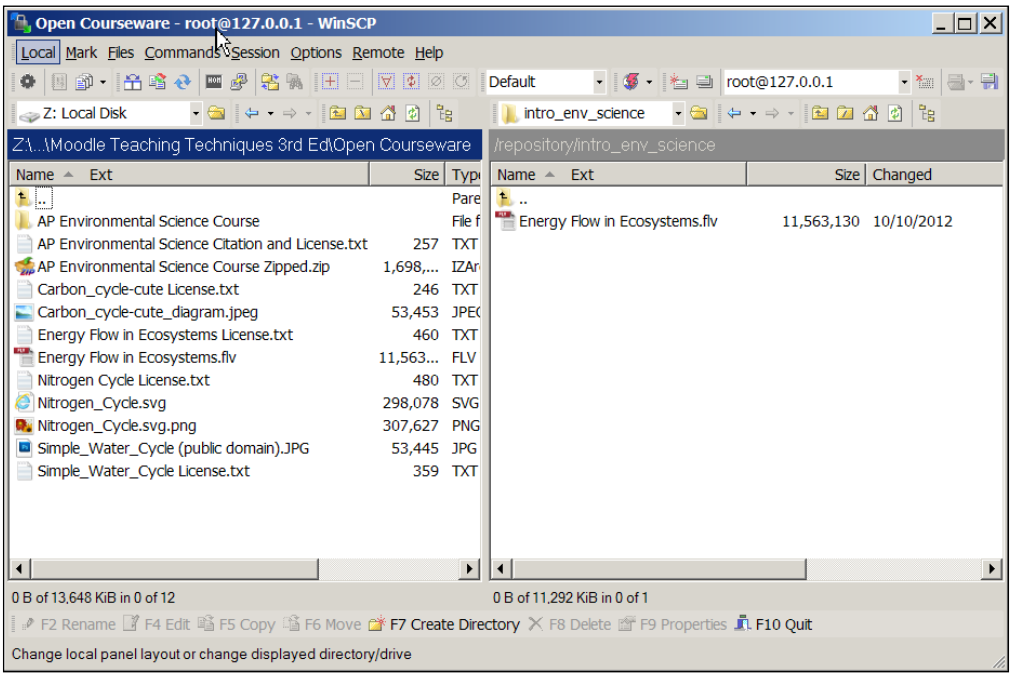
www.it-ebooks.info

To determine the correct permissions for the repository folders, look at the permissions for the folders under **filedir**, which is also in the Moodle data directory. Duplicate those permissions for the folders that you create for your repositories.

Uploading files to the file system repository

Again, this part of the process needs to be done by someone with access to the server.

Now, you can upload files of any size into the directories. You would use an FTP client such as FileZilla or WinSCP.



To determine the correct permissions for the repository files, look at the permissions for the files under **filedir**, which is also in the Moodle data directory. Duplicate those permissions for the files that you upload into your repositories.

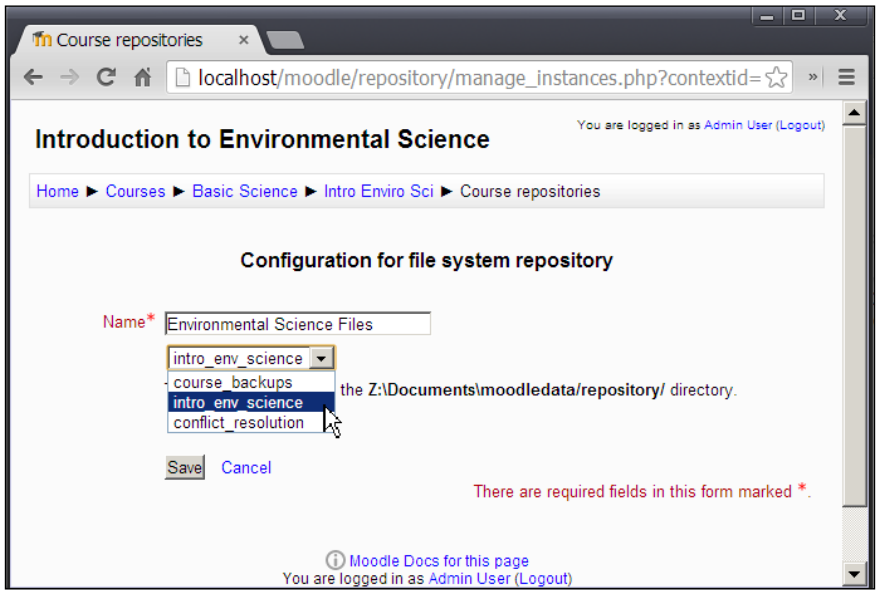
Creating the file system repository in your course

This must be done by the site administrator.

1. Log in to the course. From the Course Administration menu, select **Repositories | Course repositories**.
2. If any repositories have already been created in this course, they will appear on this page. You can create multiple repositories for the same course.

www.it-ebooks.info

3. Click the link for **Create File system instance**.
4. The page will display a field where you enter the **Name** of the repository. It will also display a drop-down list of the subdirectories that are in the `/repository` directory.

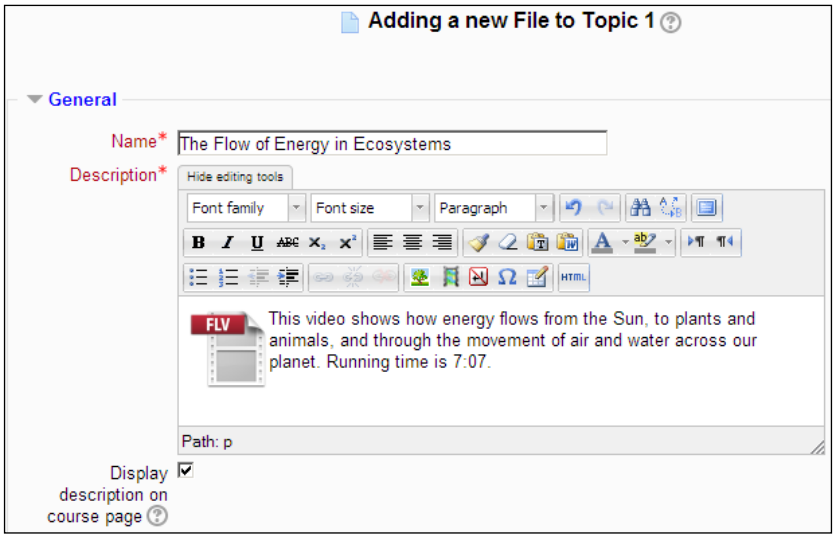


Adding a file to your course:

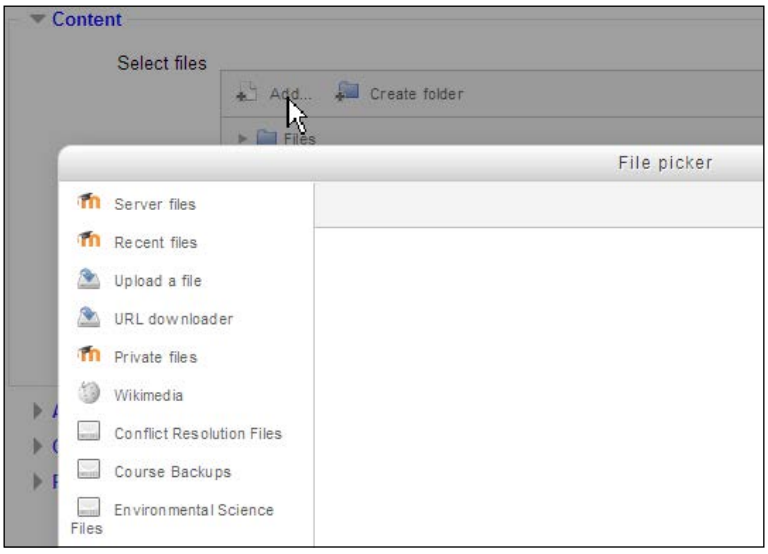
1. Log in to your course as a teacher or a site administrator.
2. In the upper right corner of the page, if you see a button that reads, **Turn editing on**, click the button. If it reads **Turn editing off**, then you do not need to click this button.
3. In the section where you want to add the file, click the link for **Add an activity or resource**.
4. A popup window is displayed. It lists the types of items that you can add. Under **Resources**, select **File**.
5. Click the **Add** button.
6. Moodle displays the **Adding a new File** page.

www.it-ebooks.info

7. Enter a **Name** for the file. This is the name that people will see on the home page of your course.

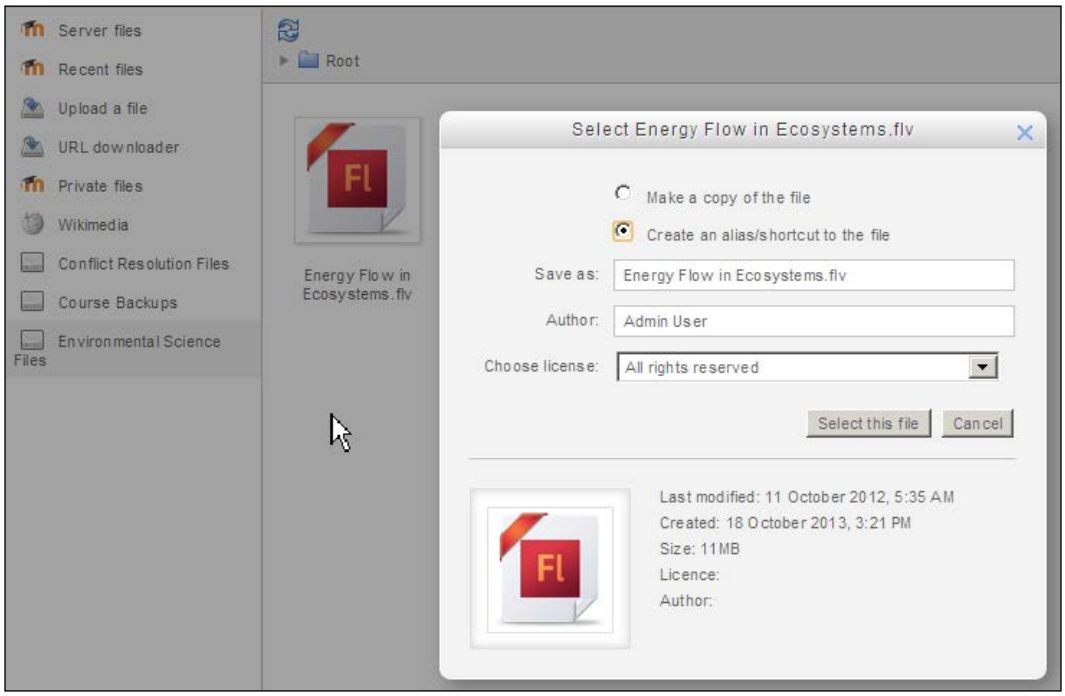


8. Enter a **Description** for the file. When the student sees the course's home page, (s)he can see the **Description** if you select **Display description on course page**. Notice in the preceding screenshot, the user has added a graphic to the file's **Description**.
9. Under **Content**, click the **Add…** button. The **File picker** window displays.



www.it-ebooks.info

10. Select the repository that holds the file. In this example, we are using the one labeled **Environmental Science Files**.
11. Click **Browse…** and select the file. After selecting the file, a dialog box is displayed:



12. The dialog box enables you to choose between **Make of copy of the file** and **Create an alias/shortcut to the file**.

If you choose to make a copy of the file, then your course will use its own, separate copy of the file. If the original file, the file in the repository folder, is changed, that will have no effect on your course.

If you choose to create an alias to the file, then your course will use that actual file, that resides in the repository folder on the server. If the original file is changed, then your course will use the updated file.

13. In the **Save as** field, you can change the file's filename.
14. By default, the **Author** field has your name. If someone else created this file, give them proper credit by entering their name as the author.

www.it-ebooks.info

15. The **Choose license** drop-down list enables you to select a license, so that other teachers know what kind of copyright this file has.
16. Click **Select this file**. The **File picker** window closes, and you are returned to the page where you edit the file.
17. From the **Display** drop-down menu, select the method that you want Moodle to use when displaying the file:

    Automatic will make Moodle guess the best method for displaying the linked page.

    Embed will insert the file into a Moodle page. Your students will see the navigation bar, any blocks that you have added to the course, and navigation links across the top of the page, just like when they view any other page in Moodle. The center of the page will show the file. The file's **Description** will show below the embedded file.

    Force download will force the file to be downloaded and saved to your student's computer.

    Open will show the file in a plain web page. There will be no navigation bar, blocks that you have added to the course, or navigation links across the top of the page.

    In pop-up will launch a new window, containing the file. Just like the **Open** option, the browser window will be plain, without any Moodle items.

18. The check boxes for **Display resource name** and **Display resource description** will affect the display of the page, only if **Embed** is chosen as the display method. If selected, the **Name** of the file will be displayed above the the file, and the **Description** will be displayed below the file.
19. The **Restrict access** settings enable you to set conditions that will control whether this resource is available to the student. These are discussed in detail in *Chapter 5*, *Resources, Activities, and Conditional Access*, in the section called *Restricting Access*.
20. Click one of the **Save** buttons at the bottom of the page to save your work.

www.it-ebooks.info

Adding Media – Video and audio

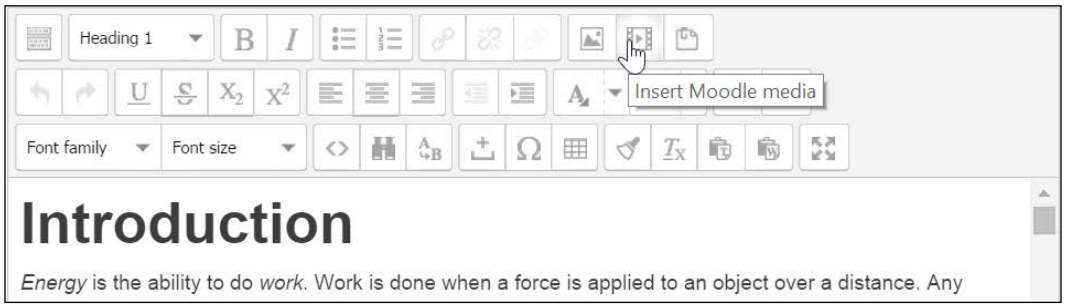
If you want to add video or audio to your course, you have two choices. First, you can add it as a resource, or file. If you do that, when the student selects the file, one of two things will happen. Either the media file will be downloaded to the student's computer, and played by the software on the student's computer, or Moodle will try to play that file with its built-in media player. If multimedia plugins are enabled under **Site Administration** | **Plugins**, then Moodle will try to play the file in its built-in media player. If multimedia plugins are not enabled, then the file will be played using whatever media player that is on the student's computer (such as Windows Media Player or QuickTime).

Second, you can embed the media on a Moodle page (see the section *Adding Pages* explained before). That will cause the media to be played on the web page.

Adding video or audio to a page

This procedure will add video, audio, or an applet to a Moodle page. You must be in possession of the file that you are adding. That is, the file is on your computer, and not on another website. If the file that you want to appear is on another website, see the procedure for embedding media from another website on a page.

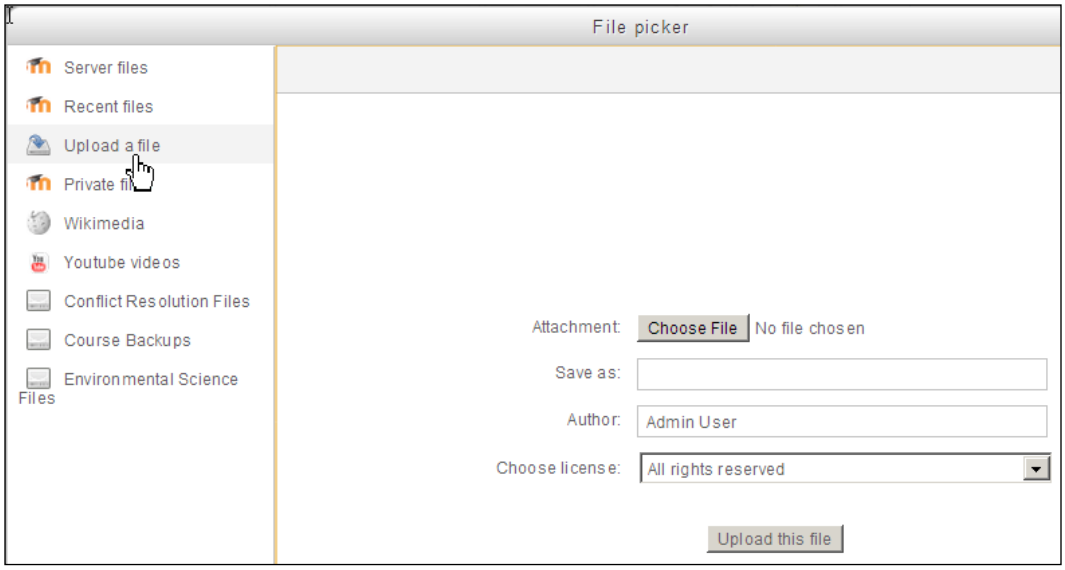
1. On the Moodle page, click to place the insertion point where you want the media to appear.
2. Click the **Insert Media** icon:



3. A popup window appears. In this window, click the button labeled **Find or upload a sound, video, or applet**.

www.it-ebooks.info

4. The **File picker** window displays. In the previous section, *File repositories*, you saw how to add a file from a repository. In this example, let us upload the file from your computer. Click the **Upload a file** link.

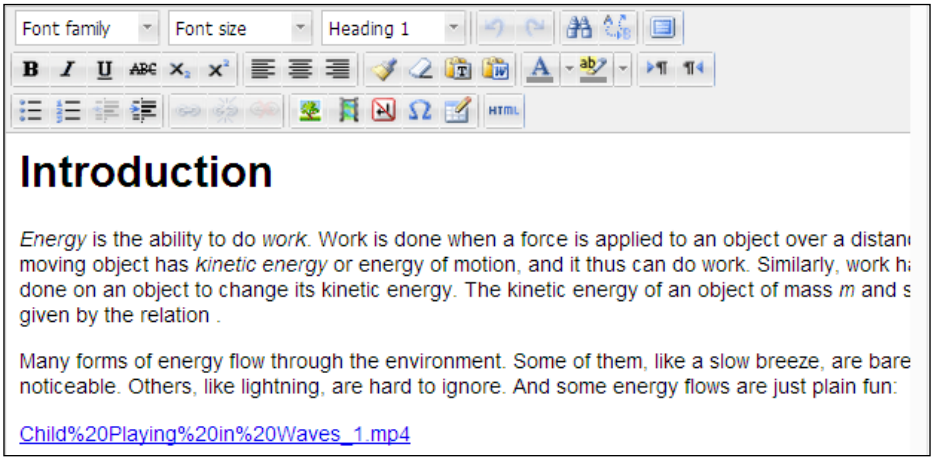


5. Click the **Choose File** button.
6. Locate the file on your computer, and select it.
7. Click the **Open** or **OK** button.
8. Optionally, give the file a name that you want it to have in Moodle. This is in the **Save as** field.
9. By default, the **Author** field has your name. If someone else created this file, give them proper credit by entering their name as the author.
10. The **Choose license** drop-down list enables you to select a license, so that other teachers know what kind of copyright this file has.
11. Click the **Upload this file** button. The file is uploaded to your Moodle system.
12. If needed, fill out the fields under **Appearance**. Especially, you might want to resize the picture, since Moodle will by default display the media at its original size.

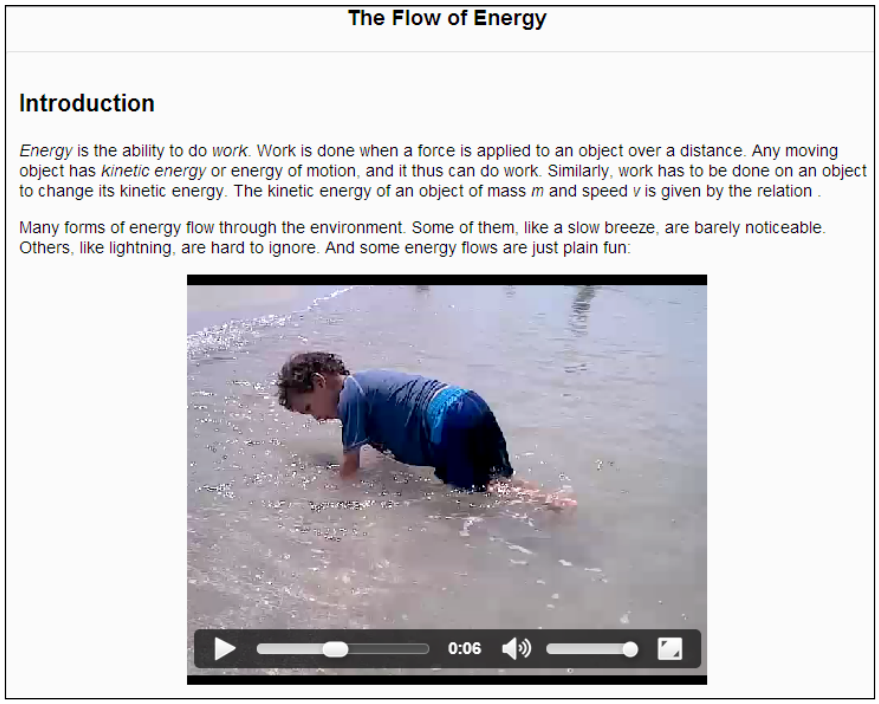
www.it-ebooks.info

13. Click the **Insert** button. The media is inserted into the page.

    While you are editing the page, the media might not display in the editor. Instead of seeing the media, you might just see a link, like this:



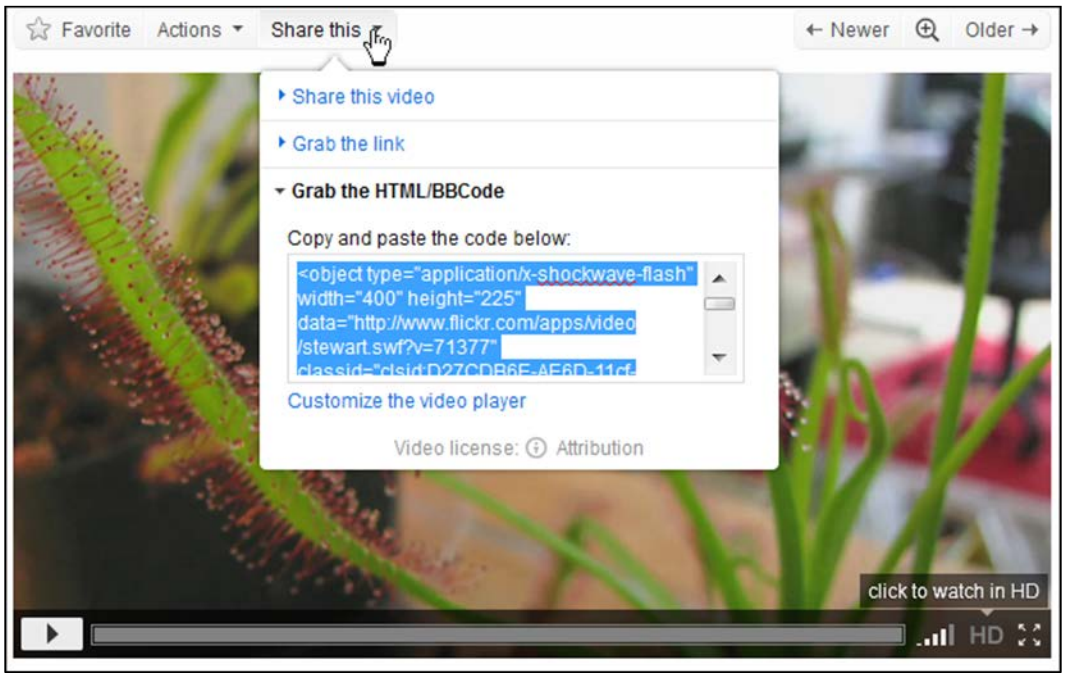
When the user views the page, the media will display. It can be played with Moodle's built-in media player:



www.it-ebooks.info

To embed a video on a page:

1. Find the media that you want to link to. For example, you might find a video on `https://vimeo.com/`, or `https://www.flickr.com/` that you can use.
2. Check the license for the material, to ensure that you have the right to use it as you intend.
3. Somewhere on the page, you will see a button or link that will give you the HTML code to embed the video:

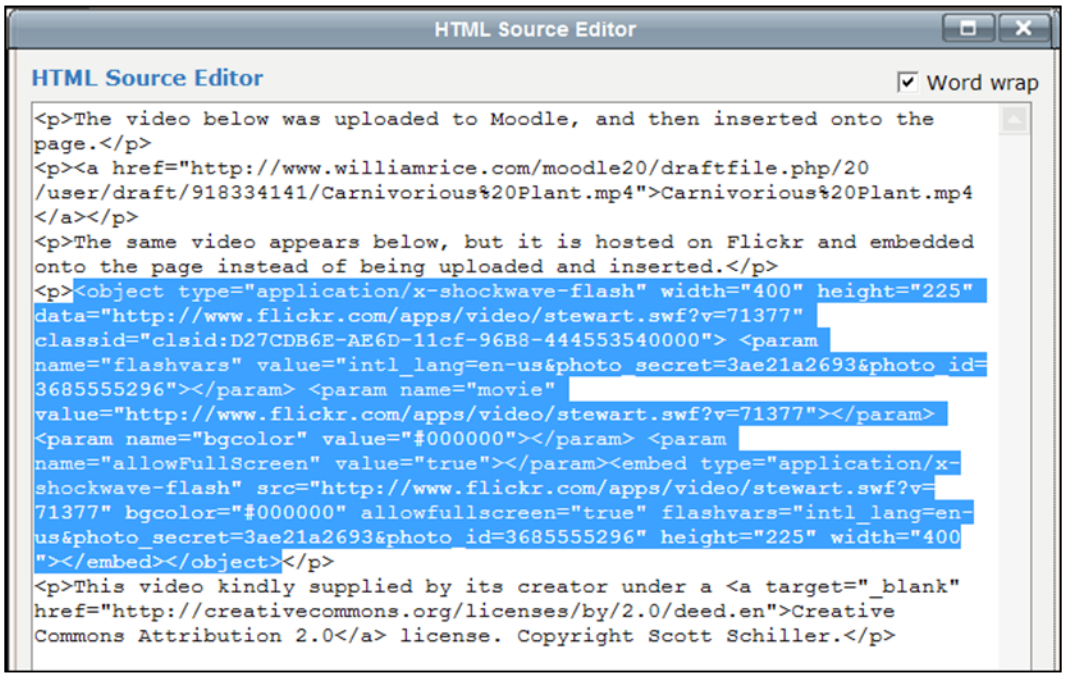


4. Copy the code for embedding the video.
5. Switch back to Moodle, where you are editing the page.
6. On the Moodle page, click to place the insertion point where you want the media to appear.

www.it-ebooks.info

7. Click the **Edit HTML** icon:

8. The **HTML Source Editor** displays. In this window, paste the code that you have copied from the video sharing site.



9. At the bottom of the editor window, click the **Update** button.
10. You are returned to the editing page. Continue editing, and then save your work.

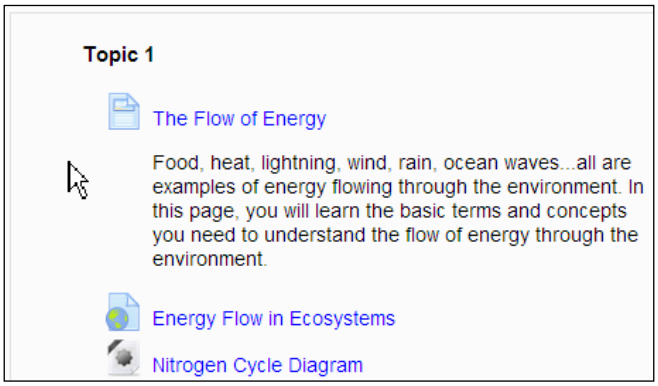
www.it-ebooks.info

Organize your course

The main tools for organizing a course in Moodle are sections and labels. In this section, we'll look at how to use them, and how to move material around on the course page.

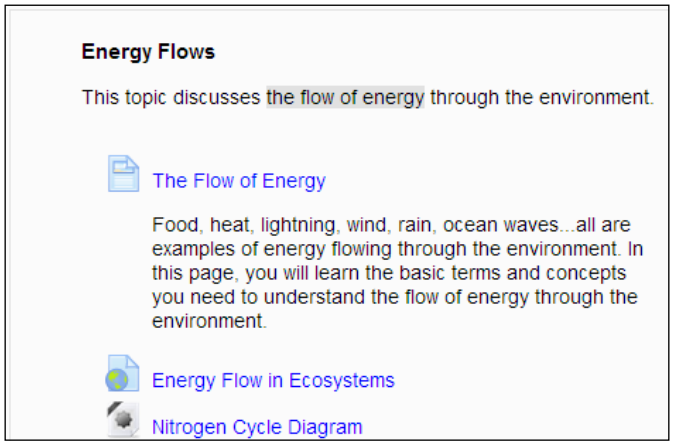
Name your topics

In a course that uses the topics format, your topics are automatically named and numbered, like this:



This works well if you want your topics to be automatically numbered. If you rearrange the topics, the numbering will automatically be updated.

Instead of using the default topic numbering, you might want to name your topics, and add a description to them, like this:



www.it-ebooks.info

To add a name and description to a **Topic**:

1. Log in to your course as a teacher or a site administrator.
2. In the upper right corner of the page, if you see a button that reads, **Turn editing on**, click the button. If it reads **Turn editing off**, then you do not need to click this button.
3. Next to the topic's number, click the **Edit summary** button:

4. The **Summary** page for your **Topic** is displayed. You must un-check the check box for **Use default section name**. If there is a check box in this field, then you cannot edit the name or description of the **Topic**.
5. In the **Section name** field, enter the name for your **Topic**.
6. In the **Summary** field, enter a description. This is a full featured web page editor, so you can enter text, graphics, and media.
7. Save your work. You will be returned to the course home page. The name and summary of the **Topic** are displayed.

Rearrange/move items on the course home page

As you build your course, you will be adding resources and activities to the course page. Moodle enables you to easily reposition these items. It's so easy to reposition them that I recommend that you don't even worry about getting them in the right place as you are creating them. Just forge ahead, create, and rearrange later.

Rearranging items on the course page:

1. Log in to your course as a teacher or a site administrator.
2. In the upper right corner of the page, if you see a button that reads, **Turn editing on**, click the button. If it reads **Turn editing off**, then you do not need to click this button.

www.it-ebooks.info

3. Next to the item that you want to move, place the mouse pointer over the crosshairs icon:

4. Drag the item to where you want it on the course page, and drop it.

You can also drag and drop entire topics, if your browser has Ajax enabled. You'll know you can do this if you see a crosshairs icon next to the topic. Just drag the crosshairs icon and drop it where you want the topic to go.

Giving directions and organization with labels

In our example, the course creators used text labels to organize the course content. A label can also hold a graphic. Adding a graphic to the beginning of each topic is a good way to add visual interest to a course. Also, a label can consist of a large amount of text. You can introduce activities with a paragraph-long label. In the screenshot shown, perhaps a sentence explaining each activity would help the student understand the course flow. That can be added with a label. Make creative use of labels for organization, interest, and information.

To add a label to the course's home page:

1. Log in to your course as a teacher or a site administrator.
2. In the upper right corner of the page, if you see a button that reads, **Turn editing on**, click the button. If it reads **Turn editing off**, then you do not need to click this button.
3. From the **Add an activity or resource** drop-down menu, select **Label**.
4. The **Adding a new label** page appears. In the **Label** text field, you can enter anything that can appear on a web page: text, graphics, media, and so on.
5. Save your work, and return to the course home page.

www.it-ebooks.info

Summary

These static course materials (books, pages, URLs, files, and labels) form the core of most online courses. Most student/teacher interaction will be about something the student has read or viewed. Adding static material first gives you a chance to think about how the material will be discussed and used.

In the next chapter, you will see how to add some interactive material. Instead of just reading and viewing material that you post, the student will produce work and interact with their teacher and peers online.

www.it-ebooks.info

www.it-ebooks.info

7
Adding Assignments, Lessons, Feedback, and Choices

Course activities enable students to interact with the instructor, the learning system, or each other. Note that Moodle doesn't categorize activities into *Static*, *Interactive*, and *Social* as we do in this book. We use the terms *Static*, *Interactive*, and *Social* as a convenient way to categorize the activities that Moodle offers.

In the previous chapter, we saw how to add resources, or static course material, such as web pages, links, and media. We saw that all activities are added from the **Add an activity or resource** menu, after we select the option **Turn editing on**.

In this chapter, we will see how to add several kinds of interactive course material: assignments, lessons, choices, and feedback.

Definitions

An **assignment** consists of something that a student creates, and then uploads into the course for the teacher to grade. For example, the student could:

- Write a paragraph
- Take a photograph
- Create a piece of music
- Build something, and then take pictures and write about the experience
- Visit a museum, and then upload pictures and a report of the visit

www.it-ebooks.info

Sometimes, an assignment is an activity completed outside of the course. The last two items in the list above—building something and visiting a place—are examples of that. An assignment can also be done entirely inside the assignment activity. For example, you could have the student write a paragraph in the assignment activity, and then submit it to the teacher.

Assignments are very flexible. You can allow the student to resubmit their work until they achieve a passing grade, allow the student to leave comments, give the student comments or even a file in response to their work, and even have students submit their work as a group.

A **lesson** is a series of web pages displayed in a specific order. Most lessons consist of several pages. The next page that the student sees might depend upon the student's answer to a question. Usually, the jump question is used to test a student's understanding of the material. Get it right, and you proceed to the next page. Get it wrong, you then either stay on the page or jump to a remedial page.

A lesson gives Moodle some of the branching capability found in commercial **computer-based training** (**CBT**) products. You could make a course consisting of just a summary, one large lesson, and a quiz.

A **choice** is a single, multiple-choice question that the instructor asks the class. The result can be displayed to the class. Or, the result can be kept private, known only to the student and the instructor. Choices are a quick way to get feedback from the students about the class. You can plant these choices in your course ahead of time, and keep them hidden until you need the students' feedback. You can also create them quickly, whenever you need them.

The **feedback** activity enables you to create surveys for your students. Do not confuse this with the survey activity. In survey, you must choose from several pre-made surveys; you cannot build your own surveys. In the feedback activity, you can build your own poll, using several kinds of questions.

Understanding assignments

If you want the student to do or create something and then grade the results, you want in an assignment.

What you can do with an assignment

The options in the assignment activity give you many choices in how to run the assignment. Before we look at how to create an assignment, let us look at what you can do with it and what features you want to use in the assignment.

www.it-ebooks.info

Types of work students can submit

All of the following options can be combined. For an assignment, you can require the students to:

- Submit one or more digital files
- Write something
- Do something outside of Moodle

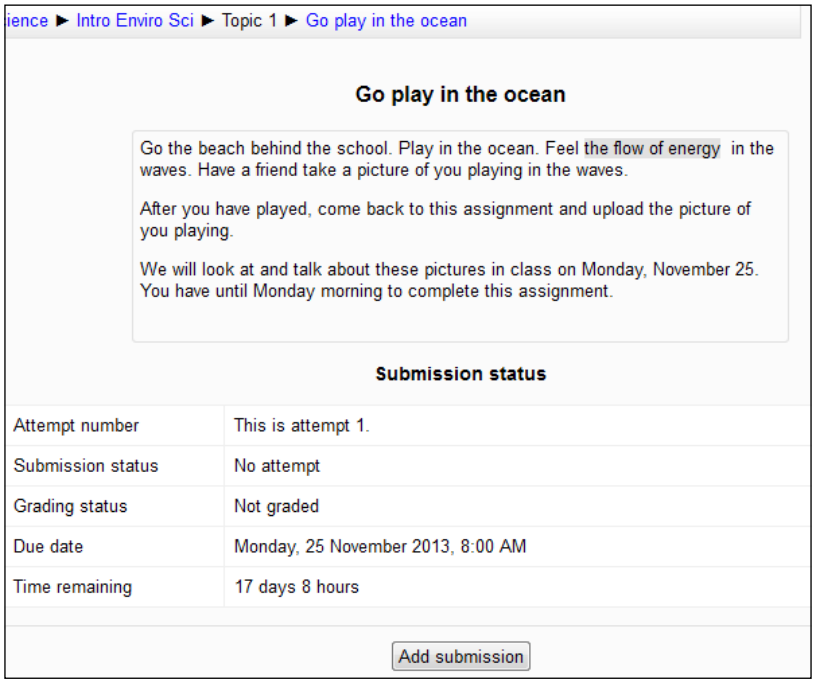
Each of these is covered in a subsection below.

Submitting a digital file

Anything that can be uploaded on a computer can be uploaded into an assignment. However, Moodle will enforce its limit on the size of uploaded files. For example, if you require your students to create a digital photograph, this option might work well.

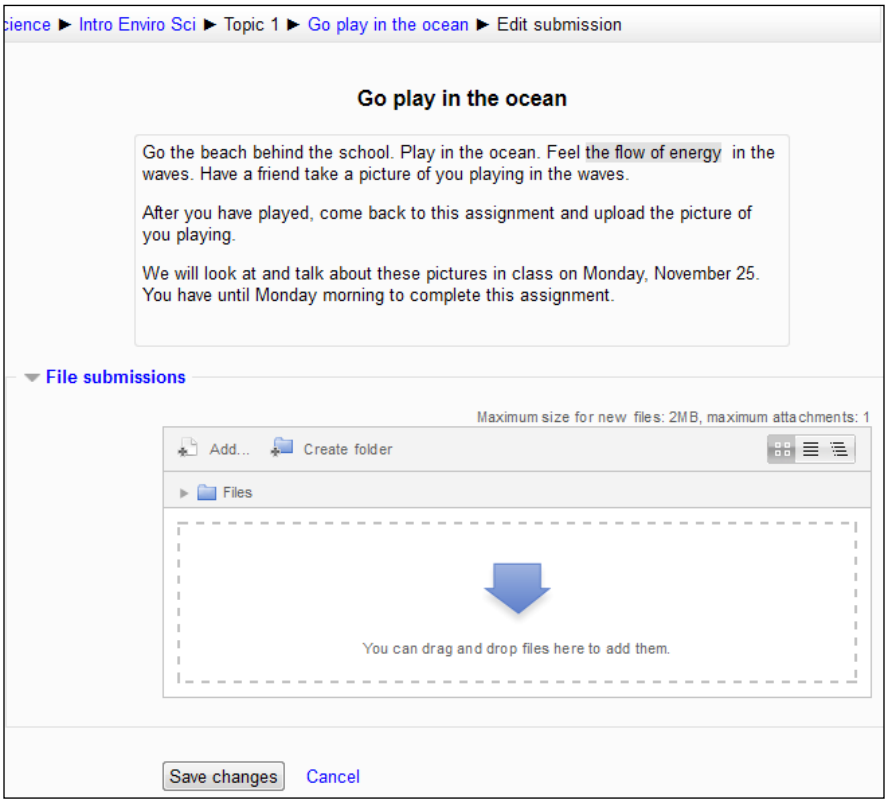
Remember that a Moodle site is configured with a limit on the size of files that can be uploaded into Moodle. If you require your students to create a video, you might need to find another way for them to send you their large video files.

When an assignment requires the student to upload a file, the student sees something like this:



www.it-ebooks.info

When the student clicks the **Add submission** button, the student is prompted to upload a file into the submission:



Later in this chapter, you will see several ways to provide feedback to the student.

Requiring Students to Submit Online Text

In an online text assignment, you will require the student to enter text into an online text editor. This text editor is part of the assignment activity.

If students are more comfortable writing the text in a word processor, they can copy and paste it into the text editor.

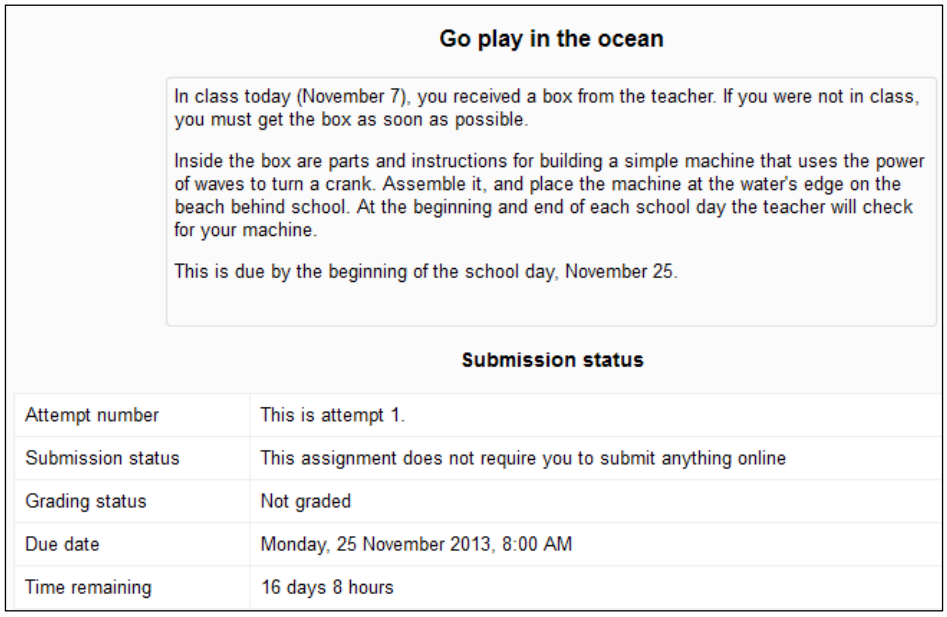
www.it-ebooks.info

You cannot paste graphics into Moodle's online text editor. Each graphic must be uploaded and placed into the document, using the text editor's insert graphic icon. Or, enable text and file submissions, so the graphics can be uploaded as separate files.

Submitting work done in the real world

You can use an assignment to require the students to tell you that they have completed an activity outside of Moodle. For example, you could instruct your Art students to build an outdoor sculpture. Then, their submission would consist of notifying you, "It's built and ready for you to review."

Even when you don't require students to upload or submit anything, you can still give a grade for the assignment. This is a good way to get work done outside of class, into the gradebook. In the following screenshot, you see an assignment that the student will do off line:



Go play in the ocean

In class today (November 7), you received a box from the teacher. If you were not in class, you must get the box as soon as possible.

Inside the box are parts and instructions for building a simple machine that uses the power of waves to turn a crank. Assemble it, and place the machine at the water's edge on the beach behind school. At the beginning and end of each school day the teacher will check for your machine.

This is due by the beginning of the school day, November 25.

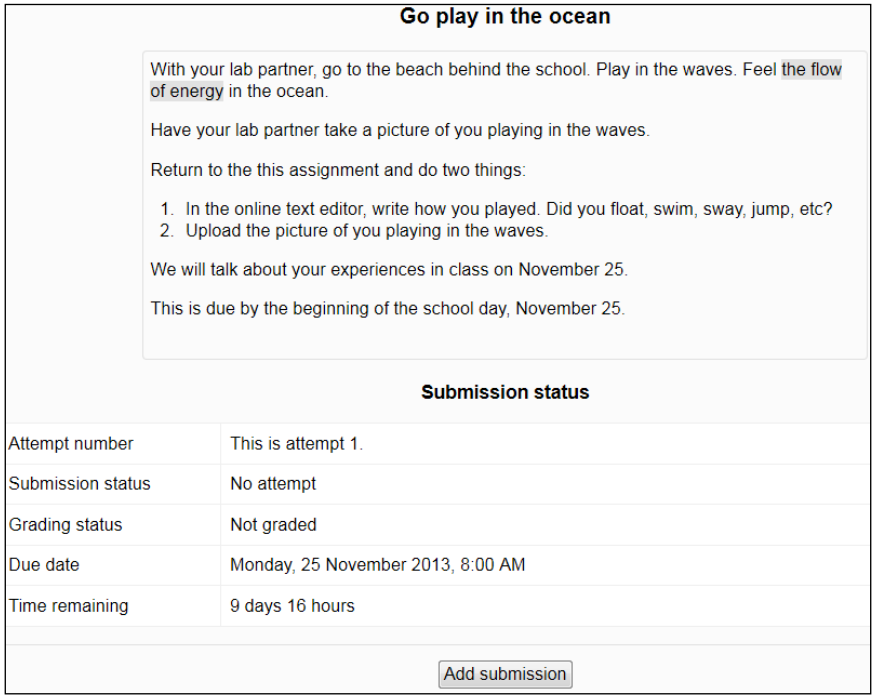
Submission status

Attempt number	This is attempt 1.
Submission status	This assignment does not require you to submit anything online
Grading status	Not graded
Due date	Monday, 25 November 2013, 8:00 AM
Time remaining	16 days 8 hours

www.it-ebooks.info

Submitting an assignment from the student's perspective

Let us look at the assignment from a student's perspective. When a student selects an assignment, (s)he will see the assignment's description. When you write the description, include instructions for what the student must do:



Go play in the ocean

With your lab partner, go to the beach behind the school. Play in the waves. Feel the flow of energy in the ocean.

Have your lab partner take a picture of you playing in the waves.

Return to the this assignment and do two things:

1. In the online text editor, write how you played. Did you float, swim, sway, jump, etc?
2. Upload the picture of you playing in the waves.

We will talk about your experiences in class on November 25.

This is due by the beginning of the school day, November 25.

Submission status

Attempt number	This is attempt 1.
Submission status	No attempt
Grading status	Not graded
Due date	Monday, 25 November 2013, 8:00 AM
Time remaining	9 days 16 hours

Add submission

The student clicks the **Add submission** button. The system responds by displaying a page where the student will enter the online text, upload the files, or both. What the student sees here is determined by the requirements that you selected when creating the assignment.

After the student enters the material to be graded, he/she clicks the **Save changes** button. The system responds with a confirmation page. At this point, the student can go back and edit the submission or submit it.

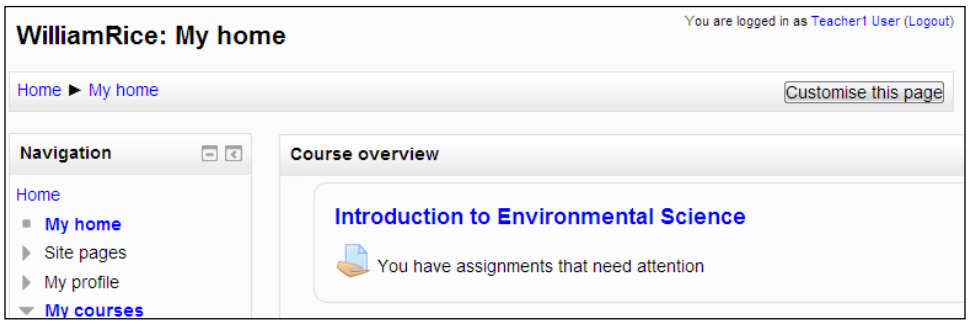
www.it-ebooks.info

On the settings page for the assignment, you can require the student to agree that he/she is submitting his or her own work.

On the settings page for the assignment, you can allow the student to submit comments with the submission. If you enable this, the student can add one or more comments to the assignment, at any time after submitting.

Grading an assignment

In the previous section, you saw how a student submits an assignment. When assignments need to be graded, Moodle will notify the teacher by displaying a message on the teacher's **My Home** page:



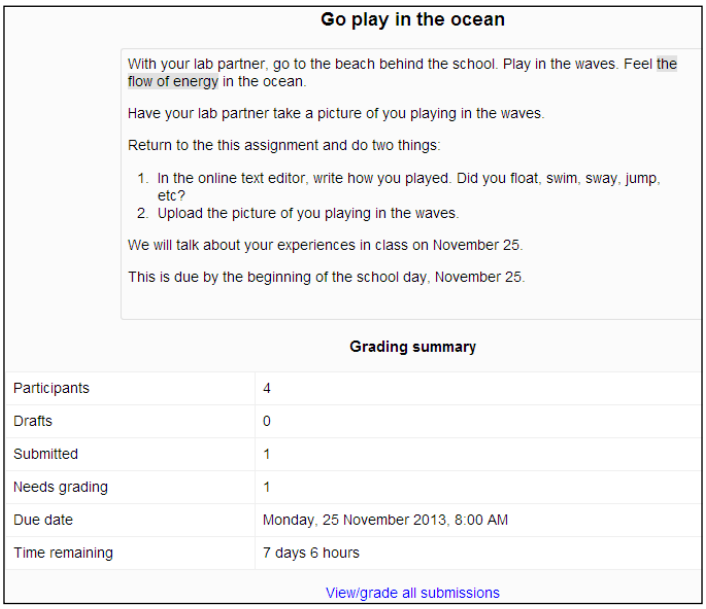
The assignment can also be configured to send an automated email to each teacher to alert them of the submitted assignments.

Moodle does not supply a link directly to the assignments that need grading, but does supply a link to the course. If you click the icon , it will list the incomplete assignments in that course, and provide a link to each of those assignment.

The system administrator can configure Moodle, so that when a user logs in, (s)he is automatically taken to the user's **My Home** page. This is done in **Administration** | **Site administration** | **Appearance** | **Navigation**, and selecting **My home** as the default home page.

www.it-ebooks.info

The teacher enters the course and opens the assignment. Moodle displays how many assignments have been submitted, and the number of assignments that still need to be graded:



Go play in the ocean

With your lab partner, go to the beach behind the school. Play in the waves. Feel the flow of energy in the ocean.

Have your lab partner take a picture of you playing in the waves.

Return to the this assignment and do two things:

1. In the online text editor, write how you played. Did you float, swim, sway, jump, etc?
2. Upload the picture of you playing in the waves.

We will talk about your experiences in class on November 25.

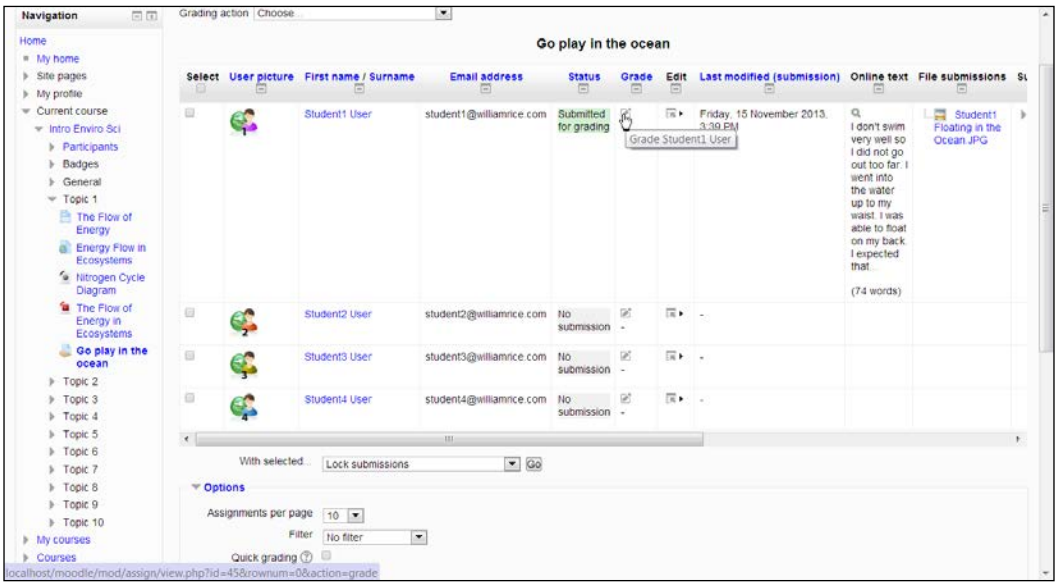
This is due by the beginning of the school day, November 25.

Grading summary

Participants	4
Drafts	0
Submitted	1
Needs grading	1
Due date	Monday, 25 November 2013, 8:00 AM
Time remaining	7 days 6 hours

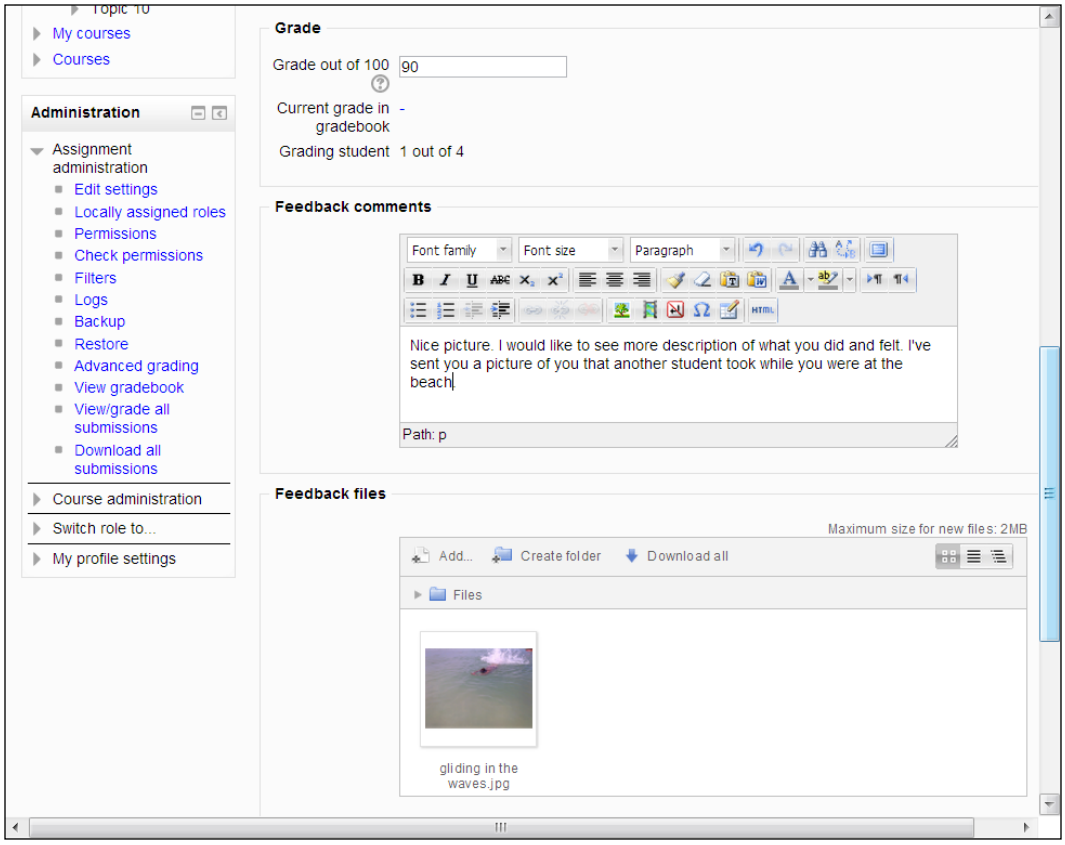
View/grade all submissions

The grading page for the assignment enables the teacher to open all of the submissions, and to enter a grade for each submission:



www.it-ebooks.info

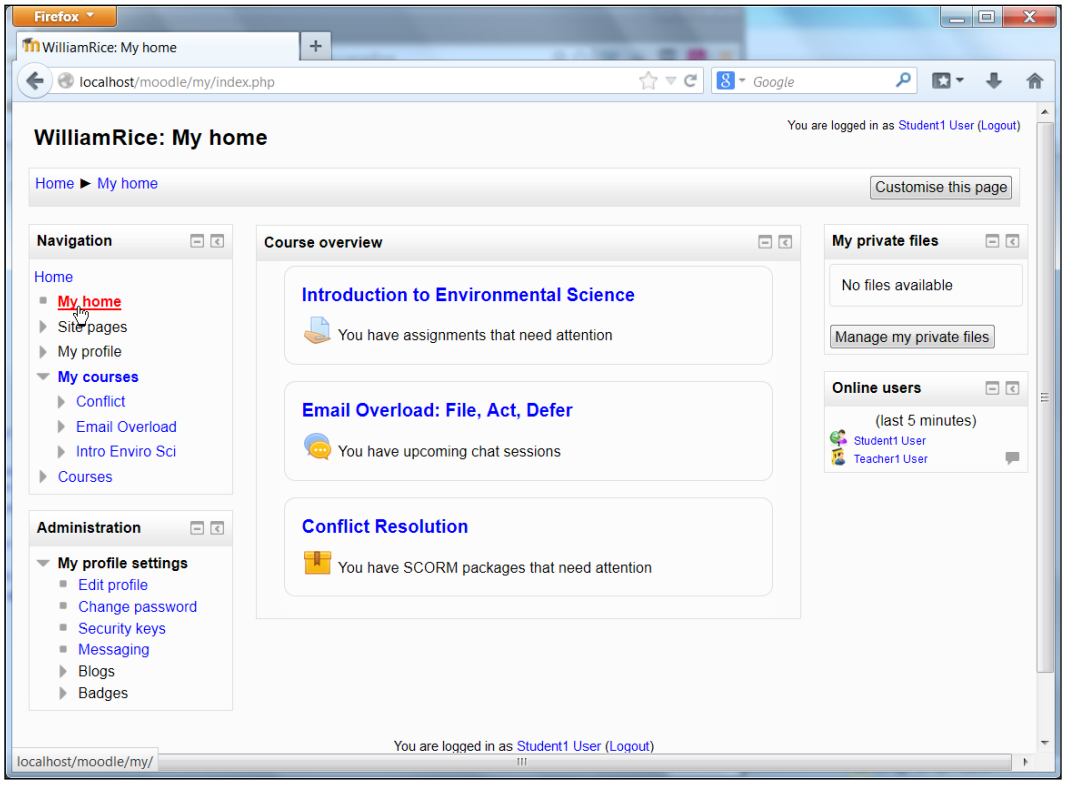
When you create the assignment, you can enable feedback comments and feedback files. If you do that, the teacher will be able to enter the comments and files while grading the assignment, as shown below:



www.it-ebooks.info

Receiving a grade for an assignment

After the teacher submits a grade for the student's assignment, the student will see a notice on the student's **My Home** page:



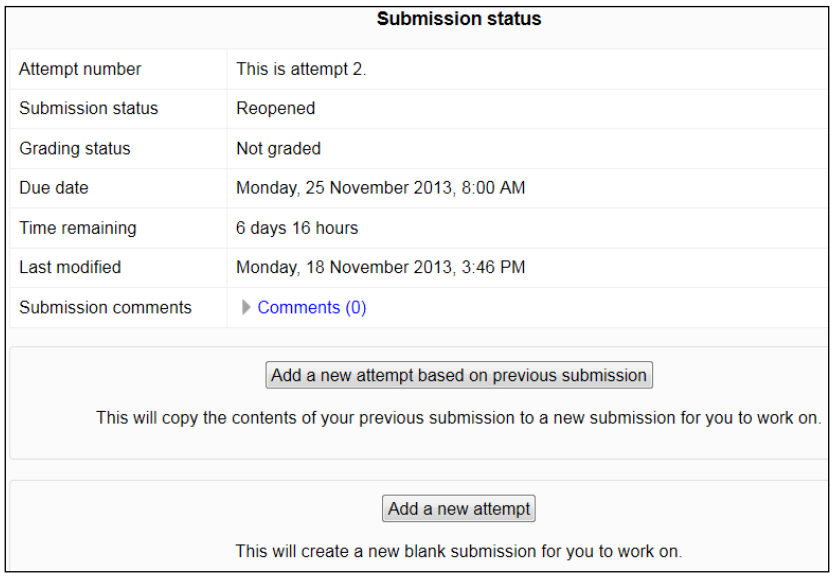
When the student enters the assignment, (s)he will see the grade, any feedback comments, and any feedback files that the teacher has sent:

Feedback	
Grade	90.00 / 100.00
Graded on	Monday, 18 November 2013, 2:20 AM
Graded by	Teacher1 User
Feedback comments	Nice picture. I would like to see more description of what you did and felt. I've sent you a picture of you that another student took while you were at the beach.
Feedback files	gliding in the waves.jpg

www.it-ebooks.info

Allowing a student to resubmit an assignment

You can allow a student to resubmit an assignment. You might do this if you think the student was confused about the instructions, or if the student did not submit his or her best work. From the student's point of view, a reopened assignment looks like this:



Submission status

Attempt number	This is attempt 2.
Submission status	Reopened
Grading status	Not graded
Due date	Monday, 25 November 2013, 8:00 AM
Time remaining	6 days 16 hours
Last modified	Monday, 18 November 2013, 3:46 PM
Submission comments	Comments (0)

Add a new attempt based on previous submission

This will copy the contents of your previous submission to a new submission for you to work on.

Add a new attempt

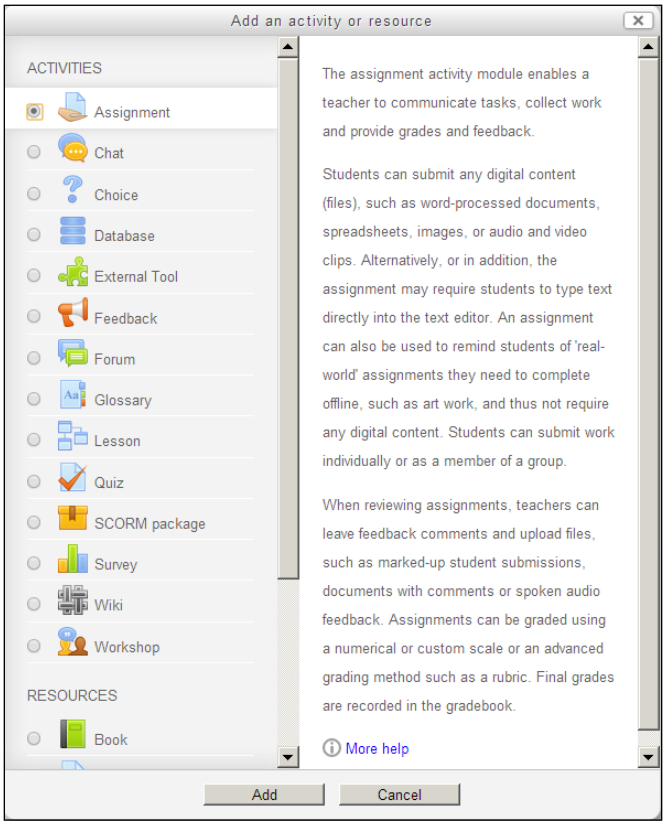
This will create a new blank submission for you to work on.

There are two ways, the teacher can reopen an assignment. First, the teacher can manually reopen the assignment for the student. Second, the teacher can use a combination of settings in the assignment and the gradebook to make Moodle automatically reopen the assignment, if the student gets less than a passing grade. We will look at these settings in the following section *Adding an assignment*.

www.it-ebooks.info

Adding an assignment

After logging in as a teacher, and turning on editing, you can add an assignment from the **Add an activity or resource** menu:



After clicking through this dialog box, you are taken to the **Edit Assignment** page. The **Edit Assignment** page will contain the same settings as all activities, including:

- **General** settings, such as name and description
- **Grade** settings, which are covered in the section on the gradebook
- **Common module settings**, such as visibility and ID number, which are covered in another chapter
- **Restrict access**, such as dates when access will be allowed

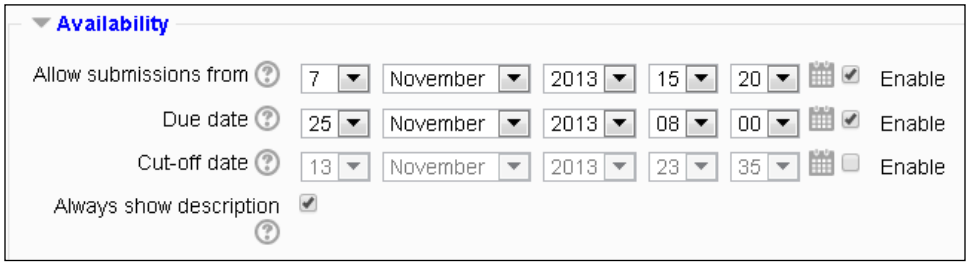
These common settings are covered in *Chapter 5, Resources, Activities, and Conditional Access*. The subsections below discuss the settings that are unique to the assignment activity.

www.it-ebooks.info

Some of the settings for an activity are affected by other settings in your course and in the system. If you're unsure about some of these other settings, try speaking with your system administrator or search the forums on `https://moodle.org/`.

Availability

The **Availability** setting determines when the student can submit work:



Do not confuse this with the **Allow access** settings under **Restrict access**. The **Allow access** settings determine if the student can see the assignment on the course page, or whether the assignment is completely hidden from the student. After the student sees and selects the assignment, the **Availability** setting determines if the student can submit work to the teacher.

Notice that there is a **Due date** and a **Cut-off date**. If you do not enable a **Cut-off date**, then the assignment will stop accepting work on the **Due date**. If you enable and enter a **Cut-off date**, then the assignment will accept work between the **Due date** and the **Cut-off date**. That work will be marked late.

When a student clicks into an assignment, Moodle displays the assignment's description. You usually use the description to tell the student how to complete the assignment. If you enable the setting for **Always show description**, then if a student enters the assignment at any time, the student will see the description. If you want a student to be able to prepare and work ahead, this is fine. If you disable the setting for **Always show description**, then if a student enters the assignment before the **Allow submissions** date, Moodle will hide the description for the assignment. You might use this feature to prevent students from working ahead.

Assignments that are due soon will appear in the **Upcoming events** block. If you do not set a **Due date**, by default it will be set to today (the day you created the assignment). This will make the assignment show up in the **Upcoming events** block, as if it's overdue. Make sure you set an appropriate **Due date** for the assignment.

www.it-ebooks.info

Submission types

The **Submission types** setting determine what kind of material, if any, the student will submit to the teacher:

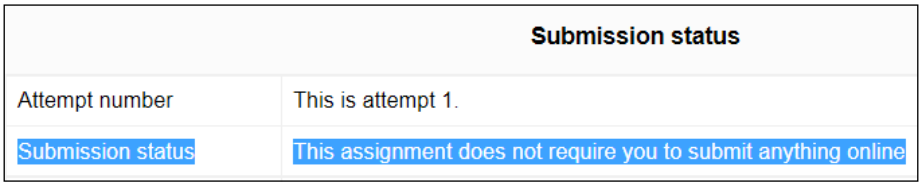
In a previous section called *Types of work students can submit*, we discussed three kinds of assignments that you can give the students:

- Submit a digital file
- Write something
- Do something outside of Moodle

This setting is where you do that.

If you want the student to write, or copy and paste some writing, select **Online text**. If you want the student to upload something, select **File submissions**. And if you want the student to be able to submit comments on their work, select **Submission comments**. In the preceding screenshot, we have selected all of these options.

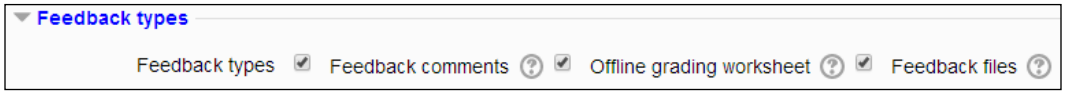
You can also select none of them. In that case, the student doesn't submit anything online. But, you could still give a student a grade for some work that (s)he did offline. If you do not require the student to submit anything online, the assignment will display a message to the student, like this:



www.it-ebooks.info

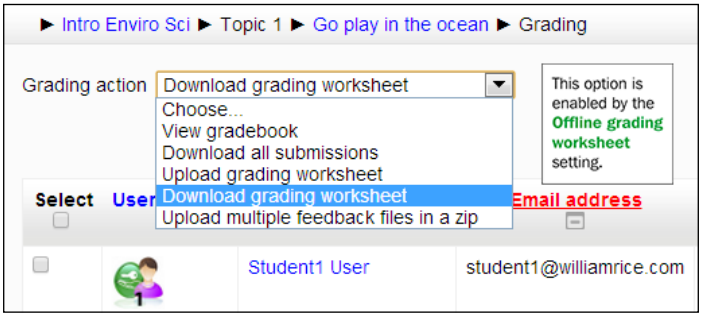
Feedback types

In the example shown above, the student received not only a grade, but also feedback from the teacher. The feedback was in the form of comments that the teacher wrote, and also a file that the teacher uploaded. This is enabled under the **Feedback types** setting:



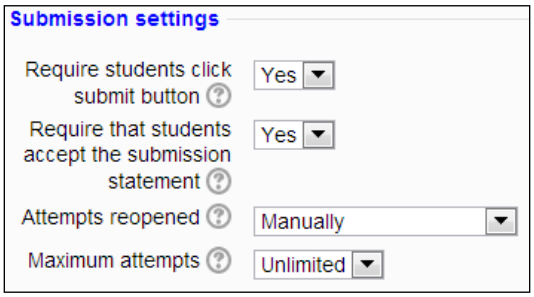
The option for **Offline grading worksheet** enables the teacher to download a comma-separated file (a `.csv` file), that has a list of all the assignments and a place for the teacher to enter grades. However, downloading the grading worksheet does not download the material that the students submitted. If the teacher wants to see the submissions offline, (s)he must download them separately.

If offline grading is enabled, the teacher will see the option to download the grading worksheet in the grading page for the assignment:



Submission settings

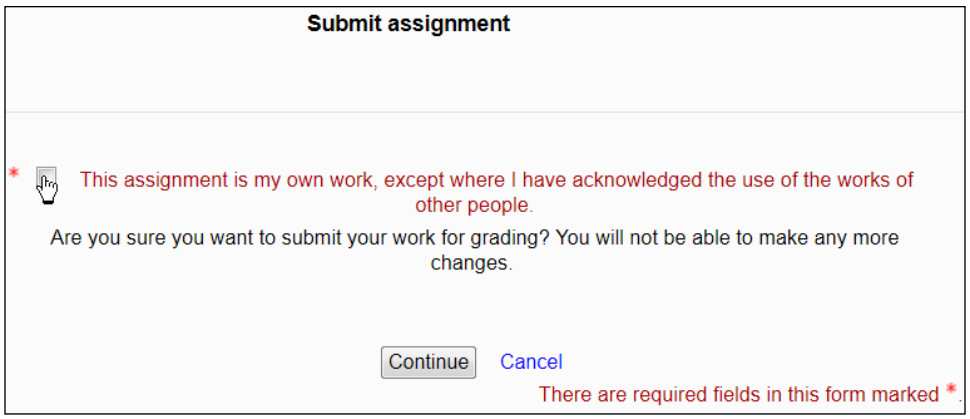
The submission settings determine how Moodle behaves while the student is submitting his or her work:



www.it-ebooks.info

The setting for **Require students click submit button** determines if the student must submit the assignment all at once or if the student can save their submission as a draft and submit it later. If you select **Yes** for this setting, when the student is creating a submission, Moodle will display a **Save** button. After the student saves the submission, when the student enters the assignment, she/he will have the option to either edit what was saved or submit it.

The setting for **Require that students accept the submission statement** determines if Moodle displays a statement that the work belongs to the student. The submission statement looks like this:

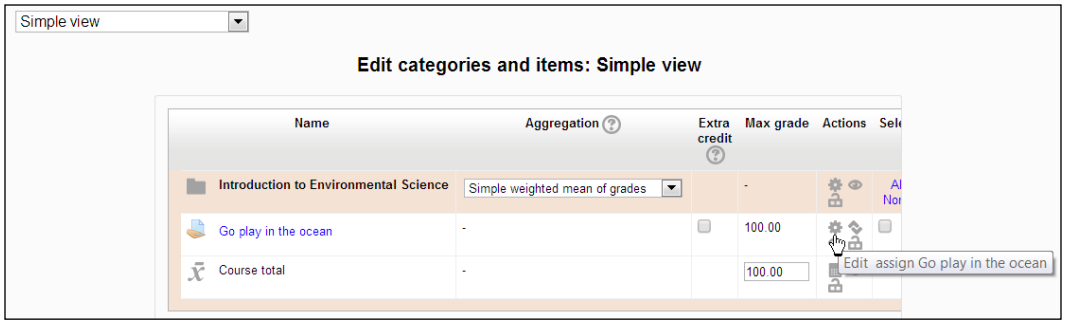


In the section on *Allowing a student to resubmit an assignment*, we saw what it looks like for the student, when the teacher reopens an assignment. The setting for **Attempts reopened** determines if, and how, the teacher can allow a student to resubmit the assignment. Note that a resubmission replaces the original submission.

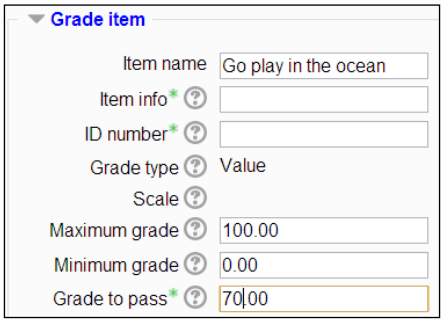
Selecting **Never** means the teacher cannot reopen the assignment to allow the student to resubmit their work. **Manually** means the teacher can reopen the assignment. **Automatically until pass** means the assignment will remain open until the student achieves a passing grade. That is, if the teacher gives the student less than a passing grade for the student's submission, Moodle will automatically enable the student to resubmit.

www.it-ebooks.info

To use **Automatically until pass**, you must set a passing grade for the assignment. This is done in the gradebook. First, select **Course Administration | Grades**, and from the dropdown list select **Simple view**:



Then, select the edit icon (the one shaped like a gear) for the assignment. That brings you to a page where you can enter a passing grade for the assignment:



Group submission settings

Moodle enables you to assign the students and teachers in a class to different groups.

Groups are created under **Course administration | Users | Groups**. For each activity in a course, the teacher decides whether the groups will be used. In other types of activities, groups are used to prevent students in one group from seeing the work done by students in another group. In an assignment, groups work a little differently. In an assignment, groups enable students to submit their work together as a group. They can also be used to assign students to specific teachers, while they are all using the same course. For more about groups, see *Chapter 12, Groups and Cohorts*.

In an assignment, setting **Students submit in groups** to **Yes** means that each group the teacher created will submit their work together, and that all members of a group will receive the same grade.

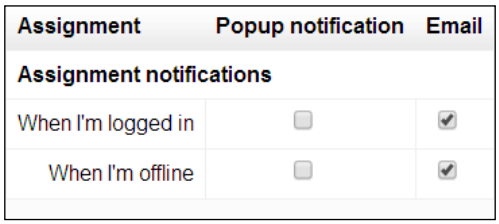
www.it-ebooks.info

If you set **Require all group members submit** to **Yes**, then every member of a group will need to click the submit button to finalize a submission. If you set this to **No**, then any member of a group can submit the assignment for the whole group. However, even though only one member of the group may have submitted the assignment, the feedback and grade are applied to all members of the group.

Notifications

The **Notifications** settings determine whether the graders will receive messages when a student (or group) submits an assignment.

Each user in Moodle can choose how they want to receive messages. This is done under **My profile settings** | **Messaging**:



If your e-mail application enables you to filter emails based on their subject line and sender, you can use that feature to automatically put all the notices about assignment submissions into a specific folder.

E-mail alerts are especially useful in courses where you allow students to proceed at their own pace, since you will not know what activities they have completed unless you check into the course and look at the gradebook.

Printer-friendly directions

Because assignments might be completed offline, you may want the directions to be printer-friendly so that students can take the directions with them. Make sure that any graphics you've embedded into the **Description** field are less than the width of the printed page. Or, you can upload the directions as an **Adobe Acrobat** (`.pdf`) file, and use the **Description** field to instruct students to print the directions and take the directions with them.

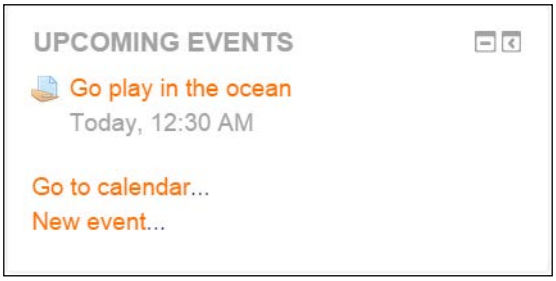
www.it-ebooks.info

Indicating that assignments are mandatory

On the course's home page, an assignment link appears with its own icon, like this: It is not immediately apparent to a new student that this icon means *do this assignment*. You might want to use a label to indicate that the assignment is something the student should do. In this example, a label instructs the student to complete the assignment and a multiple-choice survey question.

You can also label the individual activities with an imperative, such as "Read about the plants around you" or "Answer a survey question about your experience with edible plants."

Assignments are always added to the **Upcoming events** block. Even if you have no other events planned for the course (like a field trip, discussion, chat, and so on), if you have an assignment, consider adding the **Upcoming events** block. This will serve as an additional reminder for the students:



Lesson

A **Lesson** is a complex and powerful, type of activity. Essentially, a **Lesson** is a series of web pages that presents information and questions.

A Moodle lesson can be a powerful combination of instruction and assessment. Lessons offer the flexibility of a web page, the interactivity of a quiz, and branching capabilities.

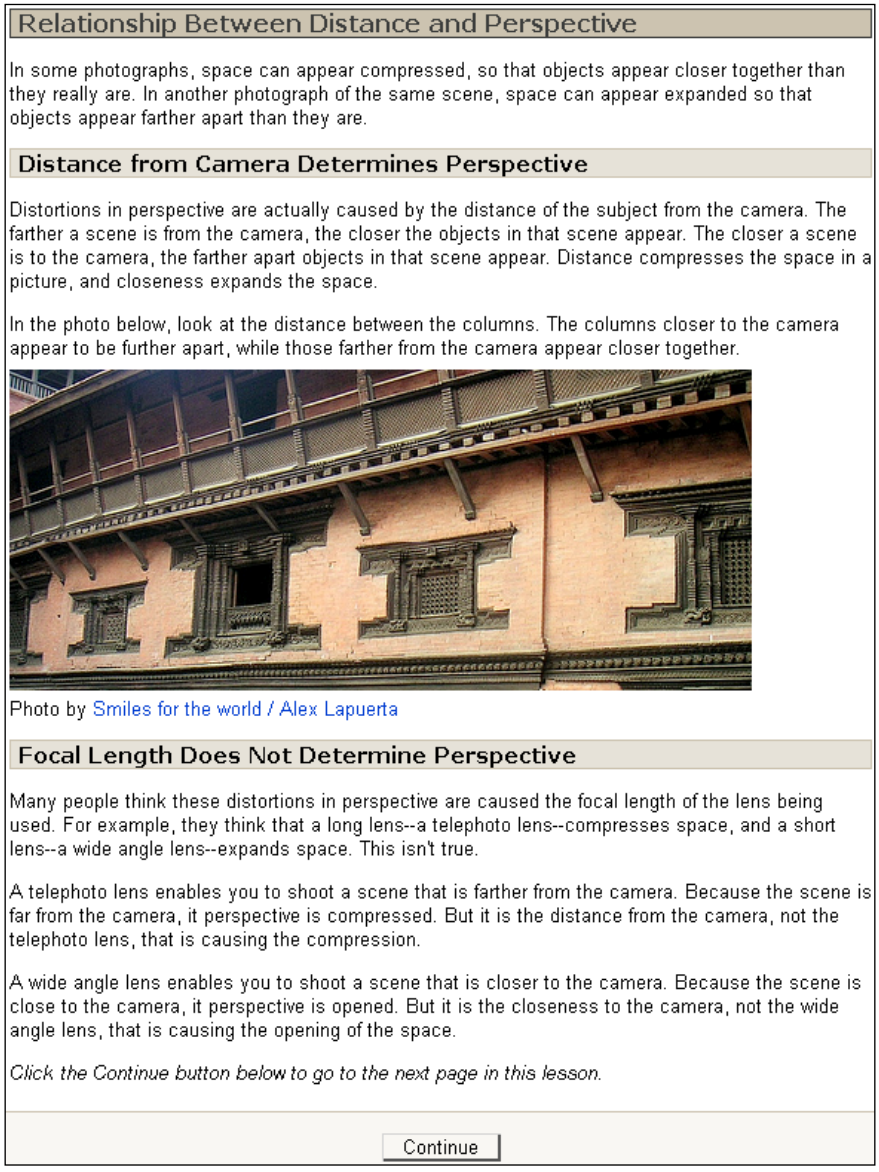
Definition of a lesson

A lesson consists of a series of web pages. Usually, a lesson page contains some instructional material, and a jump question about the material the student just viewed. The jump question is used to test a student's understanding of the material. Get it right, you then proceed to the next item. Get it wrong, you're then taken back either to the instructional page or jump to a remedial page. But the jump question could just as easily ask a student what he/she is interested in learning next, or who his/her favorite candidate is, or be labeled **Continue** and take the student to the next page.

www.it-ebooks.info

Example of a simple lesson with remedial page jump

Following is a screenshot of a lesson page. Its purpose is instructional. It appears like any normal web page. Indeed, you can put anything on a lesson page that you can put on any other Moodle web page:



Relationship Between Distance and Perspective

In some photographs, space can appear compressed, so that objects appear closer together than they really are. In another photograph of the same scene, space can appear expanded so that objects appear farther apart than they are.

Distance from Camera Determines Perspective

Distortions in perspective are actually caused by the distance of the subject from the camera. The farther a scene is from the camera, the closer the objects in that scene appear. The closer a scene is to the camera, the farther apart objects in that scene appear. Distance compresses the space in a picture, and closeness expands the space.

In the photo below, look at the distance between the columns. The columns closer to the camera appear to be further apart, while those farther from the camera appear closer together.

Photo by Smiles for the world / Alex Lapuerta

Focal Length Does Not Determine Perspective

Many people think these distortions in perspective are caused the focal length of the lens being used. For example, they think that a long lens--a telephoto lens--compresses space, and a short lens--a wide angle lens--expands space. This isn't true.

A telephoto lens enables you to shoot a scene that is farther from the camera. Because the scene is far from the camera, it perspective is compressed. But it is the distance from the camera, not the telephoto lens, that is causing the compression.

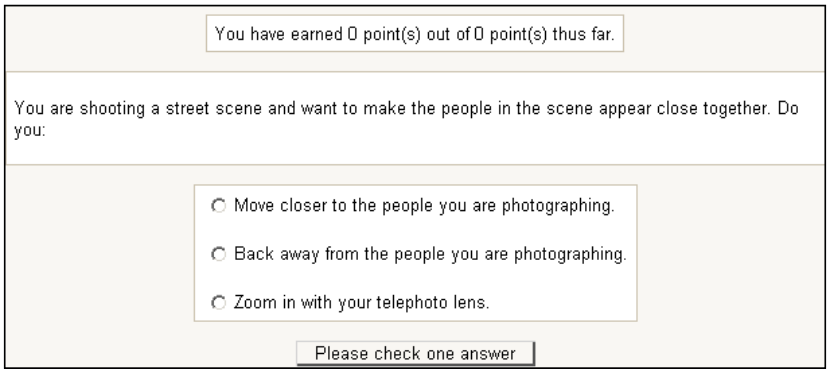
A wide angle lens enables you to shoot a scene that is closer to the camera. Because the scene is close to the camera, it perspective is opened. But it is the closeness to the camera, not the wide angle lens, that is causing the opening of the space.

Click the Continue button below to go to the next page in this lesson.

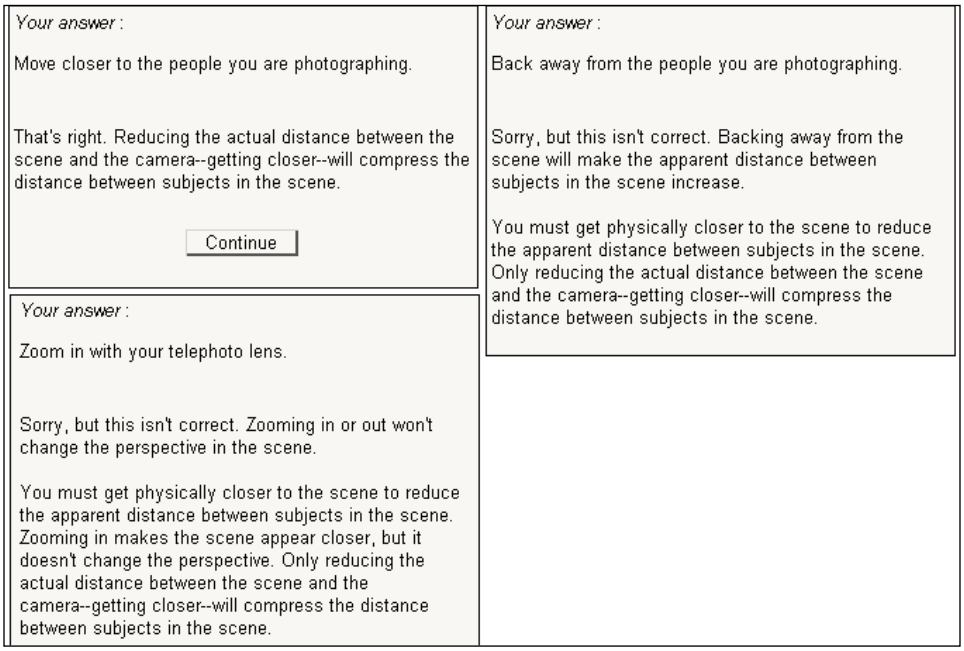
Continue

www.it-ebooks.info

At the bottom of the lesson page is a **Continue** button. In this lesson, when the student clicks this button, she/he is taken the question page shown as follows:

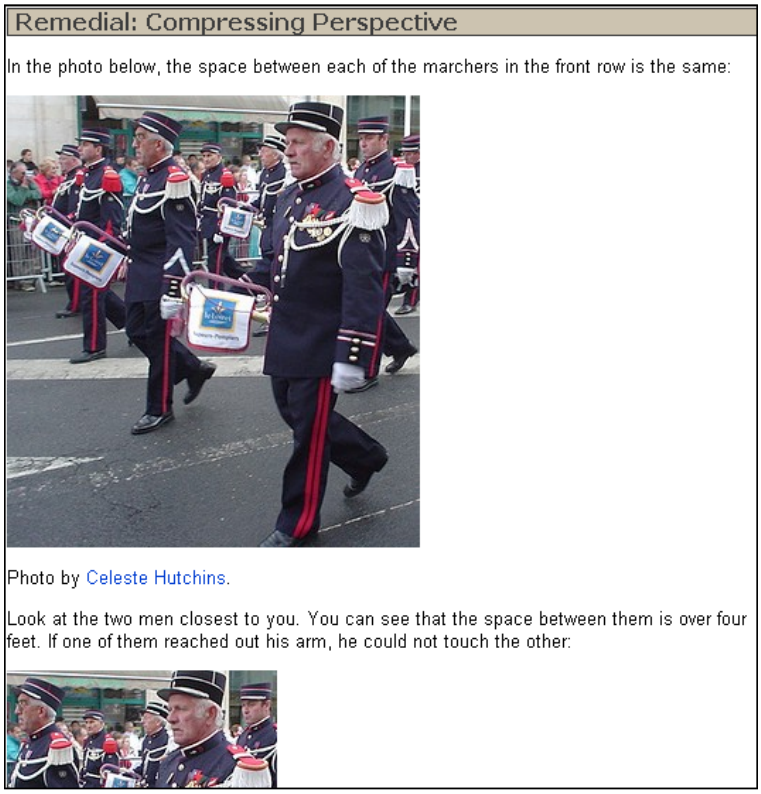


Each answer displays different feedback, just like a quiz:



www.it-ebooks.info

If the student answers correctly, he/she is taken to the next instructional page. An incorrect answer takes the student to a remedial page. Following is an example of a remedial page:

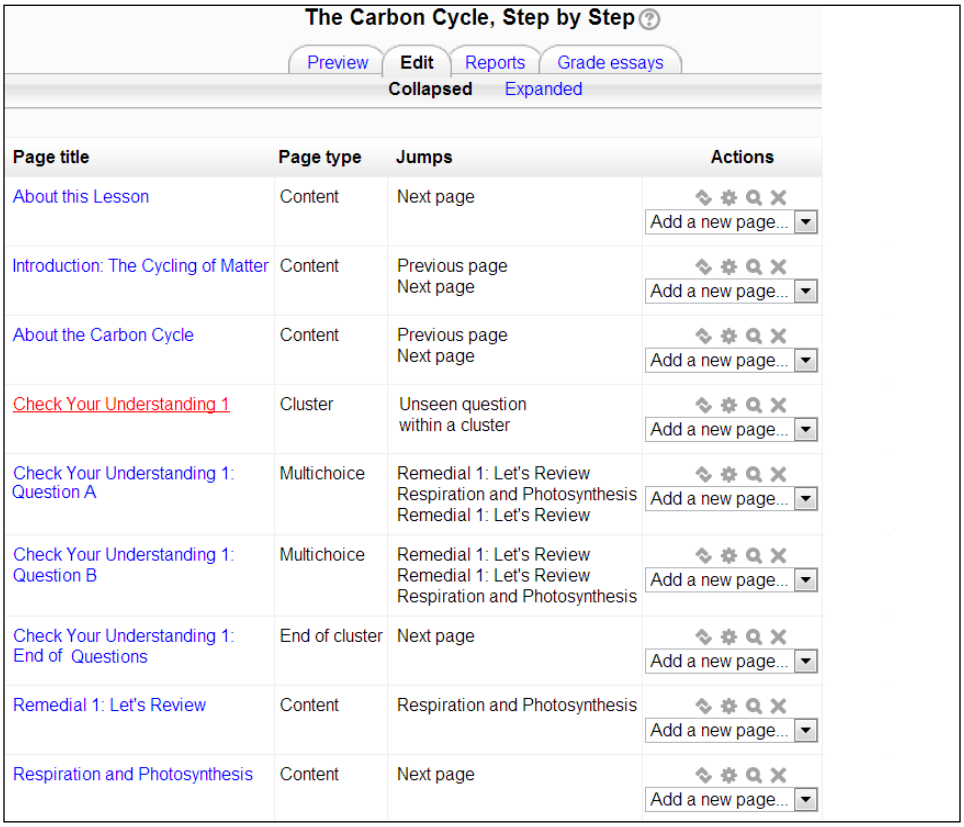


This is the simplest sequence for a lesson in Moodle. You can also add a few more advanced features. We'll discuss those later.

www.it-ebooks.info

Types of lesson pages

In a lesson, different kinds of pages perform different functions. The following screenshot shows you a lesson that is built from several kinds of pages:

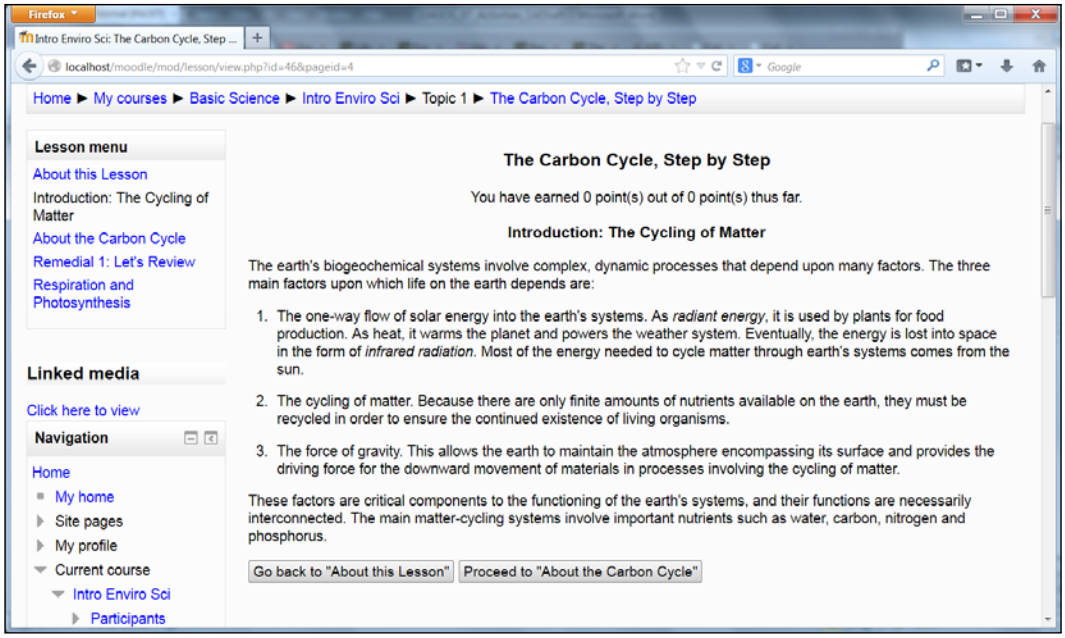


Let us look at each type of page.

www.it-ebooks.info

Content pages

The first three and last two pages in the preceding lesson are content pages. A content page displays some information and then offers one or more buttons for the student to click in order to navigate to a different content page or question page. Here is the second page from the preceding lesson:

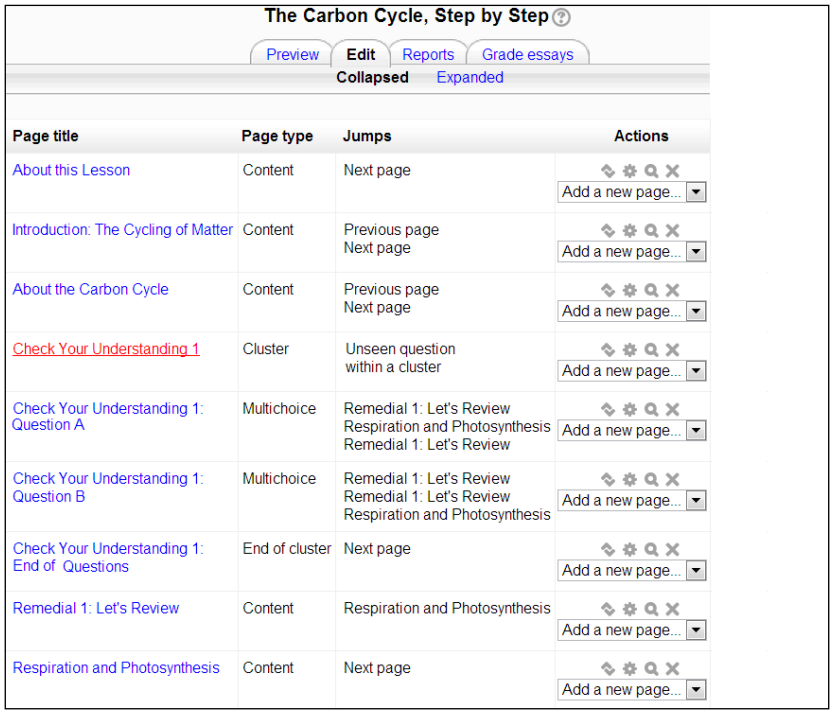


The buttons at the bottom of this page are added by the course creator. Notice that one of the buttons takes the student to the next page. But what if, when you are creating this page, the next page hasn't been created yet? That's not a problem. After you have created all the pages in your lesson, you can go back to the content pages and add all the jump buttons. Using the relative jumps (previous page, next page, and so on.) is a big time saver.

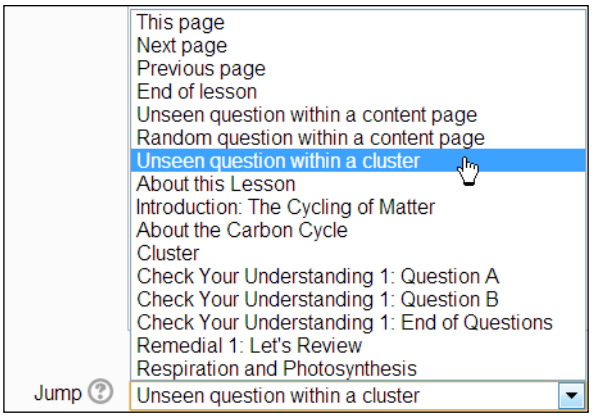
www.it-ebooks.info

Cluster with questions

A cluster page, end of cluster page, and the pages in between them act as a single unit. In our example, we have a cluster with two question pages:



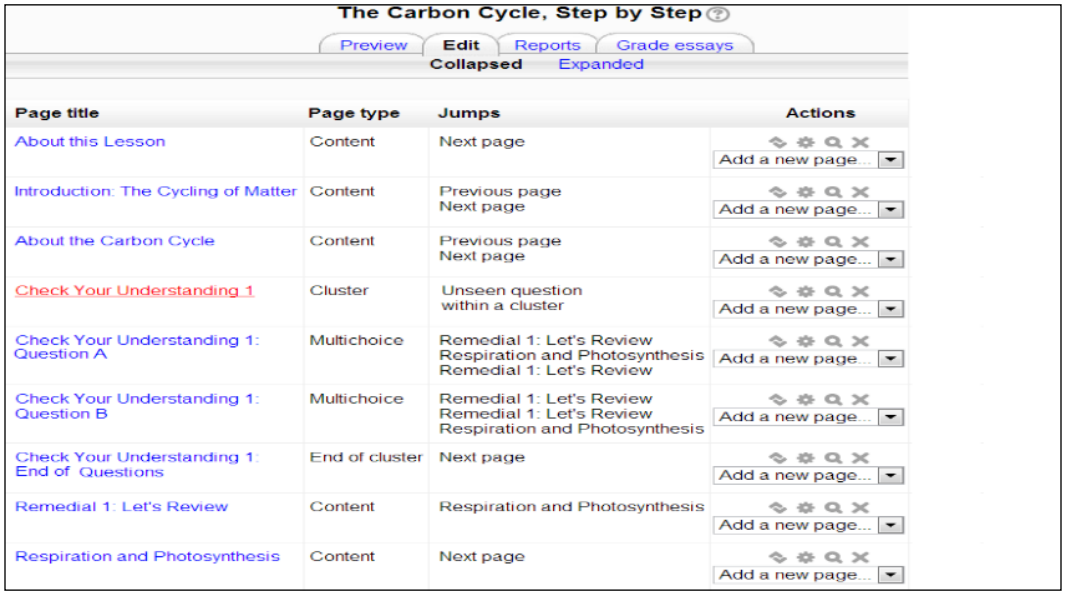
On the first cluster page, a setting directs Moodle to display an unseen question page in this cluster. You can select other options for a cluster page:



www.it-ebooks.info

Using the option to show an unseen question within the cluster turns the cluster into a random question test.

Between the cluster and at the end of the cluster, are two question pages. These question pages will jump the student out of the cluster if he/she answers correctly, and jump the student to a remedial page if he/she answers incorrectly. You can see that in the three responses to the question:



If you use a cluster like the one above, be careful that you do not create an impossible situation. In this case, if the remedial page sent the student back into the cluster, and the student had seen both questions, then there is no way the cluster could display an *unseen question page*. Moodle would give the student an error message.

Instead of sending the student back into the same cluster, create several clusters in a row. If a student gets a question correct, you can skip over all the unseen clusters and go on to the next topic. If the student gets a question incorrect, you can send the student straight to the next cluster.

End of branch

An end of branch page automatically jumps to a page that is specified by the lesson creator. Just as students will never see the cluster and end of cluster pages, students will never see an end of branch page. It is, literally, just an automatic jump page.

www.it-ebooks.info

Plan, create pages, and add content

If you intend to create a lesson that has jumps, clusters, and branches, then draw a diagram of the lesson. A flowchart can tell you what kind of pages you will need to create.

Then, gather and organize your material in a word processor.

Then, create the pages in the lesson.

After the pages are in the Moodle lesson, create the jumps. After you have the pages and jumps, go to the **Edit Lesson** page and look at the list of all the pages in the lesson. You can compare that list to the diagram that you created when planning the lesson.

Finally, test the lesson from the student's point of view.

Configuring lesson settings

When you first create a lesson, you are presented with a window where you choose settings for the entire lesson. Before you can add even a single page to a lesson, you must select the lesson settings. If you're not sure about any of these settings, just take your best guess. You can always return to this page and change the settings.

Remember, one of the advantages of Moodle is the ease with which you can experiment with and change your course material. Get accustomed to taking a bolder, more experimental approach to using Moodle, and you will enjoy it a lot more.

This window is broken into eight areas:

- General
- Appearance
- Availability
- Prerequisite lesson
- Flow control
- Grade
- Common module settings
- Restrict access

www.it-ebooks.info

In this section, I'll go through the **Editing Lesson** page from top to bottom. I'll focus on the settings that are unique to the lesson activity. So, by the end of this section, you will understand how most of the settings on the **Editing Lesson** page affect the student's experience.

General settings

This section consists of only the name of the lesson, which students will see on the course's home page. If you want the students to see a description for the lesson before they enter the lesson, you will need to add a label to the course home page to describe the lesson.

Appearance

This section contains settings that affect how the lesson is presented.

File popup

You can upload a file into this field. When the student enters the lesson, the file will be displayed in a popup window. This enables the student to refer to the file as he/she proceeds through the lesson.

The popup window might be blocked by the student's browser. To ensure that the student knows that there is a file he/she should see, consider adding a message to the first page of the lesson that tells the student to open the file if it has not opened automatically. For example, you could use a message like this:

While you are reading this lesson, you will need to refer to a diagram. To show that diagram, on the left menu bar, under Linked Media, click the link Click here to view.

After you display the diagram, proceed to the next page.

Display ongoing score

When this is set to **Yes**, each page of the lesson displays the student's score, and the number of possible points so far.

Notice that, this displays the number of points that the student could have earned for the pages that he/she has viewed so far.

www.it-ebooks.info

If a lesson is not linear, if it branches, then the path that each student takes through the lesson can change. This means that each student can have the chance to earn a different number of points. So, in a branching lesson, the total number of points possible for the entire lesson is not meaningful because the lesson can be different for different students. For example, you might create a lesson with many branches and pages, and then require the student to earn at least 200 points on that lesson. This would encourage the student to explore the lesson and try different branches until he/she has earned the required points.

Display left menu and minimum grade to display menu

Display left menu displays a navigation bar on the left side of the slide show window. The navigation bar enables the student to navigate to any slide. Without that navigation bar, the student must proceed through the slide show in the order that Moodle displays the lesson pages and must complete the lesson to exit (or the student can force the window to close).

Sometimes, you may want a student to complete the entire lesson, in order, before allowing him or her to move freely around the lesson. The setting for **Minimum grade to display menu** accomplishes this. Only if the student achieved the specified grade will he/she see the navigation menu. You can use this setting to ensure that the student goes completely through the lesson the first time, before allowing the student to freely move around the lesson.

Maximum number of answers

At the bottom of each question page in a lesson, **Maximum number of answers** determines the maximum number of choices that each question can have. For example, if this were set to `4`, then each question could have at most four choices: **a**, **b**, **c**, and **d**.

If each answer sends the student to a different page, then the number of answers is also the number of branches possible. Set this to the highest number of answers that any of your questions will have. After creating question pages, you can increase or decrease this setting without affecting the questions that you have already created.

Use default feedback

If this is set to **Yes**, if Moodle does not see any custom feedback that you created for a question, it will display a default message like **That's correct** or **That's incorrect**. The default feedback is set in Moodle's language file, so it will be translated into whatever language the course is using. If you set this to **No**, and Moodle does not see any custom feedback that you created for a question, then Moodle will not display any feedback when the student answers.

www.it-ebooks.info

Link to next activity

This setting enables you to put a link to another activity in the course, at the end of the lesson.

Prerequisite lesson

The settings in this section enable you to require the student to view another lesson, before this lesson is open to the student. One of the settings enables you to specify how many minutes the student must spend on a previous lesson. You could use that setting to ensure that the student spends a certain amount of time watching a video before moving on to the next lesson. You would do this by embedding the video in the prerequisite lesson.

The prerequisite lesson settings are in addition to the **restrict access** settings that are available for all activities. On the restrict access settings, you do not have the option to specify the amount of time spent on another activity as a condition for access.

The flow control

This section contains settings that affect how a student moves through the lesson.

Allow student review

Allow student review enables a student to go backwards in a lesson, and retry questions that he/she got wrong. This differs from just using the **Back** button on the browser, in that the setting enables the student to retry questions while using the **Back** button does not.

Provide option to try a question again

Provide option to try a question again displays a message after the student incorrectly answers a question. The message invites the student to try the question again, but for no points.

When you create a question in a lesson, you can create feedback for each of the answers to that question. However, if you set **Provide option to try a question again** to **Yes**, Moodle will override the feedback that you created for the answers. Instead, it will display the message above.

If you created custom feedback for the answers in your lesson, but Moodle is not displaying the feedback that you created, check the **Provide option to try a question again** setting. It might be set to **Yes**. Set it to **No**.

www.it-ebooks.info

Maximum number of attempts

Maximum number of attempts determines how many times a student can attempt any question. It applies to all questions in the lesson.

Number of pages to show

Number of pages to show determines how many pages are shown. If the lesson contains more than this number, the lesson ends after reaching the number set here. If the lesson contains fewer than this number, the lesson ends after every page has been shown. If you set this to zero, the lesson ends when all pages have been shown.

Grade

A lesson can be graded or ungraded. It can also allow students to retake the lesson. While Moodle allows you to grade a lesson, remember that a lesson's primary purpose is to teach, not test.

Don't use a lesson to do the work of a quiz or assignment.

The lesson's score is there to give you a feedback on the effectiveness of each page, and to enable the students to judge their progress.

The practice lesson

If you set **Practice lesson** to **Yes**, this lesson will not show up in the gradebook. In a practice lesson, students see a grade after completing the activity, but this grade is only for them. It is not recorded or displayed in the gradebook, and teachers cannot see it. It's a pure self-studying option.

Custom scoring

Normally, a correct answer in a question is worth the entire point value for the question, and each wrong answer is worth zero. Enabling custom scoring allows you to set a point value for each individual answer in a question. Use this if some answers are *more right* or *more wrong* than others. You can also use this to set the point value for a question. If a question is more important, use custom scoring to give it more points.

www.it-ebooks.info

Handling of retakes

This setting is relevant only if the student is allowed to repeat the lesson (the setting above is set to **Yes**). When the students are allowed to retake the lesson, the grades shown in the **Grades** page are either the average of the retakes or the student's best grade.

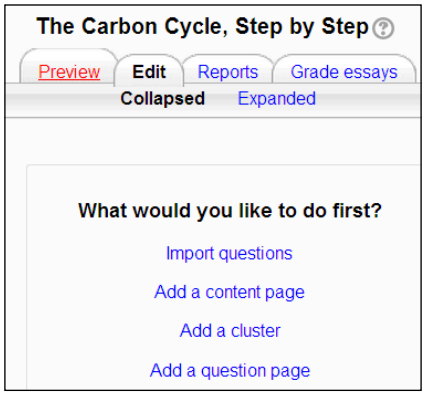
Minimum number of questions

Minimum number of questions sets the lower limit for the number of questions used to calculate a student's grade on the lesson. It is relevant only when the lesson is going to be graded. If the student doesn't answer this minimum number of questions, then the lesson is not graded.

If you don't see this setting, it is probably because you have **Practice lesson** set to **Yes**. Set **Practice lesson** to **No**, save the page, and then you should see this setting appear.

Adding the first lesson page

Immediately after you save your lesson settings, Moodle presents you with the following page:



www.it-ebooks.info

At this point, it is time to create the first question page or import question pages from another system. Let us take a look at each of your options.

Importing questions

If you choose to **Import questions**, you can import questions created by Moodle and other online learning systems. Some of the formats that you can import are:

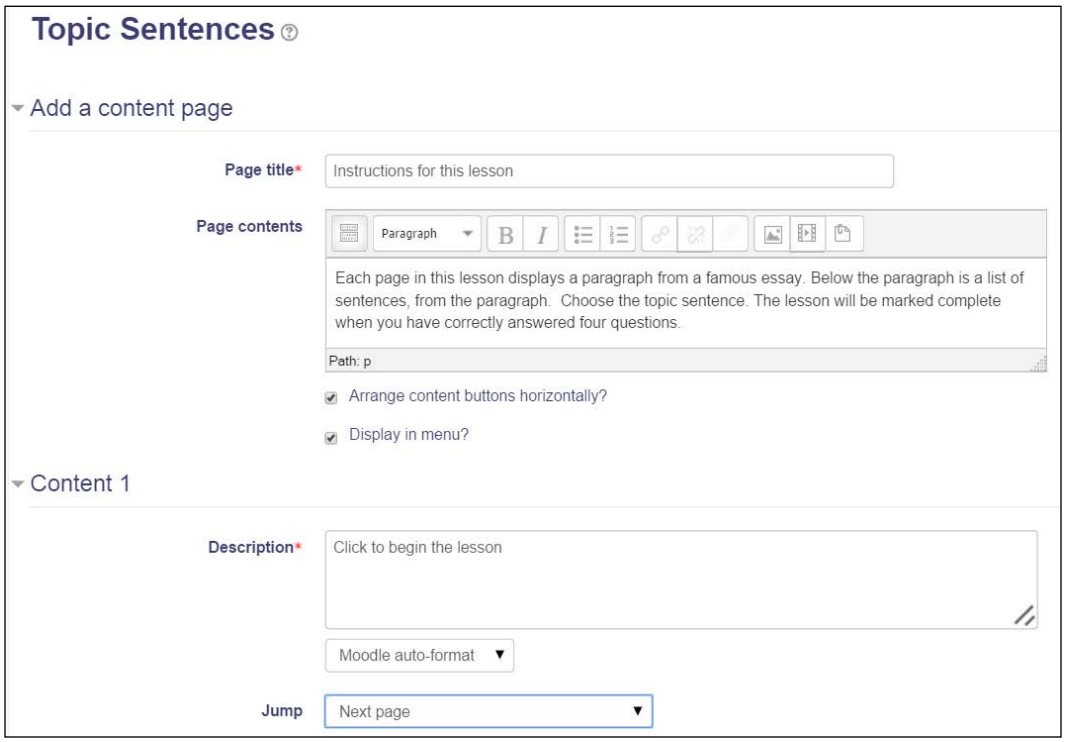
Format	Description
GIFT	GIFT is text only.
Moodle XML	These are Moodle's proprietary format. XML can include graphics and special characters.
Aiken	This format is for multiple-choice questions.
Missing word	This format is for missing word multiple choice questions.
Blackboard	If you're converting from Blackboard to Moodle, you can export questions from Blackboard and import them into Moodle.
WebCT	This format supports multiple choice and short answers questions from WebCT.
Embedded answers (Cloze)	This format is a multiple question, multiple answer question with embedded answers.

Each question that you import will create a question page. Each answer will create a jump button on the question page.

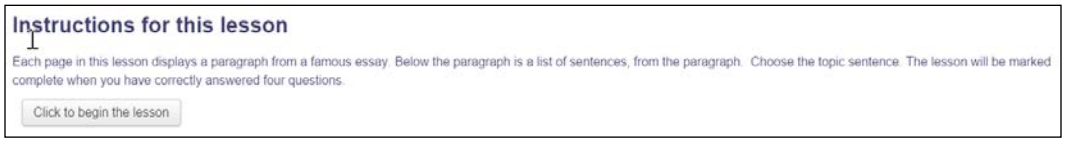
www.it-ebooks.info

Adding a content page

A content page consists of a page of links to the other pages in your lesson. At this point, immediately after you've finished the lesson settings page, your lesson doesn't have any pages. However, if you want to begin your lesson with a page of instructions, you can add a content page and make it jump to the next page. Creating a content page would look like this:



When the student runs the lesson, that content page will look like this:



www.it-ebooks.info

Adding a cluster

A **cluster** is a group of question pages. Within this cluster, you can require that the student correctly answers a number of questions before being allowed to proceed out of the cluster. This enables you to test that a student understands a concept before moving on.

Or, you can display a random page from the cluster, and from that page, proceed to any other page in the lesson. This enables you to send each student down a different random pathway in the lesson, so that not all students have the same experience.

A cluster consists of a beginning cluster page, an end of cluster page, and pages in between them.

Adding a question page

This option enables you to add a question page to your lesson, using Moodle's built-in editor. The process for creating a question page is covered in the next section, *Creating the question page*.

Try adding your question pages first. Then, put a content page with instructions at the beginning of the lesson. If needed, organize your question pages into branches or clusters. Finally, end the lesson with a content page to say good-bye to the student.

Creating a question page

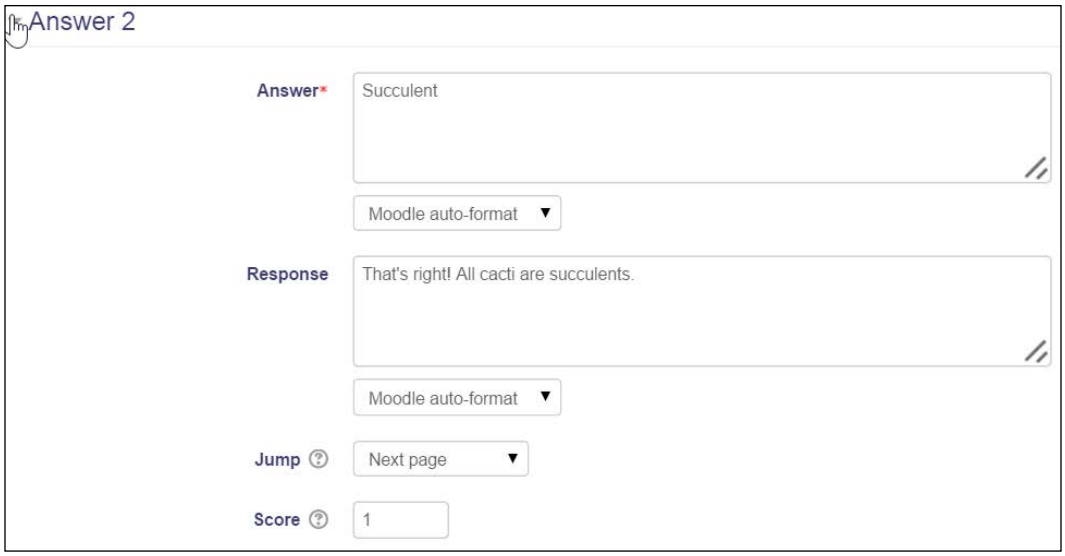
After you fill out and save the **Settings** page, it is time to create the first question page. Even though it's called a *question page*, the page can contain more than just a question. It's a web page, so you can add any content to it. Usually, it contains information and a question to test the student's understanding. You can choose different types of questions:

- Multiple choice
- True/false
- Short answer
- Numeric
- Matching
- Essay

You can also create feedback for each answer to the question, similar to creating feedback for the answers in a quiz question. And, you can make the lesson jump to a new page, based upon the answer the student selects.

www.it-ebooks.info

In the following example, you can see the question page contains a question, and several answers to the question. Notice that for each answer, there is a **Response** field that the student sees immediately after submitting the answer. And, there is also a **Jump** field for each answer. For the incorrect answer that you see, **Jump** can take the student to a remedial page, or redisplay the current page so the students can try again. For the correct answer, **Jump** can display the next page in the lesson as shown in the following screenshot:



Page Title

The **Page Title** will display at the top of the page when it is shown in the lesson.

Page Contents

As was said before, a lesson page is really a web page. It can contain anything that you can put on any other Moodle web page. Usually, it will contain information and then a question to test the student's understanding.

Answers

The **Answers** will be displayed at the bottom of the lesson page, after the **Page Contents**. The student selects an answer in response to the question posed in the **Page Contents**.

Responses

For each **Answer** that the student selects, its **Response** is shown before the student is taken to a new page.

www.it-ebooks.info

Jumps

Each **Answer** that a student selects results in a **Jump** to a page.

This Page

If **Jump** is **This page**, the student stays on the same page. The student can then try to answer the question again.

Next or Previous Page

If **Jump** is **Next page** or **Previous page**, the student is taken to the next or previous page. After you rearrange the pages in a lesson, this jump might give you different results. Just be aware that this is a **relative** jump.

Specific Pages

You can also select a specific page to jump to. The pull-down list displays all of the lesson page's titles. If you select a specific page to jump to, the jump will remain the same, even if you rearrange the pages in your lesson.

Unseen question within a cluster

Recall that a branch table is a table of contents, listing the pages in a lesson. When you insert a branch table into a lesson, you can also insert an end of branch later in the lesson. The pages between the branch table and end of branch become a branch. For example, a lesson with two branches might look like this:

```
Cluster 1
Question Page
Question Page
Question Page
End of Cluster
Cluster 2
Question Page
Question Page
Question Page
End of Cluster
```

For a **Jump**, if you select **Unseen question with a branch**, the student will be taken to a question page that he/she has not yet answered correctly in this session. That question page will be in the same cluster as the current page.

Unseen question with a branch takes the student to a question page that he/she hasn't answered correctly. The student might have seen the page before, and answered incorrectly.

www.it-ebooks.info

Random question within a content page

For a **Jump**, if you select **Random** question within a content page, the student will be taken to a random question page in the same cluster as the current page.

In the **Lesson Settings** page, if **Maximum number of attempts** is set to something greater than **1**, the student might see a page that he/she has seen before. But a page will be repeated only if **Maximum number of attempts** is greater than **1**. If it's set to **1**, a random question page that the student has not seen before will be displayed, which has the same effect as choosing **Unseen question within a cluster**.

To restate this: When the lesson setting **Maximum number of attempts** is set to **1**, then random question within a content page acts exactly like unseen question within a cluster. When **Maximum number of attempts** is set to greater than **1**, then random question within a content page displays a truly random question.

One strategy for using this setting is to forgo the use of unseen question within a cluster. Whenever you want to use unseen question within a cluster, instead use random question within a content page and set the **Maximum number of attempts** to **1**. Then you have the option of converting all of your lesson to random jumps just by setting **Maximum number of attempts** to **2** or greater.

Creating pages and assigning jumps

When filling out a question page, **Answer1** is automatically assumed to be the correct answer, so **Jump1** automatically reads next page. This is because in most cases, you want a correct response to result in the next page in the lesson being displayed. However, you can select any existing page in the lesson for the jump. Note that, when you are filling out the first question page, there are no other pages to jump to, so the jumps on the first page will all read this page. After creating more pages, you can go back and change the jumps.

It is usually most efficient to create all of your content and question pages first, and then go back and assign the jumps.

The jumps that you create will determine the order in which the pages are presented to the student. For any answer, you can select a jump to the last page of the lesson. The last page displays an end-of-lesson message and, if you choose, the grade for the lesson. It also displays a link that takes the student back to the course's home page.

www.it-ebooks.info

The flow of pages

The most obvious usage of question pages and jumps is to enforce a straight-through lesson structure. A correct answer results in a positive response such as "That's correct!" and then jumps to the next page. An incorrect answer results in a negative response or a correction. An incorrect answer can then redisplay the page so that the student can try again, as in the previous example. (**Jump1:This page**). Or, an incorrect answer can jump to a remedial page.

The order of pages the student would follow if he/she answered every question correctly is called the **logical order**. This is what the teacher sees when editing the lesson, and displaying all of the pages in the same window.

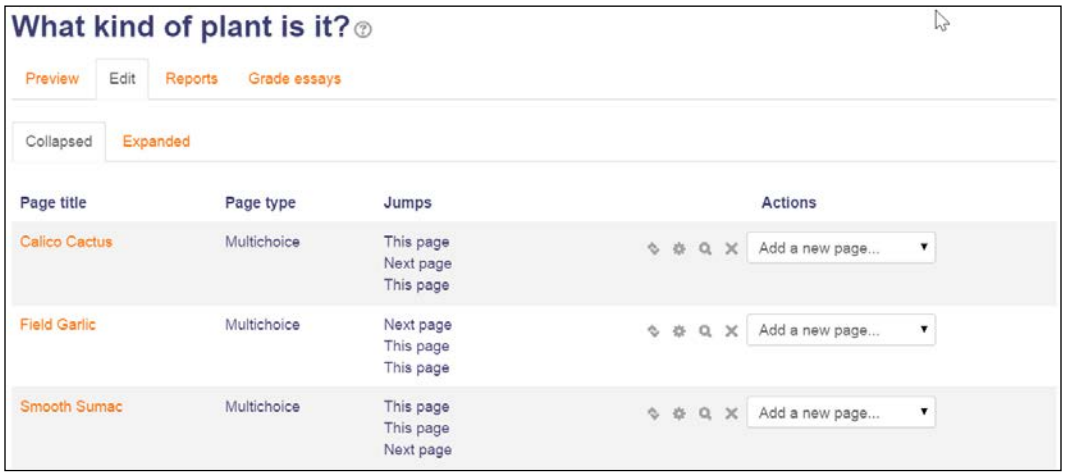
Editing the lesson

After you've created several lesson pages, you might want to see and edit the flow of the lesson. You can do this under the **Edit** tab.

Collapsed and expanded

The **Edit** tab is where you edit the content of your lesson. From here, you add, delete, rearrange, and edit individual lesson pages.

Under the **Edit** tab, when you select **Collapsed**, you see a list of the pages in your lesson, such as the one shown in the following screenshot:



The pages display in their logical order, which would be the shortest path through the lesson if a student got all of the questions correct. Notice that the content of the pages does not display. The purpose of this screen is not to edit individual questions, but to help you see the flow of the lesson.

www.it-ebooks.info

Rearranging pages

To rearrange the pages, click the up/down arrow for the page that you want to move. Note that, it is the jumps that determine the order in which Moodle presents the pages. If a question is set to jump to the next page, rearranging the pages can change the jumps. A question can also be set to jump to a specific, named page. In that case, the order in which the pages appear doesn't determine the landing point for the jump, so rearranging the pages here won't affect that jump.

Editing pages

From the **Edit** tab, to edit a page, click the edit icon, which usually looks like this: . Clicking this takes you to the editing page for that page. The previous section gave detailed instructions for editing a lesson page.

Adding pages

The **Add a page here** drop-down list enables you to insert a new page into the lesson. You can choose from several different kinds of pages.

Feedback

The feedback module enables you to create surveys for your students. Do not confuse this with the survey activity. In survey, you must choose from several pre-made surveys; you cannot build your own surveys. Also, do not confuse this with the questionnaire module. A questionnaire is an add-on, while feedback comes as standard with Moodle.

The feedback module needs to be enabled by the site administrator under **Site Administration** | **Plugins** | **Activity modules** | **Manage activities**.

Feedback isn't just for students

Of course, you can use a Feedback activity to survey your students. You can also use it to:

- Conduct a survey of the employees in your work place
- Collect data from people who have agreed to be research subjects
- Conduct public opinion surveys of the visitors to your site

The feedback activity enables you to create different kinds of questions: multiple choice, dropdown, short answer, and more. You can share the results of a feedback with the students or keep it confidential.

www.it-ebooks.info

Creating a feedback activity

Creating a feedback activity is similar to adding a quiz. First, you add the activity. Then, you add the questions. We'll cover each in a separate section below.

To add a feedback activity, do the following:

1. From the **Add an activity…** menu, select **Feedback**.
2. Moodle displays the settings page for the activity.
3. In the **Name**, enter the name of the feedback. Your students will see this on the course home page.
4. Text and graphics that are entered into the **Description** field are displayed to students before they begin the activity. Use this to explain the activity. Remember, this is a full-featured HTML editor, so you can put text, graphics, and media into the description.
5. Under **Availability**, you can enter a time to open and close the activity. If you don't enter a time to open the activity, it is available immediately. If you don't enter a time to close the activity, it will remain open indefinitely.
6. The option to **Record User Names** affects only what the teacher sees. Students do not see each others' responses. If **RecordUserNames** is set to **Users' Names Will Be Logged and Shown With Answers**, then the teacher will be able to see a list of users who completed the feedback and their answers.
7. The setting for **Allow multiple submissions** affects the activity, only if you have allowed anonymous responses. If so, then any user can submit the feedback survey as many times as they want.
8. If **Enable notification of submissions** is set to **Yes**, then course administrators are emailed whenever someone submits this feedback. This includes teachers and course managers.
9. If you want Moodle to number the questions in your feedback activity, for **Autonumber questions** select **Yes**.
10. If **Show analysis page after submit** is set to **Yes**, a summary of the results so far is shown to the user after they submit their feedback.

Get this setting right the first time

Moodle doesn't allow you to change the **Multiple submissions** setting after someone has answered the feedback activity, without losing the previous responses. So get this setting right before people start answering. If you do need to change this setting, you must first **Reset feedback responses** under the **Course administration** menu.

www.it-ebooks.info

11. If you enter a **Link to next activity**, that page is displayed immediately after the user submits his/her answers. You can use this page to explain what happens after the activity. If you leave this blank, Moodle displays a simple message telling the user that his/her answers have been saved. At the bottom of this page, Moodle displays a **Continue** button.

Careful with the URL for link to next activity

You might be tempted to use the URL to send the user to another page in your site. Remember, if you move this activity to another course, or another Moodle site, that URL might change.

12. Common module settings and restrict availability work as they do for other activities. These are covered in a separate section of the book.
13. Click the **Save and display** button to save the settings. It is time to start adding questions.

To add questions to a feedback activity:

1. Select the feedback activity.
2. From the left menu, select **Settings** | **Feedback administration** | **Questions** | **Edit questions**. If you just created and saved the activity, click the **Edit questions** tab.
3. From the drop-down list that is labeled **Content**, select the type of question to add.

Specific types of questions are described in the next section. The rest of this procedure covers settings that are common to almost all question types. For settings that are specific to a question type, see the next section.

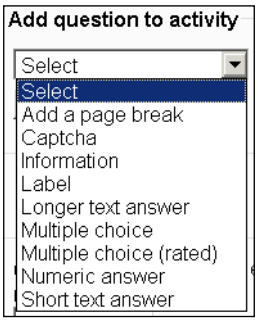
4. If you mark a question as **Required**, the user must answer it to submit the feedback. The question will have a red asterisk next to it.
5. The **Question** field contains the text of the question. Unlike a quiz question, a feedback question can only consist of text.
6. The **Label** field contains a label that only teachers will see, when viewing the results of the feedback. The most important reason for the **Label** field is when you plan to export the results of the feedback to an Excel worksheet. The label is exported with the results. This enables you to match the feedback results with a short label in your database.

www.it-ebooks.info

7. The **Position** field determines the order of the question, when you first add it to the feedback page. After the question has been added, you can override this number and move the question to any position on the page.
8. **Depend item** and **Depend value** can be used to make the appearance of a question dependent on the answer to a previous question. For example, you might first ask someone, "Do you have a Twitter account?" If they answer **Yes**, you might display a question like, "How often do you tweet?" If they answer **No**, you would hide that question. From the **Dependence item** drop-down list, select the question whose answer will determine if this question appears. Then, in the **Dependence value** field, enter the answer that is needed to make this question appear.
9. For a discussion of the fields that apply only to one type of question, see the following section on *Question types*.
10. Save the question.

Question types

The feedback activity enables you to add several types of questions. Some of these are not actually questions, but you still add them from the same drop-down menu:



Adding a page break

Add a page break inserts a page break into the feedback activity.

Avoiding bots with captcha

A captcha is a test to ensure that a human is filling out an online form. It displays a picture of some text, and the user must read and type in that text. If the user doesn't correctly type the text, the feedback form is rejected. This prevents software robots from automatically filling in your feedback and spamming your results.

www.it-ebooks.info

Inserting information

You can use this option to insert information about the feedback into the form. That information is added by Moodle and submitted with the user's answers. At this time, the options are:

- **Response time**: The date and time the user submitted the feedback
- **Course**: The short name of the course in which this feedback appears
- **Course category**: The short name of the category in which this feedback appears

Adding a label

This is the same as adding a label to a course home page. The label can be anything that you can put on a web page. This is a good way to insert explanation, instructions, and encouragement into the activity.

Creating a textbox for longer text answer

Use this question type to create a text box, where the user can type in an answer. You specify how many characters wide and how many lines high the text box is. If the user runs out of space, Moodle adds a scroll bar to the box so that the user can keep on typing.

Displaying multiple choice questions

A multiple choice question displays a list of responses. There are three sub-types of multiple choice questions.

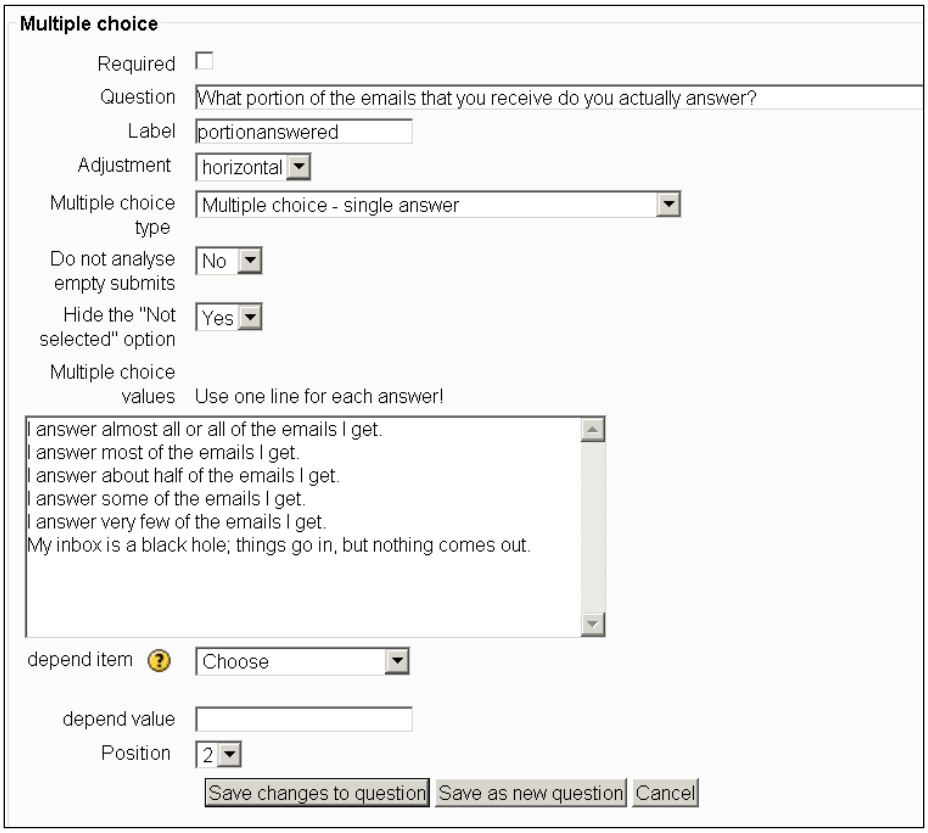
In a **multiple choice – multiple answers** question, Moodle displays a check box next to each response. The user can select as many as he/she wants.

In a **multiple choice – single answer** question, Moodle displays a radio button next to each response. The user must select only one response.

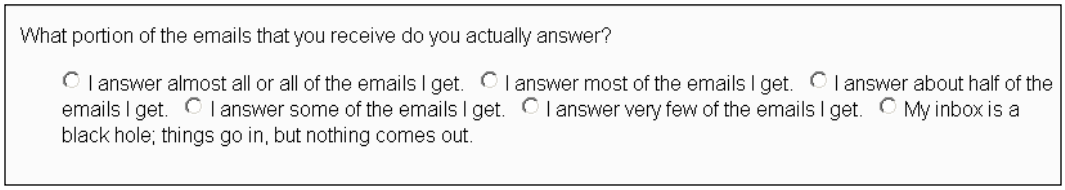
In a **multiple choice – single answer allowed (dropdown list)** question, Moodle displays a dropdown list of the responses. The user must select only one response.

www.it-ebooks.info

You create the responses for a multiple choice question by entering one response on each line in the **Multiple choice values** field. For example, the following settings:



Create this question:



Notice the **Adjustment** setting for this question is set to **horizontal**. That causes the responses to be listed horizontally, across the page, instead of in a vertical list.

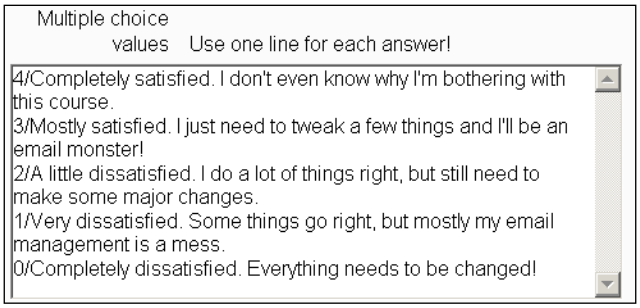
www.it-ebooks.info

Also notice the setting for **Hide "not selected" option**. If that is set to **No**, then Moodle adds a **Not selected** response to the list of responses that you create. When set to **Yes**, Moodle displays only the responses that you create.

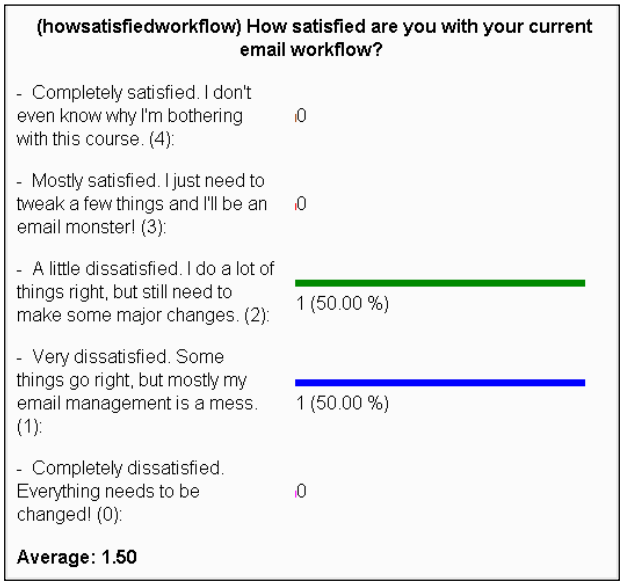
Creating multiple choice questions

To the user, this type of question appears identical to a multiple choice – single answer question. However, when you review the results, you see a number that is associated with each answer. This enables you to calculate averages and perform other calculations with the data that you collect.

In this example, the answers are rated `4` through `0`:



The user doesn't see these numbers when he/she selects an answer. But when the teacher looks at the analysis for this question, the average is displayed:



www.it-ebooks.info

Also, when the results of the feedback are exported to Excel, the rating numbers are exported. This enables you to do advance analysis on your results using a spreadsheet.

The numeric answer

Use this question to ask the user to enter a number. You can specify a range that you will accept.

The short text answer

A short text answer question lets you limit the amount of text that the user enters. You specify the size of the text entry box, and the amount of text that the box will accept.

Viewing feedback

Teachers and administrators can view the responses to a feedback activity. You can view the responses one at a time or a summary of all responses.

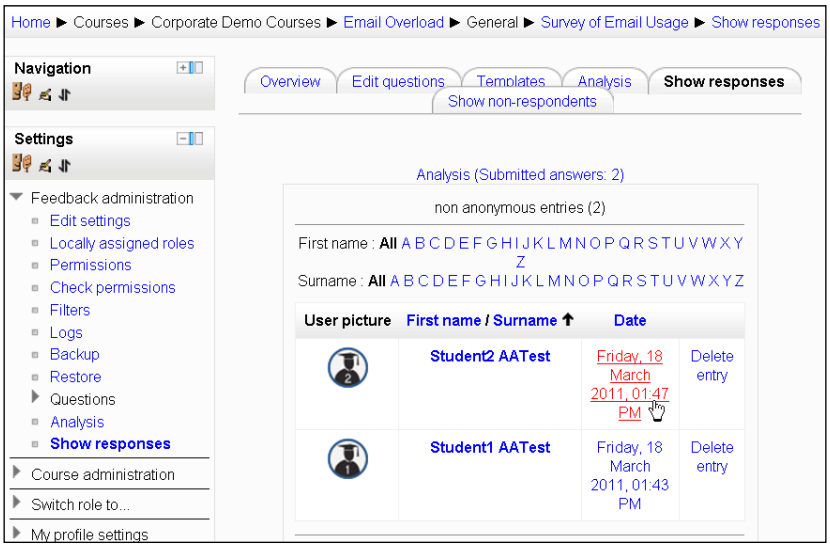
See individual responses

If **Record User Names** is set to **Users' Names Will Be Logged and Shown With Answers**, then the teacher will be able to see a list of users who completed the feedback and their answers. To see this list of responses:

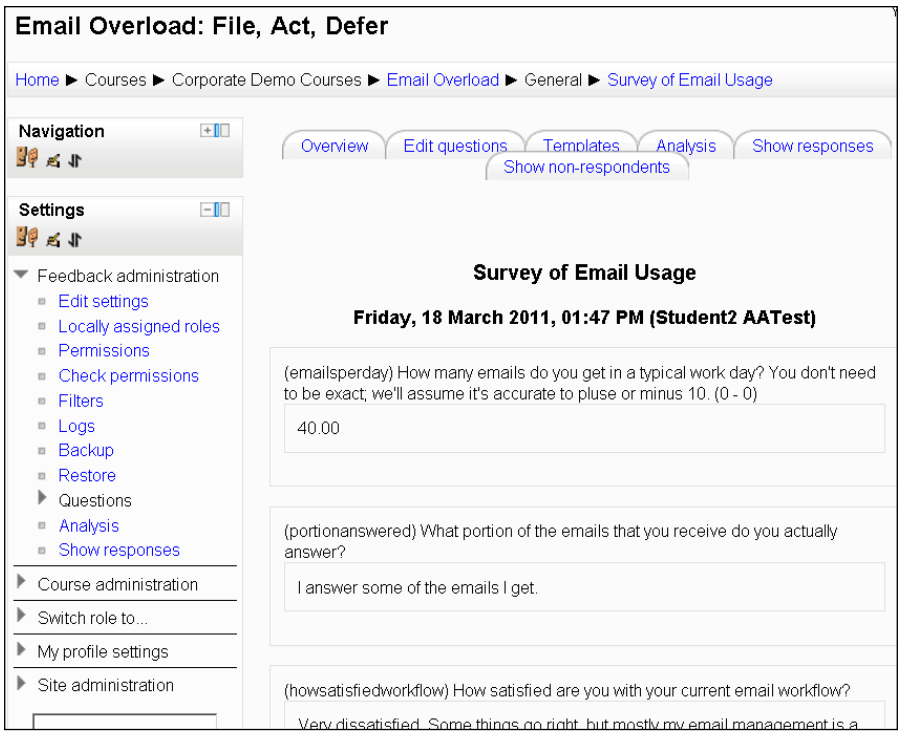
1. Select the feedback activity.
2. From the left menu, select **Settings** | **Feedback administration** | **Show responses**.

www.it-ebooks.info

3. For the student whose responses you want to see, click on the date.



The responses for that session will be displayed:



www.it-ebooks.info

Note that if a student answers the feedback several times, there will be a date for each time that the student answered.

For anonymous responses, instead of a name you will see a number.

Analyzing responses with the analysis tab

Under the analysis tab, you can see a summary of all the responses. On this page, you also have an export to Excel button. That will download all the data to an Excel spreadsheet.

Choices

Moodle's choice is the simplest type of activity. In a choice activity, you create one questions and specify a choice of responses. You can use a choice to:

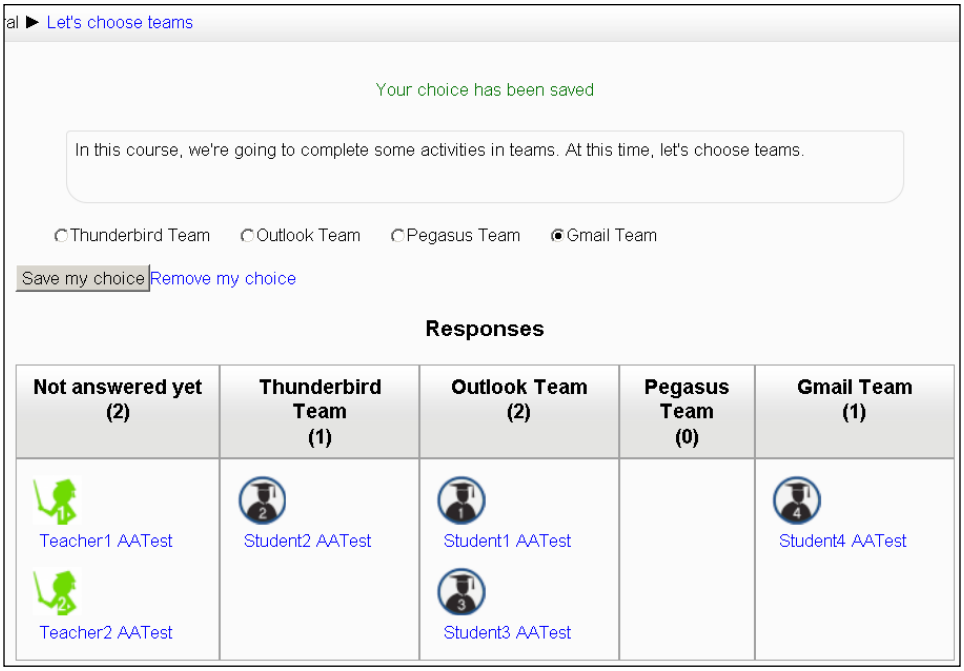
- Take a quick poll
- Ask students to choose sides in a debate
- Confirm the students' understanding of an agreement
- Gather consent
- Allow students to choose a subject for an essay or project

Before we look at how to accomplish this, let us look at the choice activity from the student's point of view, and then explore the settings available to the teacher while creating a choice.

www.it-ebooks.info

The student's point of view

From the student's point of view, a choice activity looks like this:



Notice a few things about this choice activity:

- The student can see how many other students have chosen a response
- There is a limit on the number of students who can choose each response
- The student can remove his/her choice and submit again

These are options that you can set for the activity. The teacher also could have hidden other students' responses, had no limit for the number who can choose each response, and prevented the student from changing his/her response.

The teacher's point of view

Before we discuss some of the uses for a choice activity, let us look at the settings available on the **Editing Choice** page. Then, we'll see how we can make creative use of these capabilities.

www.it-ebooks.info

Limit

The **Limit** next to each choice enables you to limit how many students can select that choice. In the example above, no more than four students can select each choice. So after four students have selected a team, that choice becomes unavailable.

For limits to take effect, **Limit the number of responses allowed** must be set to **Enable**.

Display mode

In the example above, **Display Mode** is set to **Horizontal**. You can also arrange the choices vertically.

Publish results

You can choose whether to reveal the results of the choice to the students, and if so, when.

In the example, at the beginning of this section, **Publish results** was set to **Always show results to students**. That is why the student could see how many students had chosen each response. If it had been set to **Do not publish results to students**, the activity would not have shown how many students had selected each response.

If you are going to limit the number of students who can choose a response, consider using **Always show results to students**. That way, the student can see how many others have chosen the response, and how many slots are left for each response.

Privacy of results

If you publish the results of the choice, you can then choose whether to publish the names of the students who have selected each response. In the example, at the beginning of this section, **Privacy of results** was set to **Publish full result**, so the student could see who had selected each response.

Allowing students to change their minds

The setting **Allow choice to be updated** determines if a student can change his/her answer after submitting it. If this is set to **Yes**, a student can retake the choice activity until the activity is closed.

www.it-ebooks.info

Summary

Moodle's **assignments** and **lessons** enable you to create course material that students interact with. This interaction is more engaging, and usually more effective, than courses consisting of static material that the students view. While you will probably begin creating your course by adding static material, the next step should usually be to ask, "How can I add interactivity to this course?"

Lessons can take the place of many static web pages, since they consist of web pages with a question at the end of each page. A lesson enables you to present information to a student, test the student on the information, and then present either remedial information or continue to the next topic.

Feedback and **Choice** give teachers the opportunity to assess students, their attitudes, and their satisfaction with a course. Feedback is especially useful for assessing the class's attitude and experience at the beginning of the course. You can also use feedback to create surveys for people who are not even taking a course, such as an employee survey or research data.

The **Choice** activity is especially useful for having a structured, ongoing conversation between the students and teacher. You can create several of these, keep them hidden, and reveal them when you want to measure the students' attitude.

In the next chapter, we will see how to evaluate students by using the quiz activity.

www.it-ebooks.info

8
Evaluating Students with Quizzes

Moodle offers a flexible quiz builder. Each question can include any valid HTML code, such as graphics, formatted text, and media. A question can include anything that you can put on a Moodle resource page.

In most instructor-led courses, a quiz or test is a major event. Handing out the quizzes, taking them in the middle of a class, and grading them can take up a lot of the teacher's time. In Moodle, creating, taking, and grading quizzes can be much faster. This means that you can use quizzes liberally throughout your courses. Here are some instances where you can use quizzes:

- You can use a short quiz after each reading assignment to ensure that the students complete the reading. You can shuffle the questions and answers to prevent sharing among the students. You can also make the quiz available only for the week/month in which the students are supposed to complete the reading.
- You can use a quiz as a practice test. You can allow several attempts and/or use the adaptive mode to allow students to attempt a question until they get it right. Then, the quiz functions as both a practice and learning material.
- You can use a quiz as a pretest. You can ask the students to complete a quiz even before they come to the course. The students can complete this pretest at a time and place that is convenient for them. Then, you can compare their scores on the pretest and final test to show that learning has occurred.

www.it-ebooks.info

Question banks

The question bank is Moodle's collection of questions, which can be used within a quiz. In a quiz, you just choose questions from the question bank and display them all together. A quiz can be deleted from a course, but the questions remain in the question bank.

In this chapter, you will see how to create a quiz and add questions to it. While completing this process, keep in mind that when you create a question, you are adding that question to Moodle's question bank.

The questions in the question bank can be categorized and shared. The real asset in your learning site is not the quizzes, but the question bank that you and your fellow teachers build over time.

Configuring quiz settings

When you first create a quiz, you need to go to the **Settings** page. The settings that you select affect only that particular quiz. The settings affect things such as the number of questions displayed on each page of the quiz, whether a student can retry the quiz, whether the quiz has a time limit, and so on. The settings affect the look and behavior of the quiz.

After the settings are chosen, you add questions to the quiz. The questions are the content of the quiz.

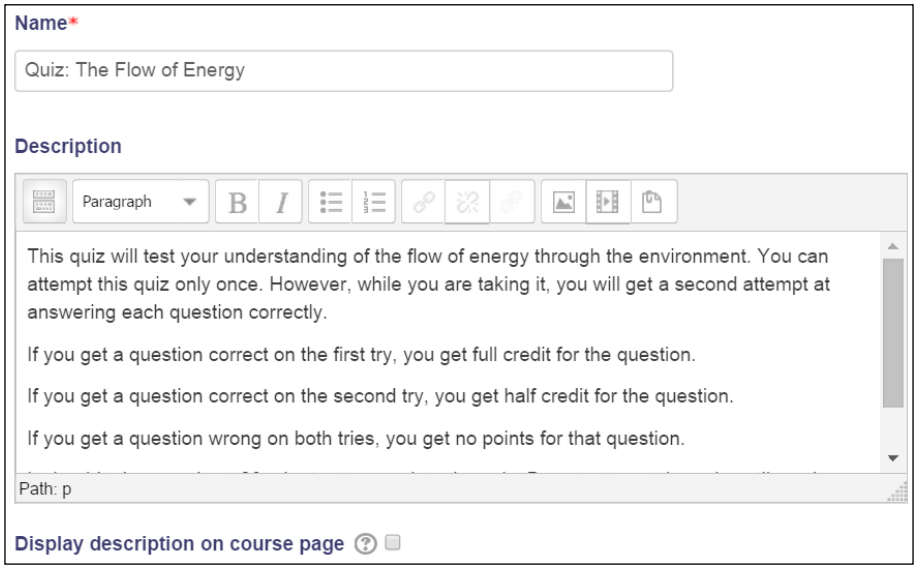
In Moodle, think of a quiz as a combination of the settings (display and behavior), the container (the quiz pages), and the questions (content).

The **Settings** page is divided into nine areas. Let's look at the settings under each area, top to bottom.

www.it-ebooks.info

General

The **General** settings include the name and description for the quiz:



Name of the quiz is displayed on course's home page. **Description** is displayed when a student selects the quiz.

Description should explain why the student is taking the quiz. It should also inform the student of any unusual features of the quiz, for example, if it uses an animation that requires the Flash plugin or if it uses a popup window. Remember that once the student clicks on the **Attempt quiz now** button, they are into the quiz. So, give the student everything they need to understand why and how to take the quiz before clicking on the **Attempt quiz now** button.

Optionally, you can display **Description** on the course's home page. If you do this, it will continue to display when the student selects the quiz.

www.it-ebooks.info

Timing

The **Open** and **Close** dates determine when the quiz is available. If you do not select the **Enable** checkbox for **Open the quiz**, the quiz would be permanently open, instead of becoming available on a given date. If you do not select the **Enable** checkbox for **Close the quiz**, then once the quiz is open, it would stay open permanently, instead of becoming unavailable on a given date.

Note that even if the quiz is closed, it would still show on the course's home page, and students might still try to select it. When they select a closed quiz, the students see a message saying that it is closed.

If you want to hide a quiz, further down on this page, under **Common Module Settings**, you will see the **Visible** setting. Change this setting to **Hide**.

By default, a quiz does not have a time limit. If you want to set a time limit, use the **Time Limit** setting. When time runs out, the quiz is automatically submitted with the answers that have been filled out. A time limit can help prevent the use of reference materials while taking the quiz. For example, if you want students to answer the questions from memory, but all the answers are in the course textbook, setting a timer might discourage students from taking the time to look up the answer to each question.

When students are taking a timed quiz, they see a countdown timer on the quiz page.

If you set a time limit for the quiz, in the quiz's description, inform the students about what happens when the time limit is reached. For example, if you configure the quiz to discard the student's answers if the student has not submitted the quiz in time, inform the student about this.

Grade

If you created categories in the courses' gradebooks, then you can assign this quiz to one of the categories using the **Grade category** setting. If you have not created categories in the gradebook, then the quiz is uncategorized. You can move a quiz into a category at any time.

If you allow several attempts, the **Grading method** option determines which grade is recorded in the course's gradebook: **Highest**, **Average**, **First**, or **Last**. If you do not allow multiple attempts, then **Grading method** would have no effect.

www.it-ebooks.info

Attempts allowed can be used to limit the number of times a student takes the quiz. Further down the page, you can choose settings that require the student to wait between attempts. Only if you enable multiple attempts, the time delay settings will take effect.

Layout

The settings under **Layout** control the order of questions on the quiz and the number of questions that appear on a page.

Question order determines whether the questions appear in the order that you place them while editing or in a random order. The random order will change each time the quiz is displayed. This does not allow students to share quiz answers with each other and encourages them to focus on the wording when they retake a quiz.

New page determines where page breaks will fall. It determines whether you will have a page break after every question, every two questions, and so on.

The **New page** setting determines where Moodle automatically puts the page breaks. While you create the quiz, you can move these page breaks on the page where you edit the questions for the quiz.

By default, all questions in a quiz are displayed on separate pages. **New page** breaks the quiz up into smaller pages. Moodle inserts the page breaks for you. On the **Editing quiz** page, you can move these page breaks. If you want to break up your quiz into pages that each hold the same number of questions, then this setting would work for you. If you want each page in the quiz to hold a different number of questions, then use this setting anyway and edit the page breaks that Moodle creates for you.

The **Navigation method** setting determines whether the student can go back and forth between questions. If this setting is set to **Sequential**, then the student must answer the questions in order. If questions near the end of the test give clues to the answers for questions at the beginning, you might want to change this setting to **Sequential**. This will prevent the student from going back to early questions and using those clues at the end of the test to answer the early questions.

www.it-ebooks.info

The question behavior

The **Shuffle within questions** setting enables you to present the parts of a question in a random order. This only works if three conditions are true. First, this setting must be set to **Yes**. Second, the question must have several parts, such as a multiple choice or matching question. This setting has no effect on a fill-in-the-blank question. Third, each question also has a shuffle setting of its own. For any question, the shuffle setting must also be set to **Yes**.

For questions that have an option like **All of the above** or **Answers A and B**, you would probably want to set this setting to **No**.

The settings for **How questions behave** determines how the quiz will present the questions to the student. Here is what each setting means.

Adaptive mode

The **Adaptive mode** setting allows multiple attempts *for each question*. This is different from **Attempts allowed**, which allows multiple attempts at *the whole quiz*.

In an adaptive quiz, when a student answers a question incorrectly, the quiz redisplays that question and gives the student another chance to answer it correctly. How many attempts the student gets is determined by how much you penalize the student for each wrong attempt.

For example, let's assume that you penalize the student 50 percent for a wrong answer. If the student gets a question wrong, then they can try once more for half points. If the student gets the second attempt correct, they get half credit. If they get it wrong, the system subtracts another 50 percent from the score. Now, the question is worth zero points. The system will not redisplay the question for a third attempt, because it's now worth zero points.

If you penalize the student 33.33 percent for a wrong answer, the student will get three attempts to answer the question. The first attempt is worth 100 percent, the second is worth 66.66 percent, and the third is worth 33.33 percent. There will be no fourth attempt, because after the third wrong answer, the question is worth zero points.

The **Adaptive mode (no penalties)** setting also gives the student multiple attempts at answering a question. However, the student gets an unlimited number of tries, because there are no penalties for wrong answers.

www.it-ebooks.info

Interactive with multiple tries

When you make a quiz interactive with multiple tries, you allow the student to try each question multiple times. After each wrong attempt, Moodle will display a message. You create these messages for each question.

This differs from **Adaptive mode**, where the student gets multiple attempts but no feedback.

Immediate feedback

When you select **Immediate feedback**, the student submits each question as they answer it. The quiz immediately displays a message based on the student's answer. You can create separate feedback messages for each answer, for any wrong answer, for any right answer, and for the question, regardless of the answer.

At this point, let's look at a comparison between the options we discussed:

	Adaptive mode	Adaptive mode (no penalties)	Interactive with multiple tries	Immediate feedback
Multiple attempts at the same question?	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Feedback after each attempt?	No	No	Yes	Yes
Reduced score for wrong answers?	Yes	No	Yes	Yes

Deferred feedback

If a quiz uses **Deferred feedback**, the student submits the entire quiz after answering all the questions. Then, the quiz displays the student's score and any feedback that you have created for the questions.

Each attempt builds on the last

Each attempt builds on the last only has an effect if multiple attempts are allowed. When this setting is enabled, each attempt that a student makes will display the results of the student's previous attempt. The student can see how they answered and scored on the previous attempt.

www.it-ebooks.info

The setting for **Each attempt builds on the last** is especially useful when you are using a quiz as a teaching tool, instead of an evaluation tool. **Attempts allowed** allows the student to keep trying the quiz. **Each attempt builds on the last** retains the answers from one attempt to another. Taken together, these two settings can be used to create a quiz that the student can keep trying until they get it right. This transforms the quiz from a test into a learning tool.

Review options

Review options determine what information a student can see when they review a quiz. These options also determine when they can see this information.

The information that the student can see is as follows:

Setting	Type of information displayed to the student
Responses	These are the answers that the student had to choose from for a question.
Answers	These are the answers that the student chose.
Feedback	Each response for a question can have its own feedback. This setting refers to the feedback for each response that the student selected (that is, the feedback for each of the student's answers).
General feedback	Each question can have its own feedback. This feedback is displayed regardless of how the student answered the question. This setting displays a general feedback for each question.
Scores	These are the student's scores, or points earned, for each question.
Overall feedback	Overall feedback is given for the student's score on the quiz.

When the information is revealed, the settings have the following meanings:

Time Period	Meaning
During the attempt	With this setting, the information appears while the student is attempting the quiz. This setting has meaning only if immediate feedback is enabled.
Immediately after the attempt	With this setting, the information appears, within 2 minutes of finishing the quiz.
Later, while the quiz is still open	With this setting, the information appears 2 minutes after the quiz is finished.
After the quiz is closed	With this setting, the information appears after the date and time set in **Close the quiz** has passed. If you never close the quiz, this setting has no effect.

www.it-ebooks.info

Appearance

The settings under **Display** affect information that is displayed while the student is taking the quiz.

If **Show the user's picture** is set to **Yes**, then while the student is taking the quiz, the student's picture and name will be displayed in the quiz window. This makes it easier for an exam proctor to confirm that the students have logged in themselves. The proctor can just look over the student's shoulder and see the student's picture and name on screen.

The settings for **Decimal places in grades** and **Decimal places in question grades** affect the display of grades that are shown to the student. The first setting affects the display of the overall grade for the quiz. The second setting affects the display of the grade for each individual question.

No matter how many decimal places you display, Moodle's database calculates the grades with full accuracy. When you create a course, you can add blocks to the left and right side bars. The setting for **Show blocks during quiz attempts** determines whether these blocks are displayed while the student is taking the quiz. Normally, this is set to **No** so that the student is not distracted while taking the quiz.

Extra restrictions on attempts

If you enter anything into **Require password** field, the student must enter that password to access the quiz.

With **Require network address**, you can restrict access to the quiz to particular IP address/addresses. For example, you can restrict the quiz's access to the following IP addresses:

- `146.203.59.235` is a single IP address. It would permit a single computer to access the quiz. If this computer is acting as a proxy server, the other computers *behind* it can also access the quiz.
- `146.203` is a range of IP addresses. It would permit any IP address starting with those numbers. If those numbers belong to your company, then you effectively limit access to the quiz to your company's campus.
- `146.203.59.235/20` is a subnet. It would permit the computers on that subnet to access the quiz.

www.it-ebooks.info

The **Enforced delay** settings prevent students from attempting the quiz without waiting between attempts. If you show the students the correct answers after they submit the quiz, you might want to set a delay between attempts. This prevents students from attempting the quiz, seeing the correct answers, and then immediately trying the quiz again while those answers are fresh in their memory.

If **Browser security** is set to **Full-screen popup…**, it launches the quiz in a new browser window. It uses JavaScript to disable copying, saving, and printing. This security is not foolproof.

Techniques for greater security

You should understand that the only way to make a test secure is to give the test on paper, separate the students far enough apart so that they can't see each other's papers, place a proctor in the room to observe the students, and use different questions for each group that takes the test. There is no way to make a web-based test completely cheat proof. If you absolutely must give a web-based test that is resistant to cheating, consider these strategies:

- Create a very large number of questions, but have the quiz show only a small set of them. This makes sharing of questions less useful.
- Shuffle the questions and answers. This also makes sharing of questions more difficult.
- Apply a time limit. This makes using reference material more difficult.
- Open the quiz for only a few hours. Have your students schedule the time to take the quiz. Make yourself available during this time to help with technical issues.
- Place one question on each page of the quiz. This discourages students from taking screenshots of the entire quiz.

The overall feedback

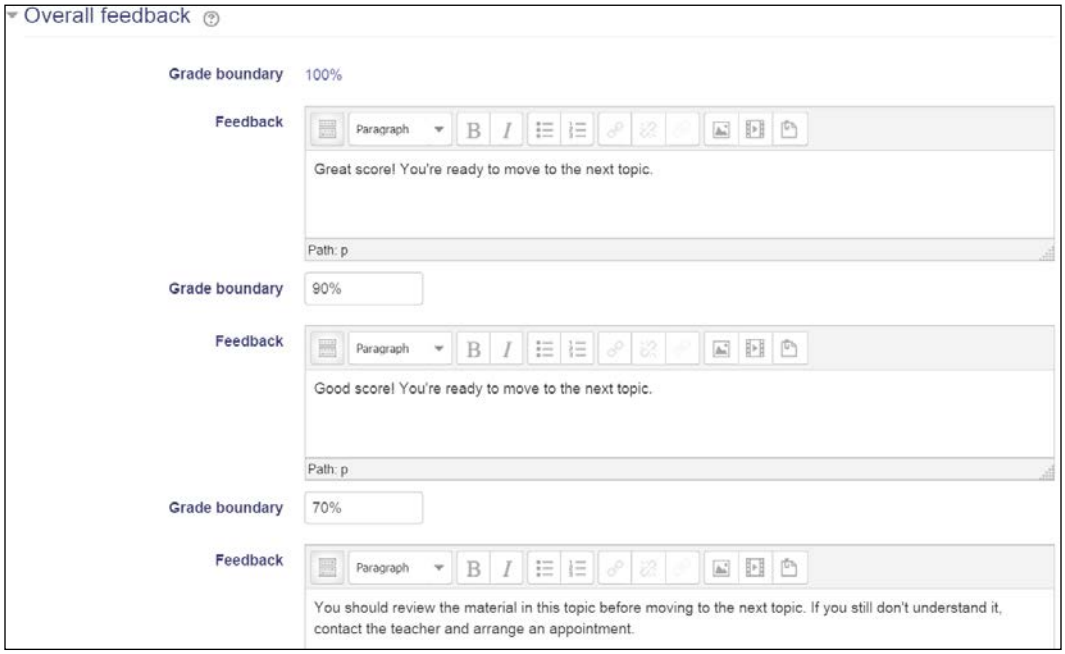
Moodle enables you to create several different kinds of feedback for a quiz:

- You can create feedback for the entire quiz, which changes with the student's score. This is called **Overall feedback** and uses a feature called **Grade boundary**.
- You can create feedback for a question, no matter what the student's score on that question is. All students receive the same feedback. This is called **General feedback**. Each individual question can have its own **General feedback**. The exact type of feedback that you can create for a question varies with the type of question.

www.it-ebooks.info

- You can create feedback for a response. This is the feedback that the student receives when they select that response to a question.

The following screenshot shows **Overall feedback** with Grade Boundaries. Students who score 90–100 percent on the quiz receive the first feedback, "You're a wizard..." Students who score 80–89.99 percent receive the second feedback, "Very good!...":



Common module settings

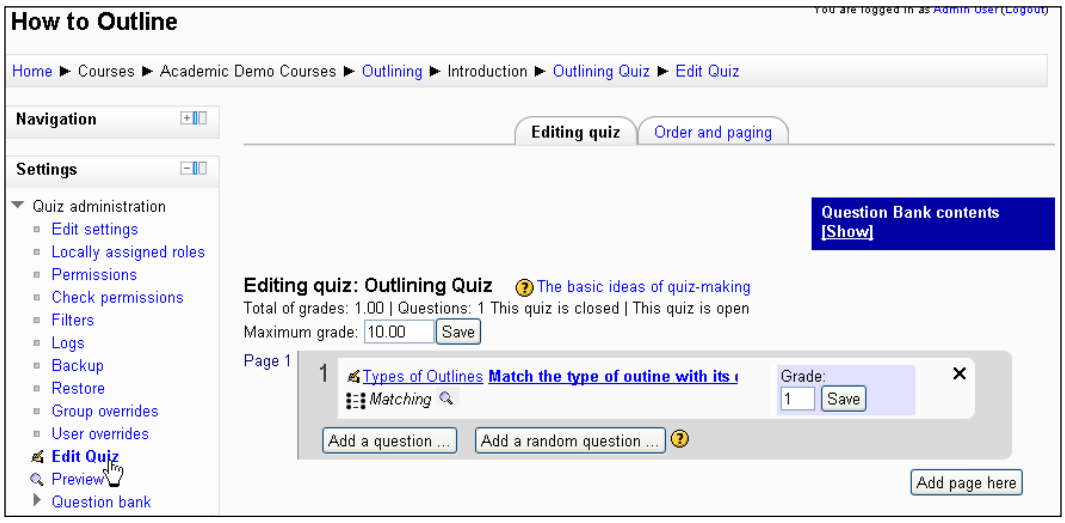
Group mode works in the same way as it does for any other resource. However, since students take the quiz themselves, the only real use for the group setting in a quiz is to display the high score for a group in the **Quiz Results** block.

Visible shows and hides the quiz from students. However, a teacher or course creator can still see the quiz.

www.it-ebooks.info

Adding questions to a quiz

After you've selected the quiz from your course home page, you can add questions to the quiz. First, go to **Administration** | **Quiz Administration** | **Edit Quiz**. On the **Editing quiz** page, you can see the **Add a question...** button:



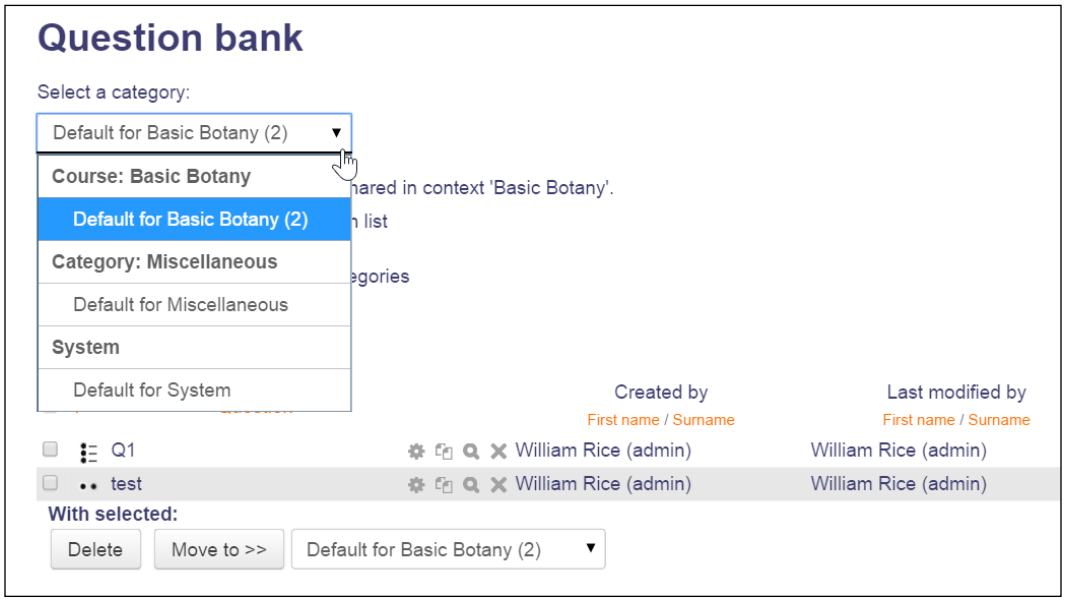
Before we look at the detailed instructions to create new questions, look at the **Question Bank contents** button. Also, on the **Quiz administration** menu, you can see the options for **Question bank**. These options enable you to work with the question bank.

Adding questions to the question bank

The question bank is a collection of quiz questions for your Moodle site. You will have access to different questions in the bank, depending on your location in your site.

www.it-ebooks.info

In the following screenshot, the user is in the **Outlining** course. The user selected the question bank and is now selecting the group of questions to work with:



Notice that the user can select questions that are stored for just this course (**Course: Basic Botany**), the category in which the course resides (**Category: Miscellaneous**), or the entire site (**System**). If the user switched to another course, the questions for this quiz and course would be unavailable. However, questions for the new course would be available. Questions for the system are always available.

Sharing questions

If you want the questions that you create for this quiz to be available to other users of the site, then create the questions under **Question bank** and move them to the **Category** level or the **System** level. Note that your role determines your access to a question category.

As shown in the *Add questions to a quiz* section, you can create questions and add them directly to a quiz. As shown in the *Adding questions to the question bank* section, you can also create questions in the question bank and add them to the quiz later. If you're in a hurry to create questions for a quiz, select **Edit Quiz** and start creating them. You can rearrange them in the question bank later.

You can display questions from one category at a time. To select that category, use the **Category** drop-down list.

www.it-ebooks.info

If a question is deleted when it is still being used by a quiz, then it is not removed from the question bank. Instead, the question is hidden. The **Also show old questions** setting enables you to see questions that were deleted from the category. These deleted (or hidden, or old) questions appear in the list with blue boxes next to them.

To keep your question bank clean and to prevent teachers from using deleted questions, you can move all the deleted questions into a category called `Deleted questions`. Create the category `Deleted questions` and then use **Also show old questions** to show the deleted questions. Select these questions and move them into `Deleted questions`.

Moving questions between categories

Every question in the question bank belongs to a category. If a question belongs to a category for the course, then only teachers with access to that course can see and reuse the question. If a question belongs to a category for the system, then the question can be seen and reused by all teachers in the system. To let your questions be used by other teachers, you might want to move them to a category that is accessible by other teachers.

Select the question(s) to move, select the category, and then click on the **Move to** button.

Managing the proliferation of questions and categories

As the site administrator, you might want to monitor the creation of new question categories to ensure that they are logically named, don't have a lot of overlap, and are appropriate for the purpose of your site. As these question categories and the questions in them are shared among course creators, they can be a powerful tool for collaboration.

Creating and editing question categories

Every question belongs to a category. You manage question categories under the **Categories** tab. There will always be a **Default** category. However, before you create new questions, you might want to check to ensure that you have an appropriate category put them in.

To add a new category, perform the following steps:

1. To add a new question category, go to **Course administration** | **Question bank** | **Categories**.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the page to the **Add category** section.

www.it-ebooks.info

3. Select **Parent** for the category. If you select **Top**, the category would be a top-level category. Alternatively, you can select any other category to which you have access. Then, the new category will be a child of the selected category.
4. In the **Name** field, enter the name for the new category.
5. In the **Category Info** field, enter a description of the new category.
6. Click on the **Add category** button.

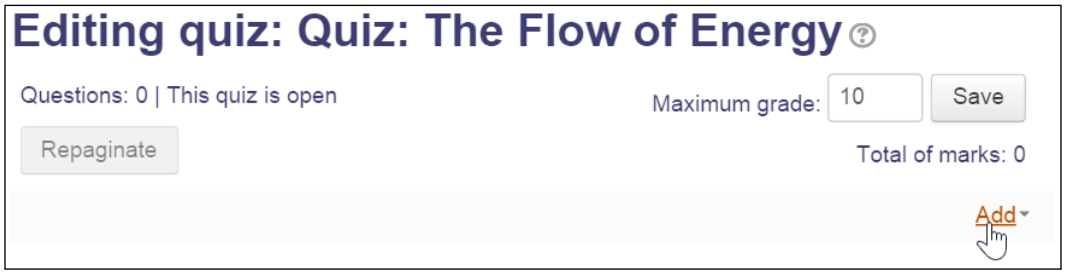
To edit a category, perform the following steps:

1. Go to **Quiz administration** | **Question bank** | **Categories**.
2. Next to the category, click on the icon. The **Edit categories** page displays.
3. You can edit the **Parent**, **Category** name, and **Category Info** settings.
4. When you are finished, click on the **Update** button. Your changes are saved, and you are returned to the **Edit categories** page.

Creating a question

To create a quiz question, follow these steps:

1. First, go to **Quiz administration** | **Edit Quiz**. Then, click on the **Add** link:



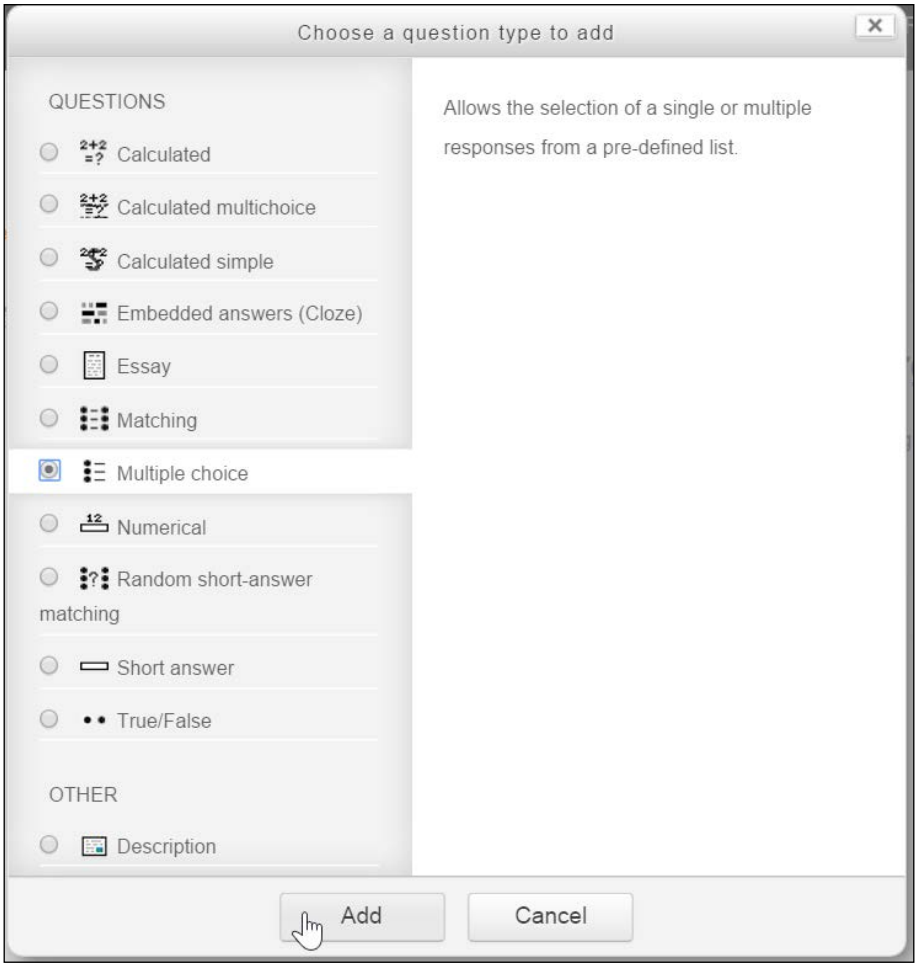
2. A popup window will be displayed. Select **a new question**:

www.it-ebooks.info

This will be a two-step process. First, you will create a question. Then, you will add it to your quiz.

To create a question, perform the following steps:

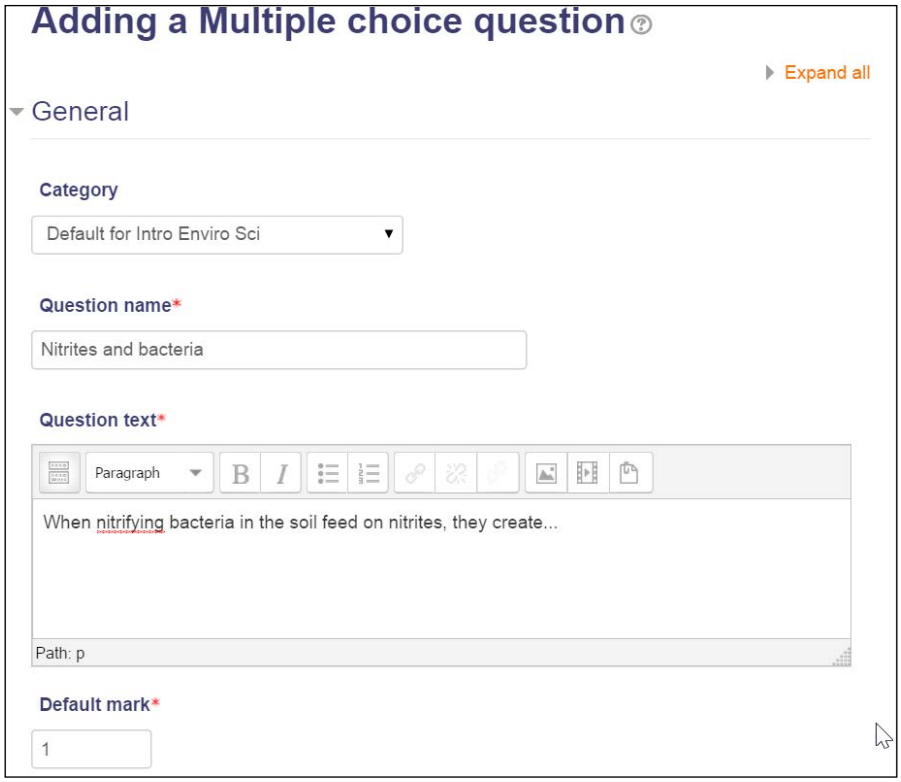
1. From the popup window, select the type of question that you want to create:



For an explanation of the different types of questions, refer to the *Question types* section.

www.it-ebooks.info

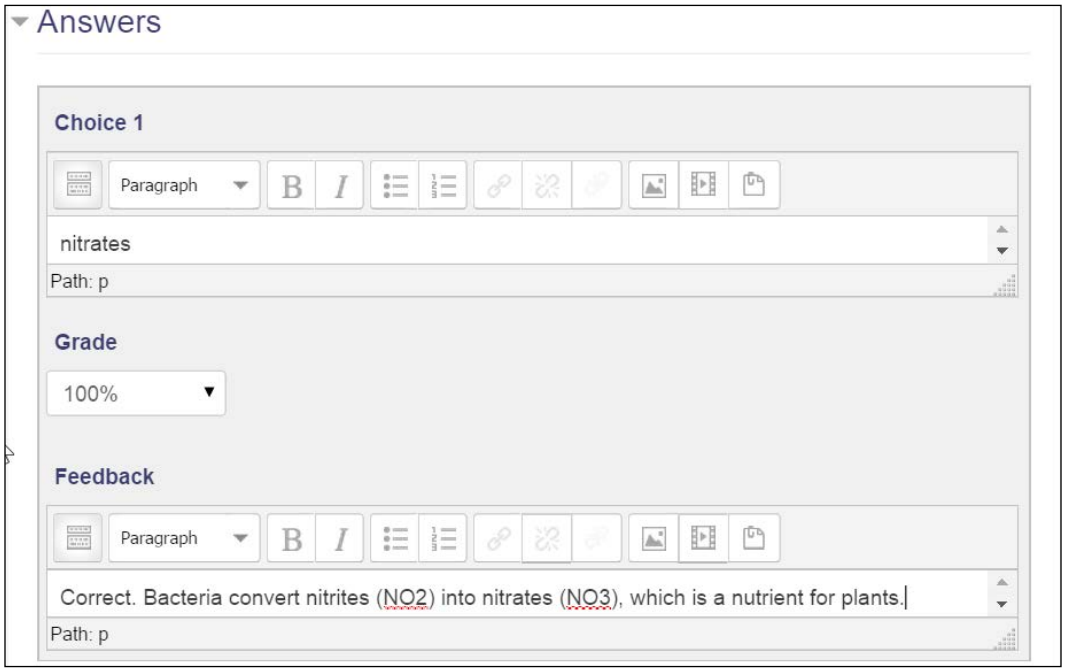
2. Click on the **Add** button. This will bring you to the editing page for that question. The editing page will be different for each type of question, but some features will be the same for all types of questions. This is shown in the following screenshot:



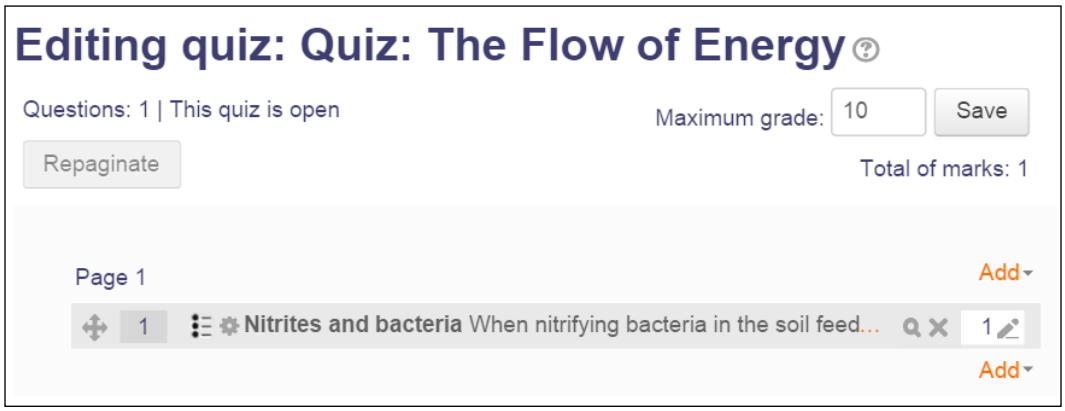
3. The question name is what the teacher will see when building and reviewing the quiz. Students don't see this field. Make the name meaningful to the teacher. For example, *Leaf Question 1* would not be a very descriptive name, but *Principles of Bio-Chap8-Pg3* would tell you the source of the question. If you forget what a question says, you can always click on the button next to the question to preview it.
4. **Question text** is the actual question that the students will see.
5. **General feedback** (not shown in the preceding screenshot to save space) is the feedback that students will see for this question, no matter what answer they gave. For more information on question feedback, refer to the *Adding feedback to a question* section.

www.it-ebooks.info

6. Enter the choices (answers) for the question. You can enter feedback for each choice:



7. After you save the question, it is added to the list of questions in that category. It is also automatically added to the quiz, as shown in the following screenshot:



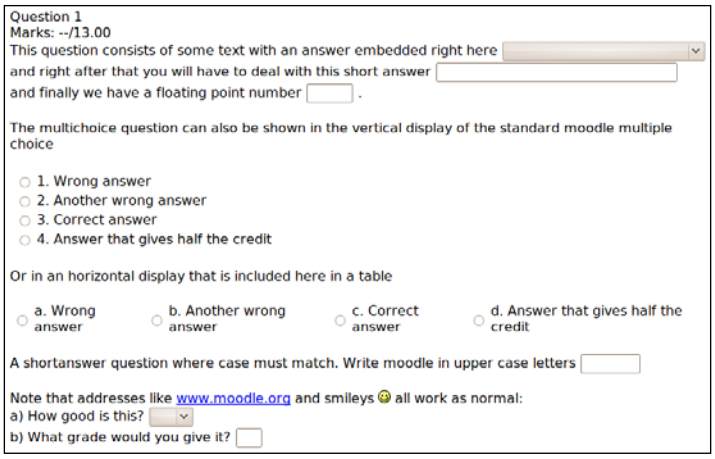
www.it-ebooks.info

Question types

The following chart explains the types of questions you can create and gives some tips on using them. These question types are included in the default installation of Moodle. You can obtain plugins from `https://moodle.org`. These plugins add more question types to your system.

Type of question	Description and tips for using them
Calculated simple	When you create a calculated question, you enter a formula that gets displayed in the text of the question. The formula can contain one or more wildcards. These wildcards are replaced with numbers when the quiz is run. Wildcards are enclosed in curly brackets. For example, if you type the question **What is 3 * {a}?**, Moodle will replace **{a}** with a random number. You can also enter wildcards into the answer field so that the correct answer is **3 * {a}**. When the quiz is run, the question will display **What is 3 * {a}?**, and the correct answer will be the calculated value of **3 * {a}**.
Calculated multichoice	Like the calculated simple question, this question consists of an equation that gets populated with a value(s) when the question is delivered. Then, the question displays several choices for the student, like a multiple-choice question.
Description	This is not a question. It displays whatever web content you enter. When you add a description question, Moodle gives you the same editing screen that you get when you create a web page. Recall that under the **Quiz** tab, you can set page breaks in a quiz. If you want to break your quiz into sections and fully explain each section before the student completes it, consider adding a description on the first page of the section. For example, the description could say, "The following three questions are based on this chart" and show the chart just once.
Essay	When the student is given an essay question, they use Moodle's online rich-text editor to answer the question. Also, you might want to instruct your students to save their essay every few minutes.
Matching	After you create a matching question, you create a list of subquestions and enter the correct answer for each subquestion. The student must match the correct answer with each subquestion. Each subquestion receives equal weight for scoring the question.

www.it-ebooks.info

Type of question	Description and tips for using them
Embedded answers (Cloze)	An embedded answers question consists of a passage of text, with answers inserted into the text. Multiple-choice, fill-in-the-blank, and numeric answers can be inserted into the question. Moodle's help file gives the following example:  Question 1 Marks: --/13.00 This question consists of some text with an answer embedded right here and right after that you will have to deal with this short answer and finally we have a floating point number . The multichoice question can also be shown in the vertical display of the standard moodle multiple choice 1. Wrong answer 2. Another wrong answer 3. Correct answer 4. Answer that gives half the credit Or in an horizontal display that is included here in a table a. Wrong answer b. Another wrong answer c. Correct answer d. Answer that gives half the credit A shortanswer question where case must match. Write moodle in upper case letters Note that addresses like www.moodle.org and smileys all work as normal: a) How good is this? b) What grade would you give it? Notice that the question presents a drop-down list first, which is essentially a multiple-choice question. Then, it presents a short answer (fill in the blank) question, followed by a numeric question. Finally, there's another multiple-choice question (the **Yes**/**No** dropdown) and another numeric question. There is no graphical interface to create embedded answers questions. You need to use a special format that is explained in the help files at `https://docs.moodle.org/29/en/Embedded_Answers_%28Cloze%29_question_type`.

www.it-ebooks.info

Type of question	Description and tips for using them
Multiple choice	Multiple-choice questions can allow a student to select a single answer or multiple answers. Each answer can be a percentage of the question's total point value. When you allow a student to select only a single answer, you usually assign a positive score to the correct answer and zero or negative points to all the other incorrect answers. When you allow the student to select multiple answers, you usually assign partial positive points to each correct answer. That's because you want all the correct answers to have a total of 100 percent. You also usually assign negative points to each incorrect answer. If you don't bring down the question's score for each wrong answer, then the student can score 100 percent on the question just by selecting all the answers. The negative points should be equal to or greater than the positive points so that if a student just selects all the answers, they won't get a positive score for the question. Don't worry about the student getting a negative score for the question, because Moodle doesn't allow this to happen. On the **Editing Quiz** page, if you have chosen to shuffle answers, check all the multiple choice questions that you use in the quiz. If any of them have answers such as **All of the above** or **Both A and C**, then shuffling answers will ruin these questions. Instead, change them to multiple-answer questions, and give partial credit for each correct answer. For example, instead of **Both A and C**, you would say **Select all that apply** and then give partial credit for A and for C.
Short answer	The student types a word or phrase into the answer field. This is checked against the correct answer or answers. There may be several correct answers with different grades. Your answers can use the asterisk as a wildcard. Also, they can be case sensitive. Moreover, accents are counted as characters. So, resume and resumé are two separate answers.
Numerical	Just as in a short-answer question, the student enters an answer into the answer field. However, the answer to a numerical question can have an acceptable error, which you set when creating the question. For example, you can designate that the correct answer is 5, plus or minus 1. Then, any number from 4 to 6 will be marked correct.
True/False	The student selects from two options: **True** or **False**.

www.it-ebooks.info

Adding feedback to a question

Moodle enables you to create several different kinds of feedback for a quiz.

You can create feedback for the entire quiz or for a question.

Feedback for the **entire quiz** changes with the student's score. This is called overall feedback and uses a feature called grade boundary.

The exact type of feedback that you can create for a question varies with the type of question. In this section, we'll look at feedback for a multiple-choice question.

Feedback for the entire quiz, or overall feedback, can be accessed by going to **Administration** | **Quiz administration** | **Settings**. Feedback for a question can be accessed under the editing screen for that question.

Types of feedback for a question

In a multiple-choice question, you can create three kinds of feedback, which are described here:

Type of feedback	Explanation and when to use it
General feedback	If you create general feedback for a question, no matter what answer the student chooses, they will receive that feedback. Every student who answers the question gets the general feedback. If you think the student might get the correct answer by guessing, then you could use general feedback to explain the method of arriving at the correct answer. Also, consider using general feedback to explain the importance of the question.
Any correct response	A multiple-choice question can have two or more answers that are 100 percent correct. For example, "From the list of people below, select one person who signed the Declaration of Independence." This list could include several people who signed, and each of them would be 100 percent correct. If the student selects any of those correct answers, they will see the feedback for **Any correct response**. This is useful when you want to teach the student which answers are 100 percent correct and why they are correct.

www.it-ebooks.info

Type of feedback	Explanation and when to use it
For any partially correct response	You can create a multiple-choice question that requires the student to select several choices to get full credit. For example, "From the list of people below, select the two people who signed the Declaration of Independence." In this case, you could give each response a value of 50 percent. The student needs to choose both responses to receive the full point value for the question. If the student selects one of the correct choices, they will see the feedback for **Any partially correct response**. This is useful when you want to teach the student the relationship between the correct responses.
For any incorrect response	Any response with a percentage value of zero or less is considered an incorrect response. If a student selects any incorrect response, they will see the feedback for **Any incorrect response**. This is useful when all incorrect responses have something in common and you want to give the feedback about this commonality.

Remember that these types of feedback are not activated because the student chose a specific response. They are activated because the student chose any correct, partially correct, or incorrect response.

We will discuss the process of creating feedback for individual responses in the *Feedback for individual responses* section.

Feedback for individual responses

You can create feedback for any individual response to a question. A response is an answer that the student chooses or types. Each response can display its own feedback.

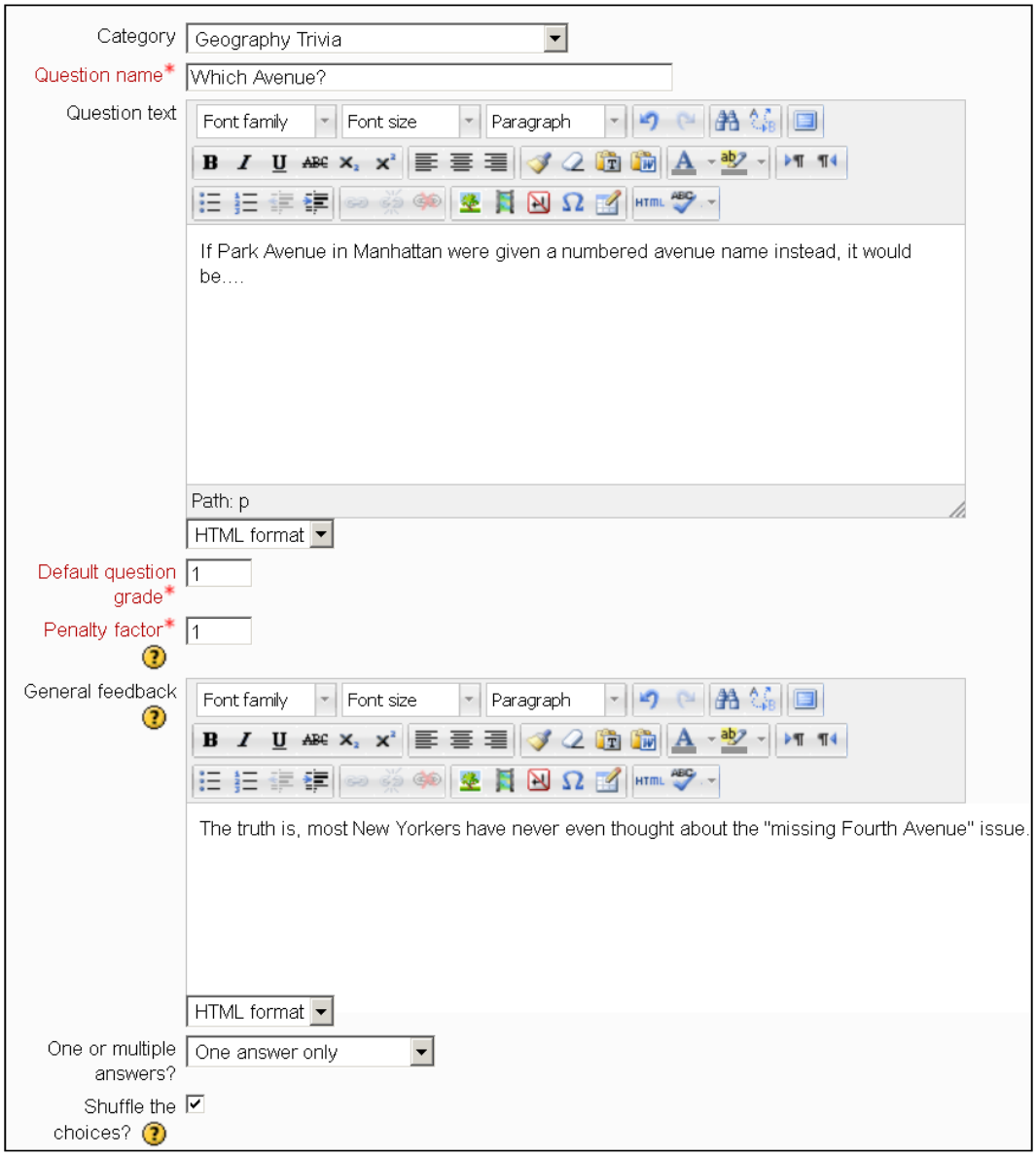
In the following example, notice how each response has its own feedback. In this example, if a student selects an incorrect response, they would see feedback for that specific response and also the feedback for the other incorrect response.

The following screenshot shows a multiple-choice question that uses several kinds of feedback. You're seeing this question from the course creator's point of view, not the student's. First, you can see general feedback, `The truth is, most New Yorkers have never even thought about the missing Fourth Avenue issue.` After the question is scored, every student sees this feedback, no matter what the student's score is.

Below that, you can see that **Choice 1** through **Choice 4** contain feedback for each response. This feedback is customized to the response. For example, if a student selects **Sixth Avenue** the feedback is `Nope, that name is taken. Sixth is also known as the "Avenue of the Americas."`

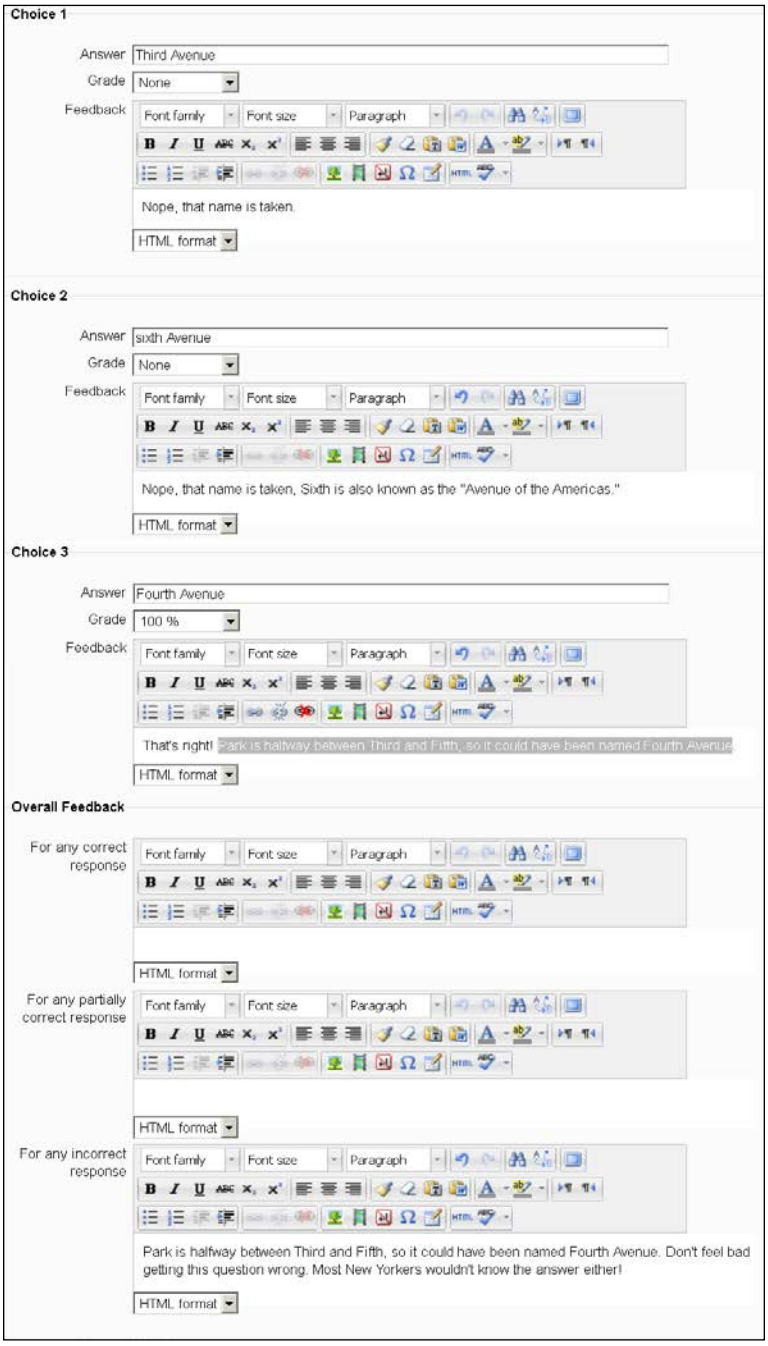
www.it-ebooks.info

For this question, we don't need any feedback such as **Any correct answer** or **Partially correct answer**. These options are useful when you have multiple responses that are correct or responses that are partially correct. In this case, only one response is correct, and all other responses are incorrect. The following screenshot shows the question and its general feedback.



www.it-ebooks.info

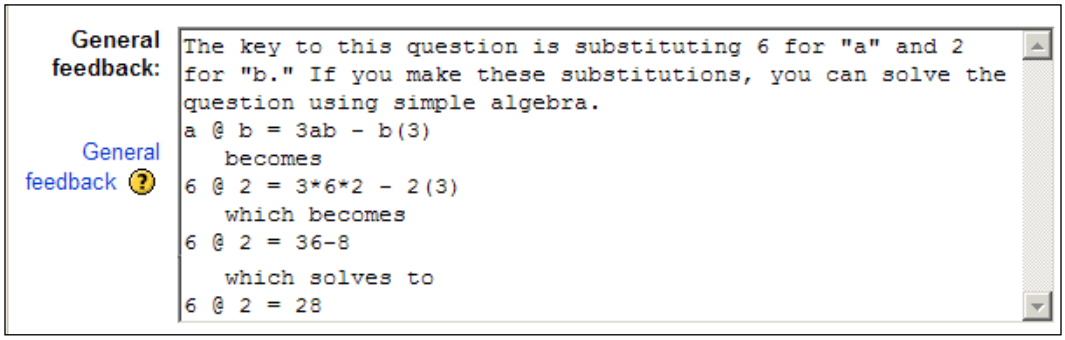
The following screenshot shows the choices and feedback for each individual answer that the student can choose.



www.it-ebooks.info

Feedback for a numeric question

The next screenshot shows feedback for a numeric answer question:

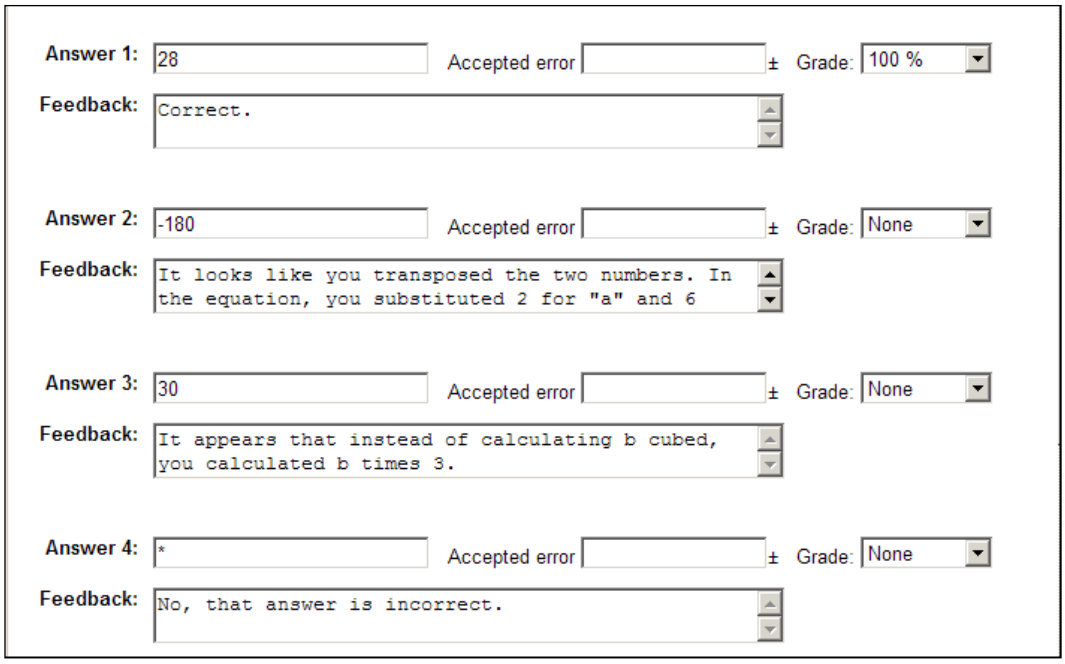


Notice that **General feedback** explains how the question is solved. This feedback is displayed to everyone after they answer the question, even those who answered correctly. You might think that if the student answered correctly, they don't need this explanation. However, if the student guessed or used a different method than that given in **General feedback**, explaining the solution could help the student learn from the question.

In a numeric answer question, the student types in a number for the answer. This means the student could enter literally any number. It would be impossible to create customized feedback for every possible answer, because the possibilities are infinite. However, you can create customized feedback for a reasonable number of answers. In the following question, I've created responses for the most likely incorrect answers. After I've given this test to the first group of students, I'll need to review their responses for the most frequent incorrect answers. If there are any that I haven't covered, I would need to add them to the feedback for this question.

In the following screenshot, notice that each response has customized feedback. **Answer 1** is correct. **Answer 2** would be the result of switching the two numbers while trying to solve the problem. As this is a likely error, I've included feedback just for that answer, explaining the error the student made. **Answer 3** is the result of interpreting *b3* as *b times 3* instead of *b cubed*. This is also a likely error, so I've included feedback for that answer. **Answer 4** is a wildcard and would apply if the student submitted any answer other than the three mentioned earlier:

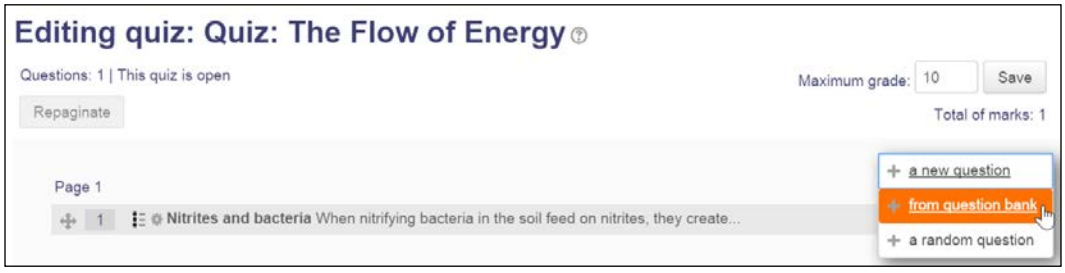
www.it-ebooks.info



Adding existing questions from the question bank

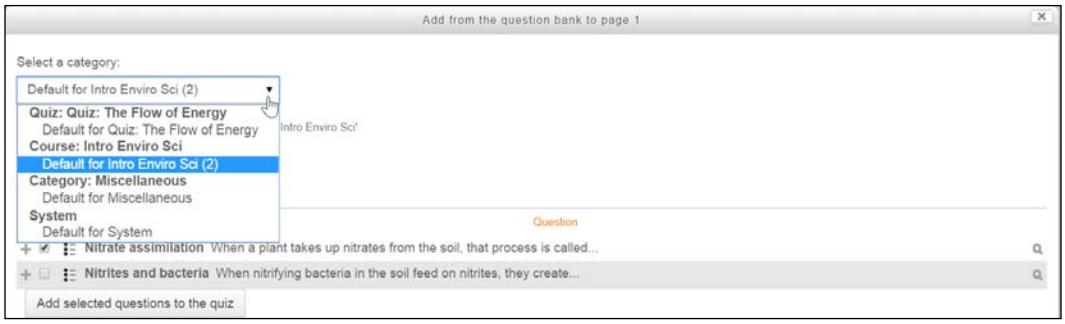
As you saw earlier, you can create a new question and add it to the quiz. You can also add existing questions to the quiz. These questions come from the question bank. To add a question from the question bank:

1. With the quiz selected, go to **Administration** | **Quiz administration** | **Edit Quiz**.
2. A popup window is displayed. Select **from question bank** as shown in the following screenshot:

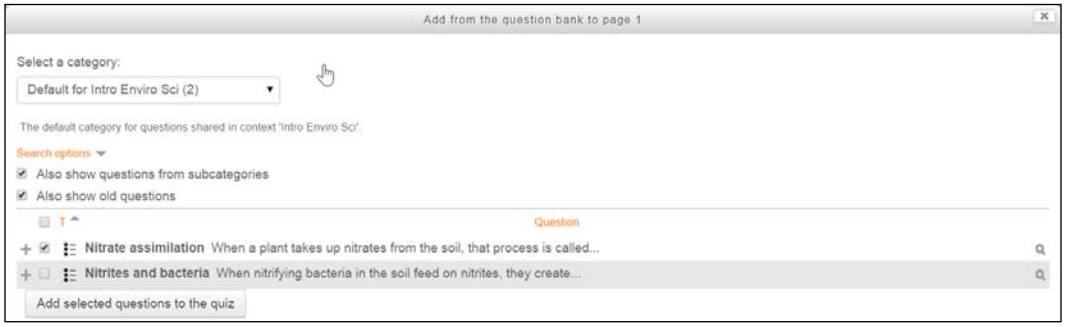


www.it-ebooks.info

The question bank is displayed. The questions in the bank are categorized. They can belong to this quiz, to this course, to the category that this course is in, or to the system overall. In the following screenshot, the user is selecting the course's category.



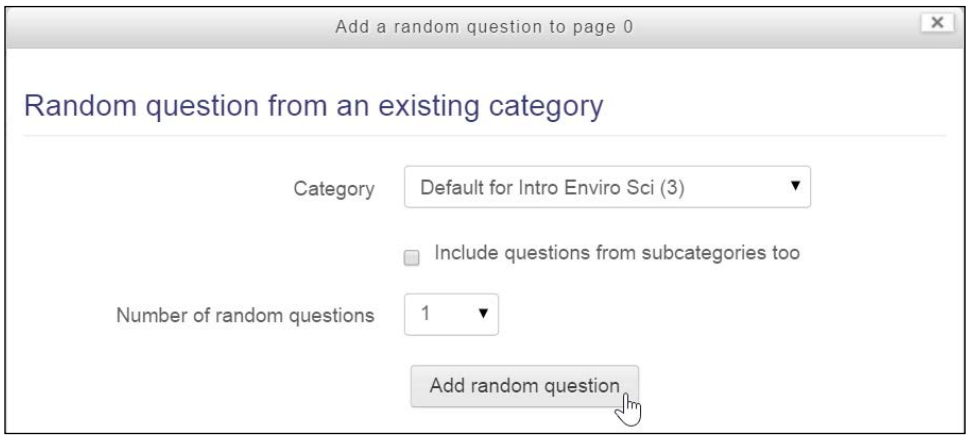
3. Select the category and question, and then select **Add selected questions to the quiz**:



www.it-ebooks.info

Adding random questions to a quiz

You can add a number of random questions to your quiz. In the following screenshot, notice that there are three questions in the selected category. The maximum number of questions that can be added depends on the number of questions in the category:



You can add random questions from several categories to the same quiz.

In the same attempt, students will never see the same random question twice. The questions are reset between attempts. So, students can see the same question twice if they attempt the same quiz twice.

To add a random question(s), follow these steps:

1. With the quiz selected, go to **Administration** | **Quiz administration** | **Edit Quiz**.
2. A popup window is displayed. Select **a random question**.
3. A dialog box is displayed. Select the category from which you want to draw the random question(s).
4. Select the number of questions to add, and then select the **Add random question** button.

Let's look at some other functions available under the **Editing quiz** tab.

www.it-ebooks.info

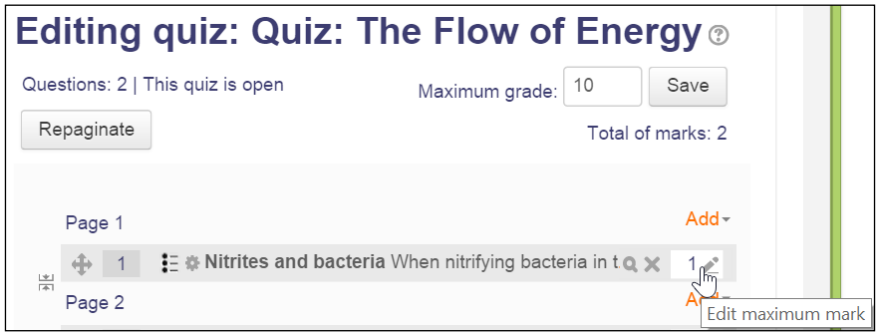
Maximum grade

The quiz's maximum grade is the quiz's point contribution towards the course. In this example, the quiz is worth 10 points towards the student's total for the course.

The grade for each question will be scaled to the quiz's maximum grade. For example, if this quiz had two questions worth 1 point each, but **Maximum grade** is 10, then each question will contribute 5 points to the student's total grade for the course.

Grade for each question

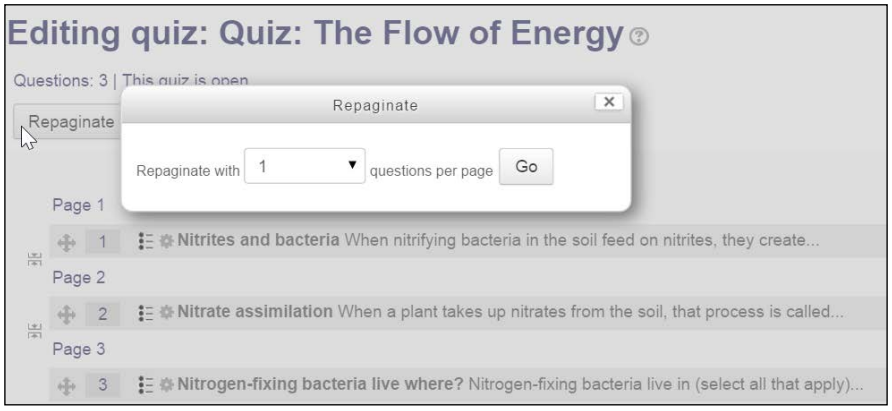
Each question has a point value, which is shown in this screenshot:



The question's point value is scaled to the quiz's **Maximum grade**. For example, if a question has a grade of **2** and the quiz has a maximum value of **10**, then that question is worth one-fifth of the quiz's grade.

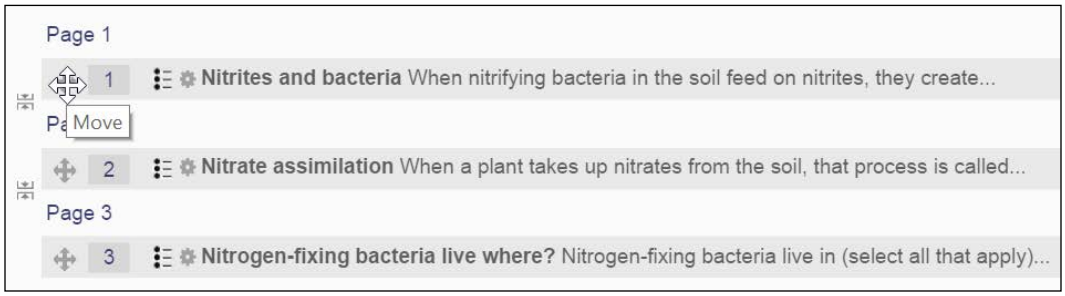
Changing the order of questions

You have several ways to rearrange questions. First, you can use the **Repaginate** button to specify how many questions to display on each page:

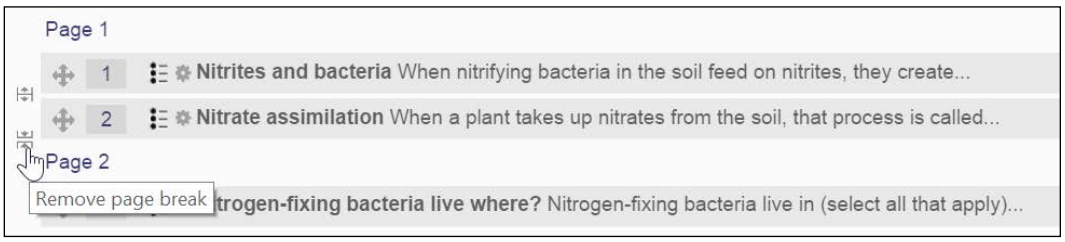


www.it-ebooks.info

Another way to rearrange questions is to drag and drop the questions using the handle provided to the left of each question:



Finally, you can add and remove page breaks between questions using the icon to the left of the break in between questions:



Preventing glossary auto-linking in quiz questions

If you have a glossary in your course, glossary words that are used in quiz questions will link to their glossary entries. If you don't want students to have this resource when they take the quiz, then go to **Quiz administration** | **Filters** and turn off the glossary auto-linking.

Preventing an open book quiz

In most Moodle courses, quizzes are *open book* affairs. This is because when the student is taking an online course, there is nothing to prevent the student from looking things up. If you want to prevent this, you can do so with some manual intervention.

The easiest way to prevent a quiz from becoming *open book* is to put that quiz into a separate course topic, by itself. Then, hide all the other course topics. This can be done by clicking on each topic. This prevents students from seeing any of the course material while they take the quiz. Administer the quiz and redisplay the topics afterward.

www.it-ebooks.info

Summary

Moodle's quiz activity is rich in feedback. The different types of feedback enable you to turn a quiz into a learning activity. Consider using the quiz activity not just for testing, but also for teaching.

The site administrator and teachers should work together to organize questions in the question bank and to give teachers access to the categories of questions they need.

In the next chapter, you'll learn how to make a course more social with forums and chats.

www.it-ebooks.info

9
Getting Social with Chats and Forums

Social course activities encourage student-to-student interaction. Peer interaction is one of the most powerful learning tools that Moodle offers. It not only encourages learning, but also encourages exploration. This tool also makes courses more interesting because students can share their knowledge, which increases student participation and satisfaction. Peer sharing is part of the social constructionist approach to learning. Moodle embraces this approach. This chapter teaches you how to add communication activities to a course and how to make best use of them.

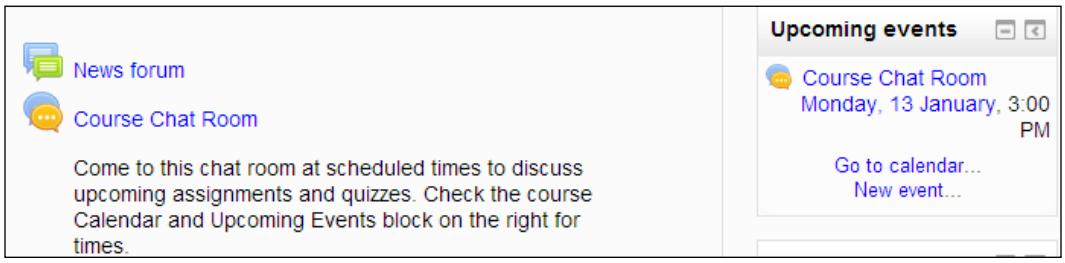
The chat module

The chat module creates a chat room where students can have real-time online chats. Similar to other activities in a course, the chat activity is available to students enrolled in the course. Chat sessions can be logged and made available to students who may join the course later. Online chat has some unique advantages over an in-person classroom discussion. Students do not need to deal with the fear of public speaking, transcripts can be edited and used as course material, and conversations can proceed at a leisurely pace, which gives participants time to think. The key to using these advantages is preparation. Prepare your students and ensure that they know the chat room etiquette and how to use the software. Prepare yourself by having the discussion material ready to copy and paste in the chat. Also, everyone should be prepared to focus on the goals and subject of the chat. More than any other online activity, chat requires that the teacher take a leadership role and guide students to a successful learning experience.

www.it-ebooks.info

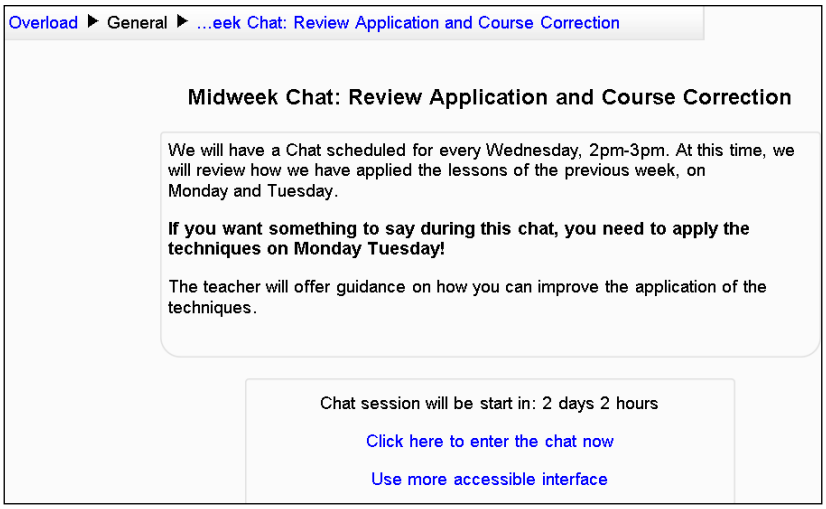
When you add a chat room to a course, by default, any student in the course can enter this chat room at any time. As with other activities, access restrictions can be set to override this default. The chat room can become a meeting place for students in the course, where they can come to collaborate on work and exchange information. If you give group assignments or have students rate other students' assignments, consider adding a chat room to the course and encouraging students to use it. Also, consider saving transcripts of the chat sessions so that they can act as another reference tool for students.

When you schedule a chat session, the scheduled time appears on **course Calendar** and is also displayed in the **Upcoming events** block:



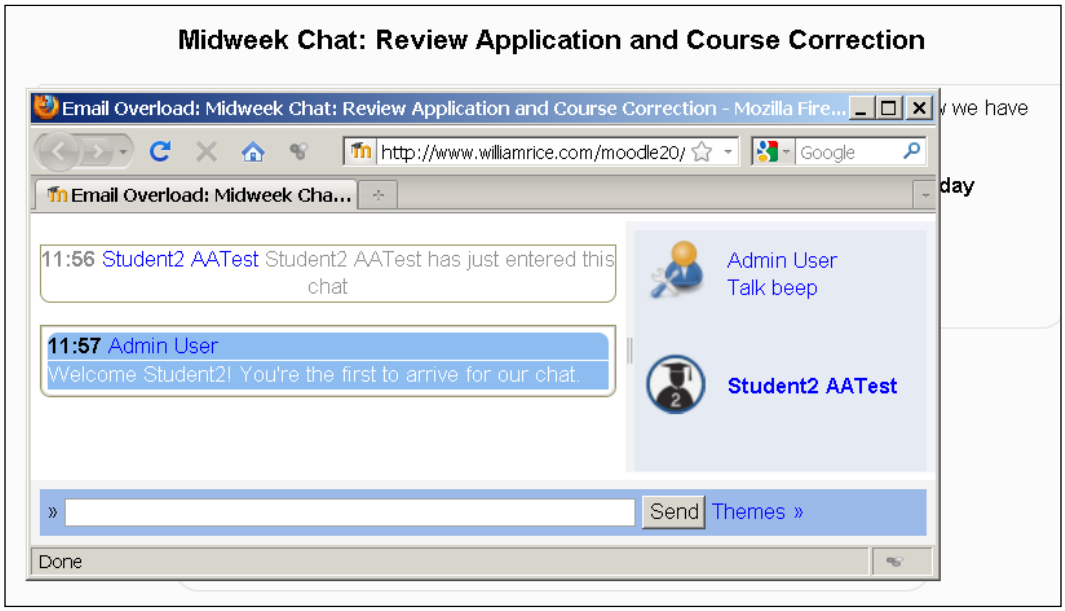
As the chat module is open all the time, when you put a chat on the calendar, you are not restricting access to the chat module. You are just creating a reminder to inform students when they should click on the chat module.

When a student selects a chat, he/she sees the **Description** that you entered when you created the chat. You can use this **Description** to instruct the student about the purpose of the chat:



www.it-ebooks.info

When you enter a chat, it launches a popup window. Make sure that your students don't have popups blocked:



Let's look at the settings that you use to create a chat.

The chat settings page

The **Creating Chat** page is where you create and select settings for a chat. When you first add a chat, you will be taken to this page. To edit the settings for an existing chat, select the chat and then from the left-hand side menu bar, select **Administration** | **Chat administration** | **Edit Settings**. This will take you to the same page, but it will be called **Editing Chat** instead of **Creating Chat**. Both pages have the same settings.

Let's take a look at the following settings on this page:

The name of this chat room

This is the name that students will see on the course's home page.

Description

When a student selects a chat, he/she will see the introduction text before clicking on the chat room. Also, you can display the description on the course's home page.

www.it-ebooks.info

The next chat time and repeat/publish sessions

As stated in the beginning of this section, as long as a chat is visible to the student, he/she can enter that chat room at any time. Therefore, the settings for **Next chat time** and **Repeat sessions** don't open and close the chat. Instead, these settings put a time and date for the chat on the class calendar.

Chat times are listed in **Calendar** and in the **Upcoming Events** block. Note that chats are not restricted to these times; they are only announced as a way for people in the course to *make a date* for the chat. However, this is a good way for the teacher to announce online office hours.

Spontaneous chats have the best chance of happening if the course has a lot of students who frequent the course's home page. Also, consider adding the **Online Users** block so that when students visit the site, they will know who is online and can invite others to the chat room.

Save past sessions and everyone can view past sessions

Past chats are automatically saved. The **Save past sessions** setting enables you to choose how long the system saves the chats. The setting for **Everyone can view past sessions** determines whether students can view past chats (**Yes**) or only teachers can view past chats (**No**).

Preventing students from seeing other's chats

The only security for a chat room is turning the group mode on so that only students in a selected group can see each other in this chat room. You will find the group settings under **Common Module Settings**.

Remember that on the **Course settings** page, you can set **Enrolment duration** as **Unlimited**. This means that once a student is enrolled in the course, he/she is always enrolled until you manually unenroll the student. If you leave the course open to all the students who were ever enrolled, consider segregating your chat to groups. Then, create a group that includes only the currently enrolled students. This prevents previous students from giving away too much in the chat room.

www.it-ebooks.info

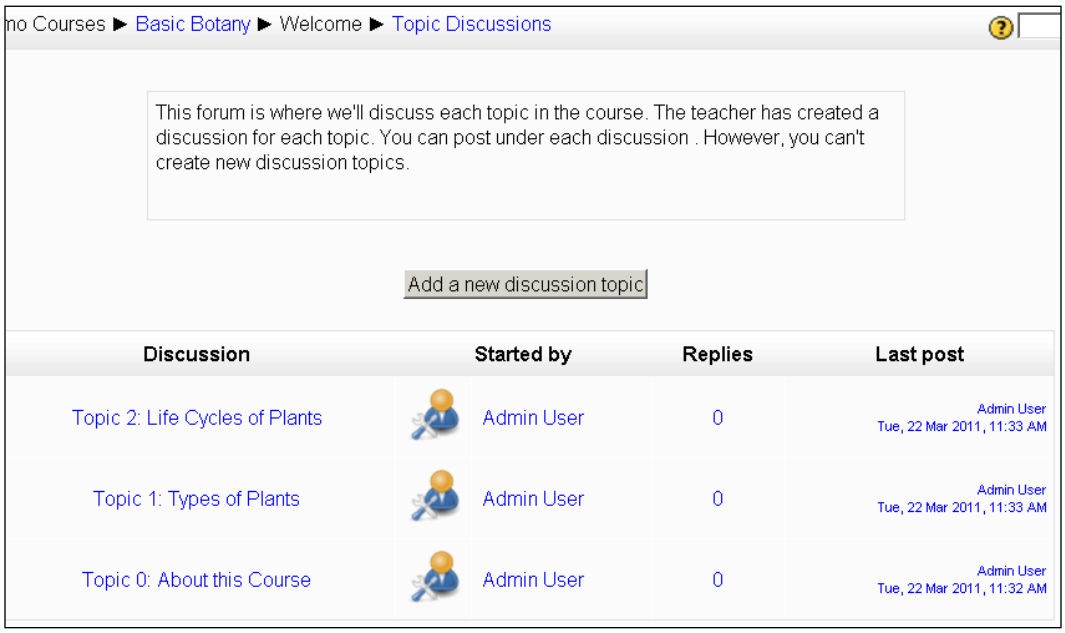
Creating and running forums

Forums are one of Moodle's most useful features. A well-run class forum can stimulate thoughtful discussion, motivate students to become involved, and result in unexpected insights.

You can add any number of forums to a course and to the site's front page. By default, anyone with access to the course will have access to various forums in that course. To separate students, you can use the group mode to ensure that students from different groups cannot see each other's posts in the forum.

You can also create a course that consists only of a forum. The course's home page is the forum. The course would consist only of discussion topics. You perform this using the course type to **Social** under course setting.

When a student enters a general purpose forum, the student sees the description entered during the creation of the forum, as shown in the following screenshot:



While writing a forum post, the student uses the same online editor you see when creating web pages, resources, and activities in Moodle.

Also, you can allow students to upload files to a forum posting. These files are attached to the forum post.

www.it-ebooks.info

If you ask students to collaborate on assignments or ask them to review each others' work, consider adding a forum specifically to discuss the assignment. Encourage students to use the forum to preview each others' work and collaborate on various assignments.

Using the news forum to send notifications

Moodle offers several ways to send e-mail announcements to a class. You can use the **People** block to select people in your class and send them a message. Also, when you want to send a message to everyone in a class, you can use the default **News Forum** that is automatically added to every class. By default, in the **News Forum**, **Subscription mode** is set to **Forced subscription.** Also, only teachers have the ability to post messages in the forum.

When the teacher posts a message in the class's **News Forum**, everyone who is subscribed to the **Forum** receives the message. With everyone subscribed, the entire class will receive a copy of each posting.

As **News Forum** is unique for all other forums, it should not be deleted or moved. If you think that you will not need it, just hide it instead of deleting it.

Multiple forums

Remember that a class can have as many forums as you want. If your course uses groups, you can use groups in the forum. Also, you can hide old forums and create new ones. This is useful if you run students through a course on a schedule. Just turning off old forums and creating new ones enables you to refresh parts of the course.

Forum settings

The **Settings** page is where you select settings for a forum. It's accessed from **Administration** | **Forum administration** | **Settings**. Let's take a look at how each of these settings affect the user experience.

General settings

The general settings affect the appearance and function of the forum.

The forum name

This is the name that students will see when a forum is listed on the course's home page.

www.it-ebooks.info

The forum description

When a student enters a forum, he/she will see **Forum description** at the top of the forum's page. This text should tell the student what the forum is about. You can also use this introduction to tell the student if he/she can rate posts by other students. It also tells the student how to link to a document with more extensive instructions on how to use the forum. This is possible because the description is a full-featured web page that can hold anything you put on a web page.

As with other activities, if you check the **Show description** box, the description will display on the course page.

The forum type

On Moodle, you can create several types of forums. Each type can be used in a different way. The types of forums are as follows:

Type of forum	Description
A single simple discussion	The entire forum appears on one page. The first posting at the top of the page is the topic for the forum. This topic is usually created by the teacher. The students then post replies under this topic. A single topic forum is most useful for short and highly focused discussions.
Each person posts one discussion	Each student can create one and only one new topic. Everyone can reply to every topic.
Q and A	This is like a single topic forum. Here, the teacher creates the topic for the forum. Students then reply to this topic. However, a student cannot see anyone else's reply until he/she has posted a reply. The topic is usually a question posed by the teacher and the students' replies are usually answers to this question.
A standard forum displayed in a blog-like format	In a standard forum, anyone can start a new topic. Teachers and students can create new topics and reply to existing postings. Displaying the discussion in a blog-like format makes the title and body of each discussion visible.
A standard forum for general use	In a standard forum, anyone can start a new topic. Teachers and students can create new topics and reply to existing postings. Only the titles of discussions are visible; you must click on a discussion to read the postings under it.

www.it-ebooks.info

The maximum attachment size

Students can attach files to forum postings. This sets the maximum file size the student can upload. One of the settings turns off the student's ability to upload files to the **Uploads are not allowed** forum.

The maximum number of attachments

This sets the maximum number of files that can be attached to one post, not the maximum for the whole forum.

The display word count

When set to **Yes**, the forum will show how many words are there in each post. The word count is shown at the bottom of the post, so you will not see the word count until you have clicked on the post.

The subscription mode

Selecting **Force subscription** subscribes all students to the forum automatically (even students that enroll in the course at a later time). Before using this setting, consider its long-term effect on students who took your class.

If you reuse the same course for a later group of students, the previous group will still be enrolled. Do you want previous students to be notified of new postings in the current class's forum? If not, there are several solutions:

- Don't force all students to be subscribed
- Use groups to separate the current group of students in the class from previous groups
- Create a fresh instance of the course for each new group
- Reset the course, which will unenroll past students
- Create a new forum for a new group of students

If you select **Auto subscription**, everyone in the course is subscribed to the forum, but later, they can unsubscribe. With **Force subscription**, the student cannot unsubscribe as long as he/she is enrolled in the course.

Read tracking

When turned on, this highlights the forum posts that he/she hasn't read.

www.it-ebooks.info

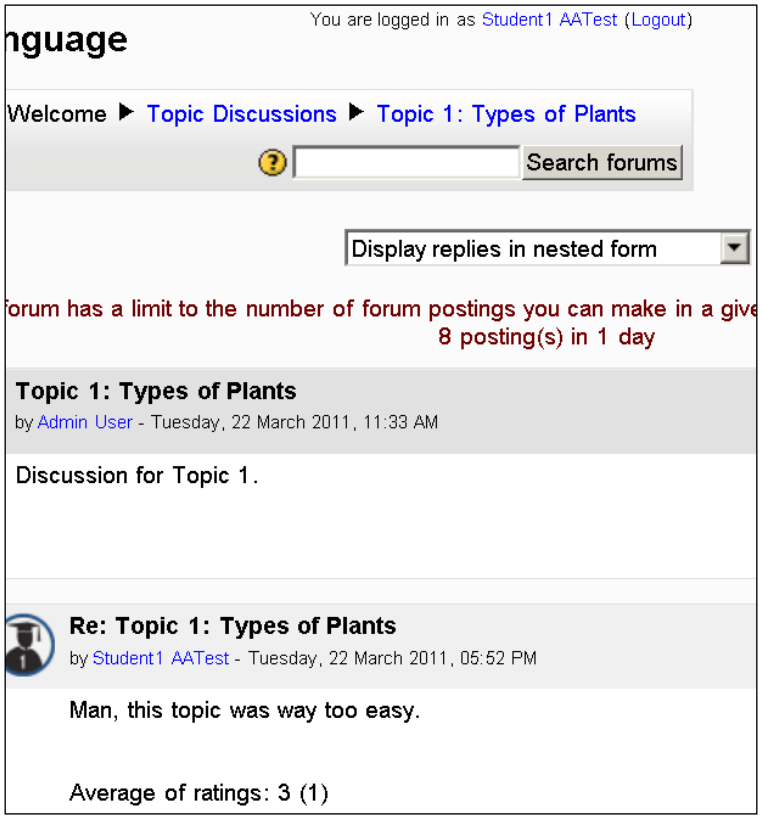
Post threshold to block settings

These settings help you to prevent the forum from being taken over by a few prolific posters. Users can be blocked from posting more than a specific number of postings in a specific amount of time. As they approach the limit, they can be given a warning.

For the preceding example, you can set a limit of eight posts per day. After a student makes a sixth post for the day, the system will warn him/her that he/she is approaching the limit for the number of posts per day. After eight posts, the student cannot post any more that day.

Ratings

In a forum, a *rating* is really a *grade*. When you enable ratings, you are really allowing the teacher to give each forum posting a grade. In the following screenshot, you can see the first posting in the forum, which was made by the teacher. After this, you can see the reply left by **Student1**. The student's reply was rated by the teacher:



www.it-ebooks.info

By default, only teachers, nonediting teachers, and course managers can rate forum postings. If you want students to be able to rate postings in a forum, you must enable this for the forum. You do this on the **Permissions** page. Before leaving the **Settings** page, save your work.

To enable students to rate forum postings, perform the following steps:

1. Select **Forum**.
2. Then, select **Settings** | **Forum administration** | **Permissions**.
3. From **Advanced role override**, select **Student**.
4. A page listing the student's permissions *for this activity* is displayed. Scroll down to the section labeled **Activity: Forum** and locate the permission for **Rate posts**.
5. Select the **Allow** radio button.
6. Click on the **Save changes** button.

Summary

Moodle offers several options for the student-to-student and student-to-teacher interaction. When deciding which social activities to use, consider the level of structure and the level of student-to-student/student-to-teacher interaction you want. For example, chats and wikis are naturally unstructured with a lot of opportunities for the student-to-student interaction. These are good ways of relinquishing some control of the class to students. A forum offers more structure because entries are segregated to topics. It can be moderated by the teacher, making it even more structured.

You may want to introduce a chat and/or forum at the beginning of a course to build *esprit de corps* among several students and then move on to a collaborative wiki (such as a group writing project).

In the next chapter, we will see how to encourage collaboration among students using wikis and glossaries.

www.it-ebooks.info

10
Collaborating with Wikis and Glossaries

This chapter teaches you how to add wikis and glossaries to your course. These activities enable students to work together and build a body of knowledge. The resulting collection of knowledge (the completed wikis and glossaries) can be reused by students in future courses. As the course evolves, the wikis and glossaries that past students created can be retained, edited, referenced, and grown.

Glossary

The **Glossary** activity is one of the most underrated activities of Moodle. On the surface, a glossary is a list of words and definitions that students can access. However, a course creator allows students to add entries to a **Glossary**. This transforms the glossary from a static list of vocabulary words to a collaborative tool for learning purposes.

A text filter called **auto linking** creates links to glossary entries in your course. When this is turned on by a site administrator, whenever a word from a **Glossary** appears in the course, it's highlighted. Clicking on the word brings up a popup window with the word's **Glossary** entry. The Glossary entry can consist of text, images, media, and links. It is a miniature page devoted to defining and elucidating the glossary term.

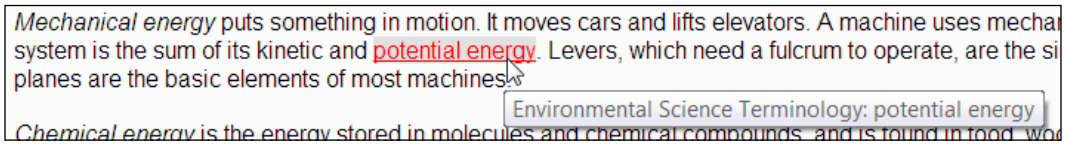
You can use a glossary to build a class directory, a collection of past exam questions, famous quotations, or even an annotated collection of pictures.

www.it-ebooks.info

Enabling glossaries and auto-linking

There are several places where a site administrator will need to enable glossaries and glossary features.

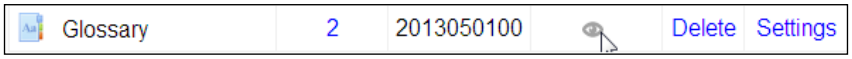
When auto-linking is turned on, a glossary term appears in the course and is linked to its glossary entry. This is how the link looks:



Auto-linking creates links when a glossary term is used in the same course in which the glossary is located.

Enabling glossaries for your site

First, under **Site Administration** | **Plugins** | **Activity Modules** | **Manage Activities**, the site administrator must enable the glossary activity. By default, glossaries are enabled on Moodle. Enabling them is needed only if you do not see glossary in the **Add Resource or Activity…** menu.

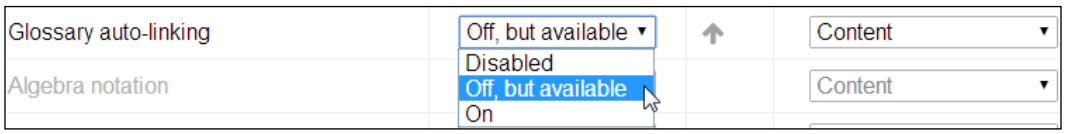


Enabling auto-linking

Auto-linking needs to be enabled in several places at the site, course, and activity level. If you create a glossary term and if it's not being auto-linked in your course, check that glossary auto-linking is enabled at the site, course, and activity/resource level. Each of these is covered in a subsection below.

Enabling auto-linking for the site

Under **Site Administration** | **Plugins** | **Filter** | **Manage Filters**, the site administrator can turn on **Glossary Auto-Linking**:



www.it-ebooks.info

The **Disabled** setting removes the ability for the teacher to turn on auto-linking in the course. The **Off, but available** setting turns off auto-linking by default, but enables the teacher to turn it on in the course. The **On** setting turns on auto-linking for all courses.

In the right-hand side column, note that the user has chosen to have auto-linking in the **Content** of activities and resources. You can also select **Content and headings**, which will turn on auto-linking for the content of an activity or resource and the words in the heading of that activity or resource.

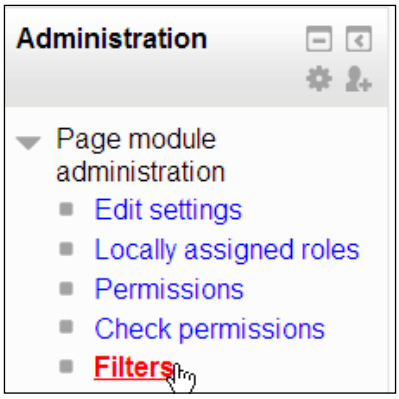
Enabling auto-linking for the course

If the site-wide setting for auto-linking is set to **On**, you do not need to enable it at the course level. If the site-wide setting is set to **Disable**, it's not possible to enable it at the course level. This setting is available and needed only if the site-wide setting is **Off, but available**.

Under **Administration** | **Course administration** | **Filters**, the teacher must turn on **Glossary Auto-Linking**. If this is disabled, auto-linking will not work for any of the glossaries in the course.

Enabling auto-linking for the activity or resource

If you have auto-linking enabled for the site and the course and it's still not working, check the auto-linking setting for the activity or resource that you are in. In the **Administration** menu, look for the administration options for the resource or activity that you are in. Select **Filters**, and on the filters page, turn on **Glossary Auto-Linking**:



www.it-ebooks.info

Adding and configuring a glossary

Add a glossary by clicking on **Add an activity or resource** on your course page and then select **Glossary**. When the glossary settings page is displayed, you will need to choose the correct setting to create the kind of glossary that you want for your class. Let's look at the settings that are unique to a glossary.

You will find these settings under **Administration** | **Glossary administration** | **Edit settings**.

The global glossary versus local glossary

By default, a glossary applies only to the course in which it resides. However, you can choose to make a glossary global. In this case, the words from this glossary will be highlighted and clickable wherever they are in your site. The work done in one course then becomes available to all the courses on your site. If your site's subject matter is highly focused, consider using a global glossary. If your site's subject matter is very broad, as in a university-wide learning site, you should use local glossaries to avoid confusion. For example, imagine that you have a course in chemistry and another in statistics. Both use the word *granular*, but chemistry uses it to indicate a powdered substance, while statistics uses it to indicate a fine level of detail.

Only an administrator can create a glossary in the global glossary. If you have only teacher rights, get an administrator to do this for you.

The main glossary versus secondary glossary

The **Glossary type** setting enables you to designate a glossary as **Main** or **Secondary**. A **Main glossary** is a glossary that will include terms from other glossaries. A **Secondary glossary** is a glossary that stands alone; it does not include terms from any other glossaries.

If you want students to be able to add entries to a **Glossary**, you must make it a **Secondary glossary**. Only teachers can add terms to a **Main glossary**.

You can export terms from a **Secondary glossary** to a **Main glossary** one at a time. So, you can create a secondary glossary(s) to which students will add terms. Then, you and/or the students can export the best terms to the **Main glossary**. Imagine a course with one **Main glossary** and a **Secondary glossary** each time the course is run. The **Main glossary** would become a repository of the best terms added by each class.

www.it-ebooks.info

You can add a **Secondary glossary** for each section in the course. For example, put a **Secondary glossary** in each topic or week. Then, you can create a **Main glossary** for the course that will automatically include all the terms added to each **Secondary glossary**. Put the **Main glossary** in **Topic 0**, the section at the top of the course's home page. An alternative to using secondary glossaries is to use one main glossary and create categories within that glossary for each section in the course. This keeps all glossary entries in one place.

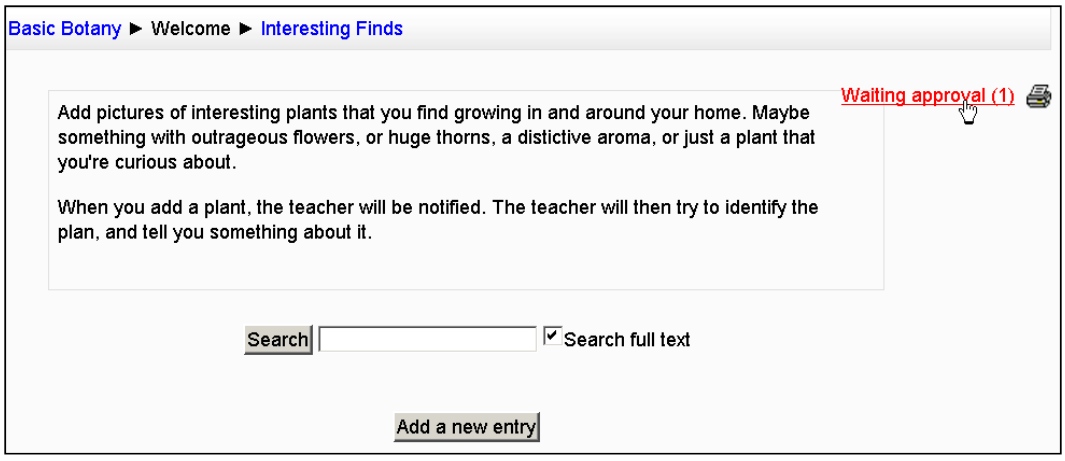
If you want the course to have only one glossary and want students to be able to add to this glossary, make it a **Secondary glossary**. Although the term *Secondary* implies that there is also a primary or main glossary, this is not the case. You can have just a **Secondary glossary** (or more than one) in a course without a **Main glossary**.

Entries approved by default

If you turn on the setting for **Approved by default**, then as soon as a student adds an entry to a glossary, this entry will appear in the glossary. If it's turned off, the teacher will need to approve each entry.

If you turn on this setting and students add entries that you think are inappropriate, you can always delete these entries and turn this setting off.

If **Approved by default** is turned off, new terms would await the teacher's approval before being added. In the following screenshot, take a look at the link in the upper-right corner for **Waiting approval**:



www.it-ebooks.info

Always allow editing and Duplicate entries allowed

Always allow editing and **Duplicate entries allowed** are two separate settings. However, they can work together in an interesting way.

If you turn on **Always allow editing**, students can edit entries that have already been made. So, if two students have different definitions for a term, they can each contribute their definition to the same entry. In this case, the second student will not need to create a duplicate entry; he/she can just add his or her definition to the existing entry.

If you turn off **Always allow editing**, consider allowing duplicate entries. Then, if two students have different definitions for the same term, they can each create an entry for that term.

Allowing comments

If you turn on **Allow comments on entries**, students and teachers can add comments to a glossary entry. These comments will appear at the bottom of the entry. Comments are visible to all the readers of the glossary.

Automatically linking glossary entries

If you turn on **Automatically link glossary entries**, this will not always result in all entries becoming links in your course. Instead, when an entry is created, its editing page will have an option to turn on auto-linking for that entry.

Appearance settings

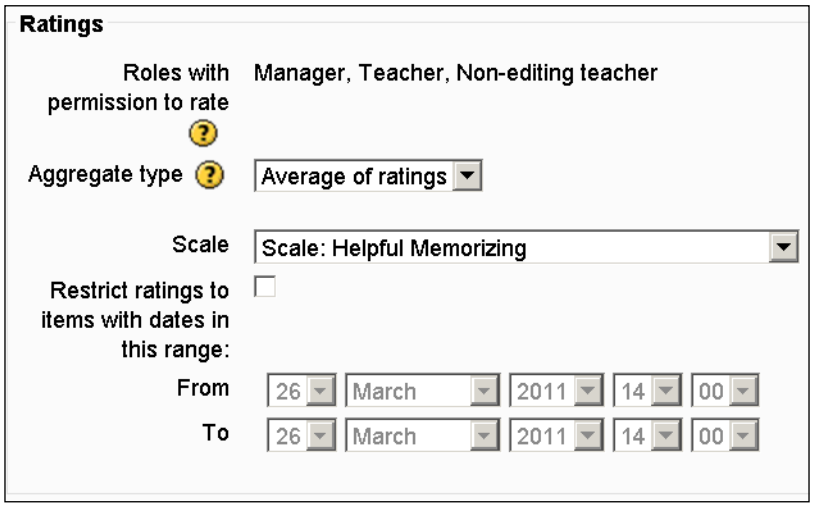
Under the **Appearance** section, you will find settings that affect the presentation of the glossary. These settings affect the layout of the glossary page, how many entries are shown on a page, the links that users are given, and so on. To determine the best settings for your situation, experiment with the following steps:

1. Log in as a teacher.
2. Create a few glossary entries.
3. Open another browser, log in as a student, and open the glossary.
4. As a teacher, try different settings under **Appearance**.
5. Each time you change the settings as a student, refresh the glossary page.

www.it-ebooks.info

Enabling ratings

You can give students the ability to rate glossary entries, just like they can rate forum postings. The question is, what do you want students to rate? The glossary entry's clarity, its helpfulness, or your writing skill in creating an entry? You'll need to consider what you want students to rate and create a custom scale that supports that rating. You determine who can rate glossary entries, and what scale to use on the **Settings** page:



In the preceding screenshot, the teacher applies a custom scale called **Helpful Memorizing** to the glossary. This custom scale was created before the teacher came to this page.

After creating the custom scale, the teacher went to the glossary's **Settings** page and selected it under **Scale**, as shown in the preceding screenshot.

Note that only the **Manager**, **Teachers**, and **Non-editing teachers** course can rate the entries in this glossary. In the next step, the teacher modifies the permissions to allow students to rate entries.

The process to allow students to rate glossary entries consists of three parts:

1. Creating the rating scale.
2. Selecting the scale for the glossary.
3. Giving students permission to use the ratings.

www.it-ebooks.info

Creating the rating scale:

1. Select **Administration** | **Grade administration** | **Scales**.
2. Click on the **Add a new scale** button.
3. On the new **Scale** page, give a **Name** to the scale. Only the teacher can see this name.
4. In the **Scale** field, enter the values that the user will select when giving glossary definition a rating. The scale must have more than two items.
5. In the **Description** field, enter a short description. This will help you to remember the purpose for this scale.
6. **Save** your changes.

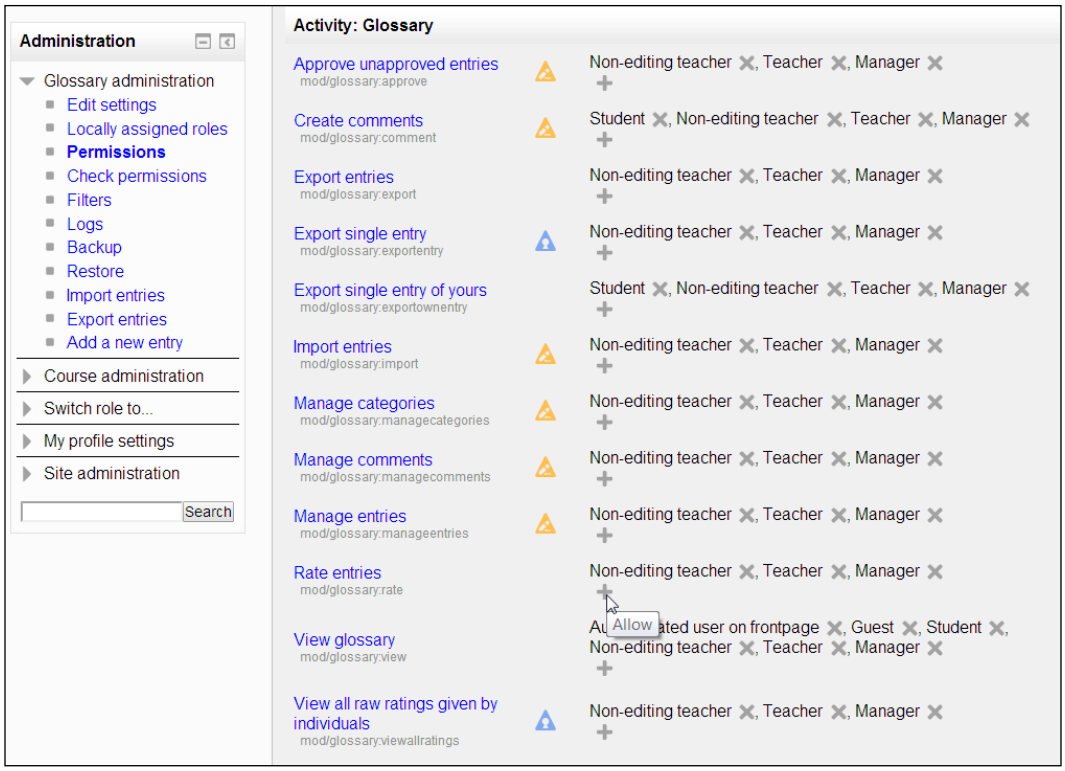
Selecting the scale for the glossary:

1. Navigate to the glossary's **Settings** page.
2. In the **Scale** field, select the scale that you have just created.
3. Modify any other settings that you want on this page.
4. **Save** your changes.

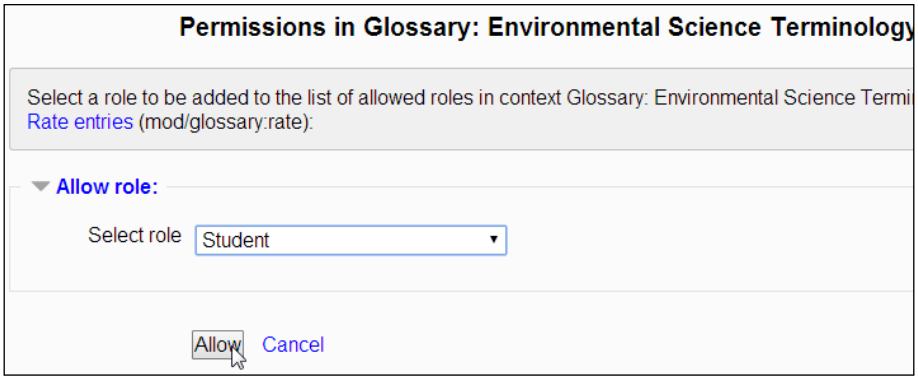
Giving students permission to use ratings:

1. From the main menu, select **Administration** | **Glossary administration** | **Permissions**.
2. On the **Permissions** page, scroll down to the **Activity: Glossary** section.
3. Click on the plus sign located next to **Rate entries**:

www.it-ebooks.info

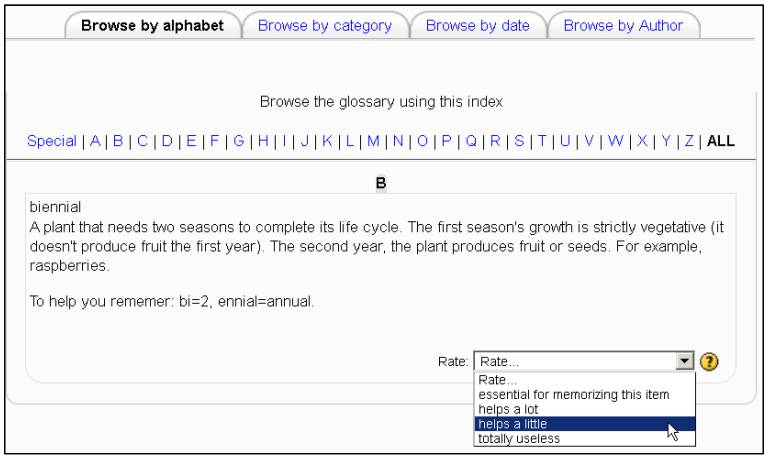


4. Select the role that you want to add to this permission and then click on the **Allow** button:



www.it-ebooks.info

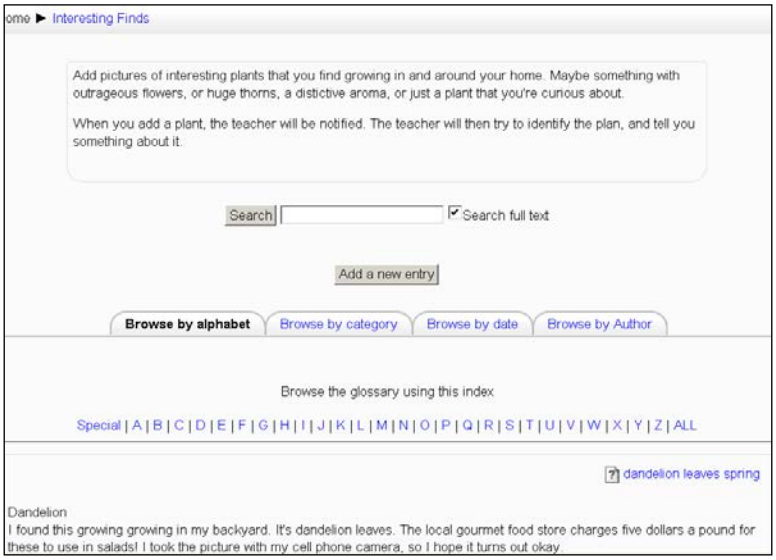
In our example, students will be able to rate each glossary entry on how helpful it's to memorize the material. From the student's point of view, this is how the result looks:



Adding glossary entries

Selecting a **Glossary** from the course menu displays the glossary's introductory page. On this page, you can edit and browse the glossary.

The following screenshot shows the **Add a new entry** button, which appears under every tab in the glossary:



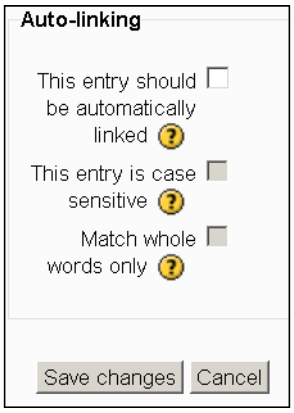
www.it-ebooks.info

Create new **Glossary** categories by navigating to the **Browse by category** page and then click on the **Add a new entry** button. This button appears under each of the tabs when you browse the glossary, so it's always available.

On this page, **Concept** is the term that you will add to the **Glossary**. Keyword(s) are synonyms, which is equivalent to a *see also* section in an index or dictionary. These terms will link to the same definition as the concept.

Note that you can add a picture or media file to **Description**, using the icons in the toolbar . You can also upload these kinds of files as an **Attachment**, which is what this user chose to do.

If auto-linking is enabled, the bottom half of **Add a new entry** contains the settings, as shown in the following screenshot:



When the glossary term appears in your course, you can have it linked to its glossary entry. The **Auto-linking** option determines whether and when this word should link to its glossary entry.

www.it-ebooks.info

Importing and exporting entries

The **Import** and **Export** links enable the teacher to exchange glossaries between courses and even Moodle installations:

You may want to begin a course with a small glossary and let students add to it as they discover new concepts. If you do this, export the beginning glossary so that you have it available for the next course. The next time you teach a course, you can choose to export everything in the completed course (except the student information and the glossary). In the new copy, just create a new and blank **Glossary** and import the starting **Glossary**.

Also, note that the editing window enables you to include hyperlinks in the definition (the icon). This can be used to link to freely available information on the Web, such as `http://www.wikipedia.org/`.

Wiki

The Moodle wiki module enables students to collaborate on a group writing project, build a knowledge base, and discuss class topics. As wiki is easy to use, interactive, and organized by date, it encourages collaboration among its participants. This makes it a powerful tool to create group knowledge. The key difference between a forum and wiki is that when users enter a forum, they see a thread devoted to a topic. Each entry is short. Users read through the thread, one entry at a time. The result is that the discussion becomes prominent. In wiki, users see the end result of the writing. To see the history of the writing, they must select a **History** tab. The result is that the end result of the writing becomes prominent.

www.it-ebooks.info

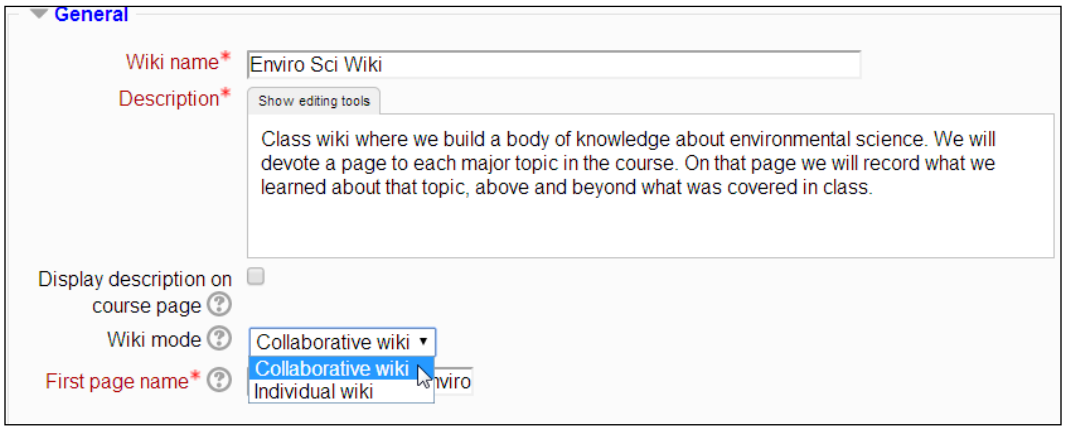
The old wiki content is never deleted and can be restored. Wikis can also be searched just like other course material. In the following section, we'll look at the settings on the **Editing Wiki** page and how they affect the user experience.

Using the wiki type and groups mode to determine who can edit a wiki

A wiki content is open to editing by the entire class, a group, the teacher, or a single student. It can also be open to viewing by the entire class, a group, the teacher, or a single student. Note that the teacher determines who can see and can edit the wiki content; the settings differ.

The settings for who can edit the wiki content is done using the **Wiki mode** drop-down box.

The setting for who can see the wiki content is done using the **Groups** mode.



Making a wiki editable by only a single student appears to turn the wiki into a personal journal. However, the difference between a single student wiki and a journal is that a journal can be seen only by the student and the teacher. You can keep a single student wiki private or you can open it to change the setting and make it collaborative for the student's group or the entire class.

www.it-ebooks.info

The first page name

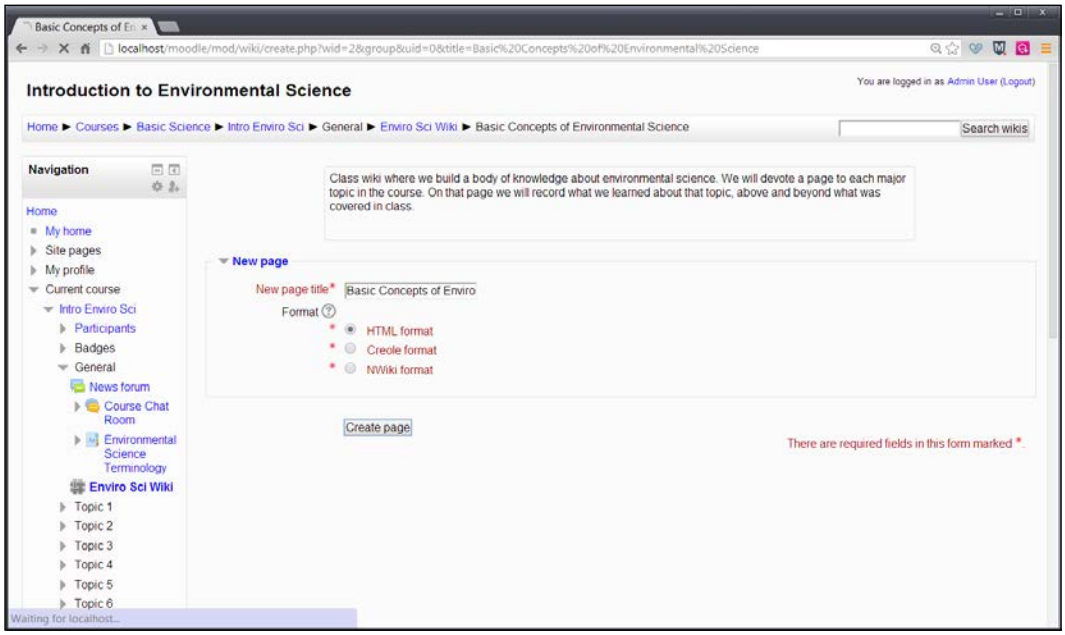
The name on the first page of the wiki will be taken from this field.

If there is one wiki for the entire class, when the first student enters the wiki, that student will see the starting page(s). If that first student edits any page, the next student who enters will see the edited version, and so on. If there is one wiki for each group in the class, then each group will get a *fresh* wiki with the starting page(s) that you created. Also, if each student gets their own wiki, each student will see their starting pages when they enter their wiki.

The default format

The **Default format** setting determines whether wiki authors use standard the wiki markup or HTML code while editing. If you will use the HTML editor for other student activities, setting this to **HTML** can simplify this activity for your students. They will get familiar with the HTML editor and don't need to learn the wiki markup language. However, if your students are accustomed to wikis, you may want to select **Creole**. This enables them to use a common wiki markup, which is faster for experienced typists.

If you do not select the **Force** format, when student enters the wiki, he/she will be able to select the format to use for editing purposes:



www.it-ebooks.info

Summary

Moodle offers several options for students to collaborate on building a body of knowledge. A class can work together to build a glossary, which can be imported and reused in future classes. They can work together to write a wiki, which provides an opportunity for them to organize their knowledge into a narrative.

Look at glossaries as a way for students to collect new knowledge, and look at wikis as a way for students to organize new knowledge. Monitor these activities and encourage your students to participate.

www.it-ebooks.info

www.it-ebooks.info

11
Running a Workshop

A workshop provides a place for students in a class to see an example project, upload their individual projects, and see and assess each other's projects. When a teacher requires each student to assess the work of several other students, this workshop becomes a powerful collaborative grading tool.

Workshop strategies

Workshops can be ungraded, peer-graded, instructor-graded, or a combination of peer- and instructor-graded. Workshops enable you to create very specific assessment criteria for graders to use. Also, workshops let you set due dates to submit grading work. You can use these and other features to build a strategy to make best use of workshops in your courses.

Peer assessment of submissions

One strategy for workshops is to have students assessing each other's work before that same work is submitted as a graded assignment. For example, you can create a workshop in which students assess each other's subject matter, outlines, and hypothesis for their term papers or they can assess each other's photos for specific technical and artistic criteria before they are submitted to the instructor for grading purposes.

www.it-ebooks.info

The timing of submissions and assessments

Workshops enable you to set different due dates in order to submit work and assess other student's work. If you set both due dates as the same, many students may submit their work just before the submission deadline so that they cannot be assessed at all before the assessment deadline. Consider setting the submission deadline well before the assessment deadline. So, before opening up the assessment ability to students, examine the work submitted and ensure that it's close to what you expected or were trying to elicit from students. You may even want to use the time between submission and assessment to refine your assessment criteria, in response to the work submitted.

The four questions

The fields in the workshop window give you many choices. No matter what you enter in each field, your many decisions can be summed up as follows:

- What will you have each student do? Create a file offline and upload it to the workshop? Write a journal entry? Participate in an online chat. Perform some offline activity and report on it via e-mail or wiki. While the workshop window enables a student to upload a file, you can also expect any other activity from the student.
- Who will assess assignments? Will a teacher assess all assignments? Will students be expected to assess other students' assignments? Will each student self assess his or her work?
- How will the assignments be assessed? You can determine a number of criteria on which each assignment is assessed, the grading scale, and the type of grading.
- When will students be allowed to submit their assignments and assessments? The assignment becomes available as soon as you show it. However, you can expect students to assess an example before being allowed to submit their own work; you can also set a deadline to submit the assessment.

All the fields that we cover here are variations of these questions. The online help does a good job of explaining how to use each field. Instead of repeating how to use each field here, we will focus on how your choices affect the student and teacher experience.

www.it-ebooks.info

The four phases

When you run a workshop, you will go through four phases:

The *setup* phase is when you create a workshop and choose settings for how it will work. These settings are discussed in detail under the edit settings page.

The *submission* phase is when students submit their work. Also, each student will be given assignments to assess the work of some other students. The assessments can be allocated automatically by a system or a teacher can manually allocate assessments to students. Either way, at the end of the submission phase, each student will have submitted his/her work and been told to assess the work of one or several other students.

During the *assessment* phase, students will assess each other's work. The teacher will create assessment forms that students will use when conducting their assessments of each other's work.

During the *grading evaluation* phase, students are given grades for how well they evaluated the work of their peers. This is the final phase of the workshop.

We will look at each phase of the workshop.

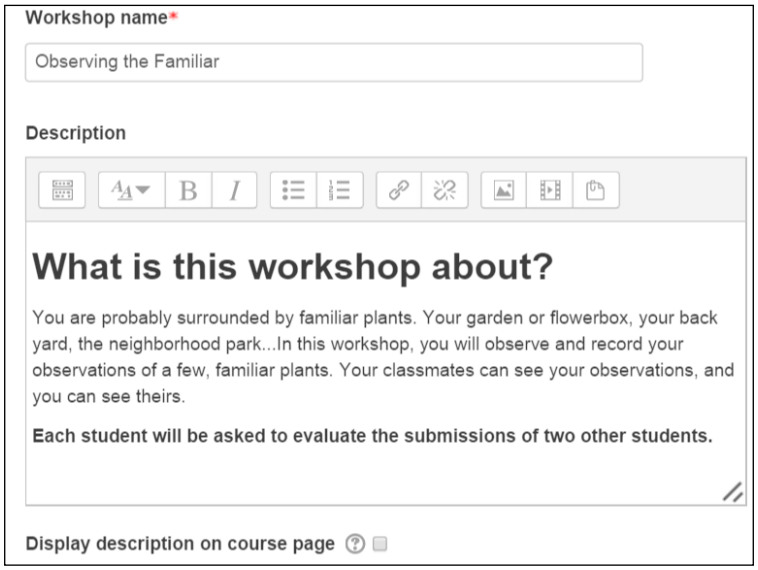
The setup phase – the edit settings page

The workshop activity is the most complex tool currently available on Moodle. Workshops are designed so that a student's work can be submitted and offered for peer review within a structured framework. Workshops provide a process for both instructor and peer feedback on open-ended assignments, such as essays and research papers. There are easy to use interfaces to upload assignments and perform self-assessments and peer reviews of other students' papers. The key to a workshop is the scoring guide, which is a set of specific criteria to make judgments about the quality of a given work. There are several fields under a workshop, which will be explained in the following sections. They provide a place for students as well as teachers in the class to make the best use of Moodle.

www.it-ebooks.info

Name and description

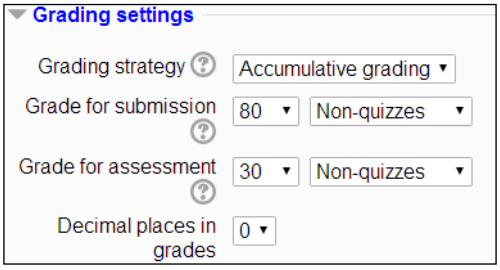
The settings under **General** partially answer the question: what will you have each student do?



Your students will see and click on the **Name** field. The **Description** field should give instructions on how to complete the workshop.

Grading settings

These fields determine the maximum points a student can earn for a workshop and how to calculate these points, as shown in the following screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

The grading strategy

A workshop assignment is quite flexible in the type of the grading scheme used. This setting determines the overall scheme.

In the **Accumulative grading** strategy, the grade for each element is added to arrive at the accumulated grade. This style of grading enables you to present the reviewer with a numeric scale. You can also present the reviewer with *Yes* or *No* questions. One of the questions is does this workshop meet the requirement? Alternatively, you can present the reviewer with a grading scale, such as *Poor*, *Fair*, *Good*, and *Excellent*. If you do use a *Yes* or *No* or a grading scale, you will assign a point value to each response. Consider informing the reviewer of the value of each response. For example, instead of just writing poor, fair, good, excellent, consider writing poor (1 point), fair (2 points), good (3 points), or excellent (4 points).

When **Comments** is selected for **Grading strategy**, students can comment on each assessment element, but cannot select a grade; however, teachers can grade students' comments. In this case, the workshop is transformed from where students grade each other to where the teacher grades each student's comments.

A workshop that uses **Comments** may be especially useful when you want to have a structured discussion on material that you present to students.

As a course creator, you can present the students with material that has been uploaded to the workshop or use the workshop's description to direct students to the material they must assess. After the students have viewed the material, they enter the workshop and leave comments according to the elements presented. As the workshop requires that students comment on clearly defined evaluation elements, the students' discussion is structured and kept on track.

When you choose the **Number of Errors** option, students evaluate a workshop with a series of *Yes* or *No* questions. Usually, you create questions to evaluate whether or not the submission met a requirement, such as *does the student have a variety of opinions?*

www.it-ebooks.info

When writing one of these questions, make sure that it can be answered using only *Yes* or *No*. A sign that you need to revise your question is the presence of the word *or*. For example, don't write *did the student describe the plant well enough to distinguish it from others?* or *is there still doubt as to which plant the student is describing?* Such a question cannot be answered by *Yes* or *No*.

The answer to an evaluation question is sometimes very clear and sometimes subjective. For example, the question: *did the student describe the plant well enough to distinguish it from others?* is subjective. One reviewer may think that the student did an adequate job of describing the plant, while another may think otherwise. These questions can be a good way to perform subjective peer evaluations of each student's work.

If the work requires a more objective evaluation (such as *did the student include all five identifying features covered in this lesson*), you may not need a workshop. This kind of objective evaluation can be easily performed by the teacher, using an assignment.

For a Rubric grading strategy, write several statements that apply to the project. Each statement has a grade assigned to it. The reviewers choose the one statement that best describes the project. This single choice completes the review.

You can create several such elements; the reviewers must select a statement for each of them.

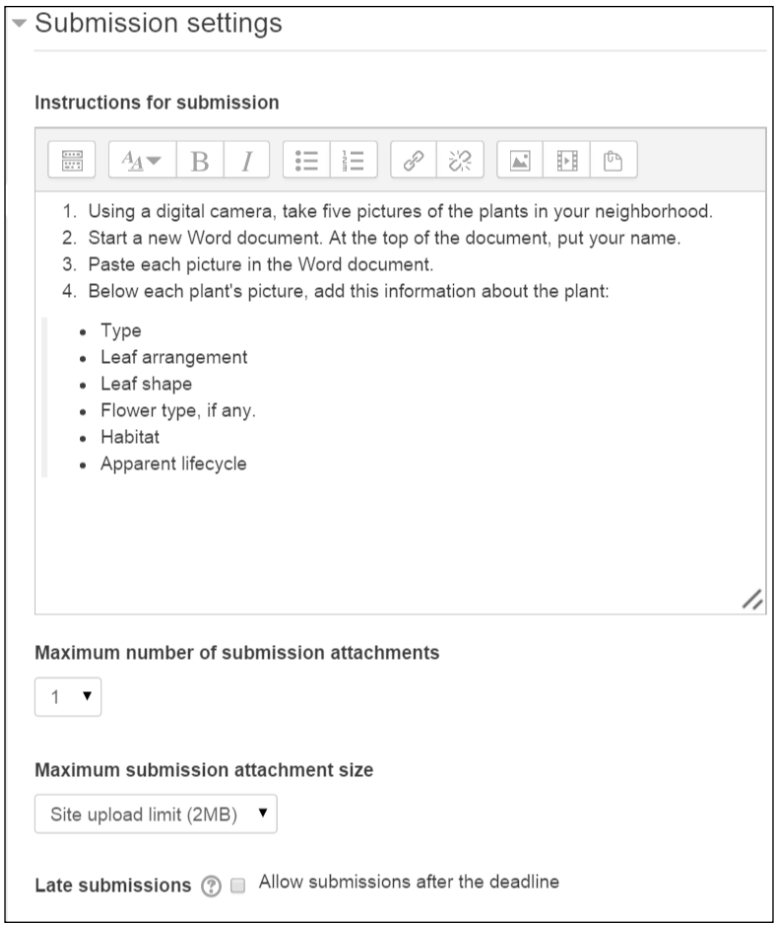
Grade for submission is the maximum number of points a student can be given by a grader.

Grade for assessments is the grade that the student receives to grade other submissions. This grade is based on how close the assessment the student completes is to the average of all assessments for that same submission. For example, student A submits work and students B, C, and, D assess the work and give scores of 10, 9, and 5. The average assessment is 8, so students B and C will receive higher marks for their assessments than student D. In essence, the grade for assessments is the grade for grading purposes.

www.it-ebooks.info

The submission settings

The submission settings is where you enter instructions for users. You also set limits on how many files students can upload in the workshop and how large these files can be. This is where you partially answer the question, that is, what will you have each student do? Following is the screenshot of **Submission settings**:



The user will see the **Instructions for submission** label when he or she clicks on the workshop.

The **Maximum number of submission attachments** and **Maximum submission attachment size** determine the size of a file and how many files the user can upload.

Late submissions allow users to submit their work after the deadline. The deadline is set further down the page.

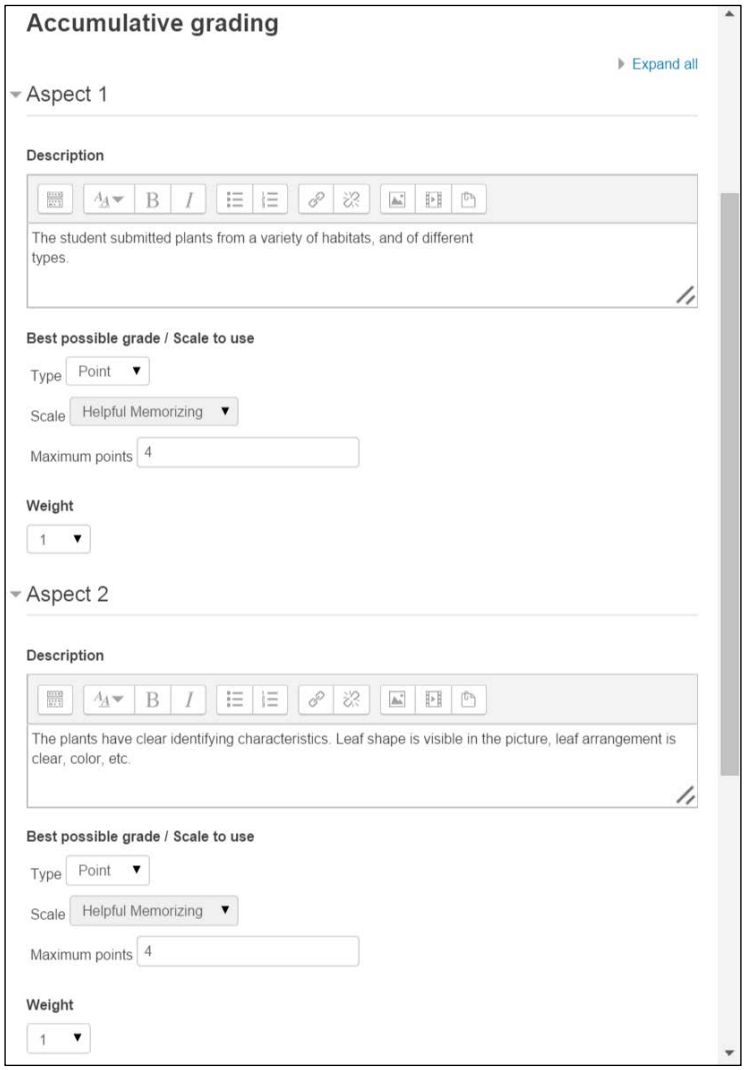
www.it-ebooks.info

Assessment settings

The settings in this section are used to give the users instructions for how to perform their assessments and determine when to present the user with examples to assess.

The actual criteria used in the assessment are not created on this page. Instead, the criteria are created under **Administration | Workshop administration | Edit assessment form**.

We will cover the process on how to create the assessment form later. However, on this page, we will just give the user instructions for the assessment:



www.it-ebooks.info

Feedback settings

If the **Overall feedback** mode is enabled, a textbox appears at the bottom of the assessment form. Students who will perform assessments can enter feedback in this textbox. You can make these comments optional or required.

The settings for feedback attachments determine whether the person who is assessing can upload a file(s) with their assessment. The student who submitted the work will see the attachment(s) with the assessment.

The **Conclusion** field gives the teacher a place to write a message that students can see after the workshop is finished. For example, you can instruct students to produce a new work based on the feedback that they received in the workshop, or instruct them to write a blog post reflecting the activity, or just congratulate them on a job well done.

Example submissions settings

If the workshop uses examples, users can assess an example(s) of work provided by the teacher. The user's assessment of the example is then compared to the assessment provided by the teacher. This enables users to practice assessing work before they assess each other's work.

Users receive a grade for how well their assessment agrees with the assessment provided by the teacher. However, the grade is not counted in the gradebook.

Availability settings

The settings under this section answer the question: when will students be allowed to submit their assignments and assessments?

Note that the submissions and assessments can open on the same day. However, assessments cannot open before submissions (there would be nothing to assess).

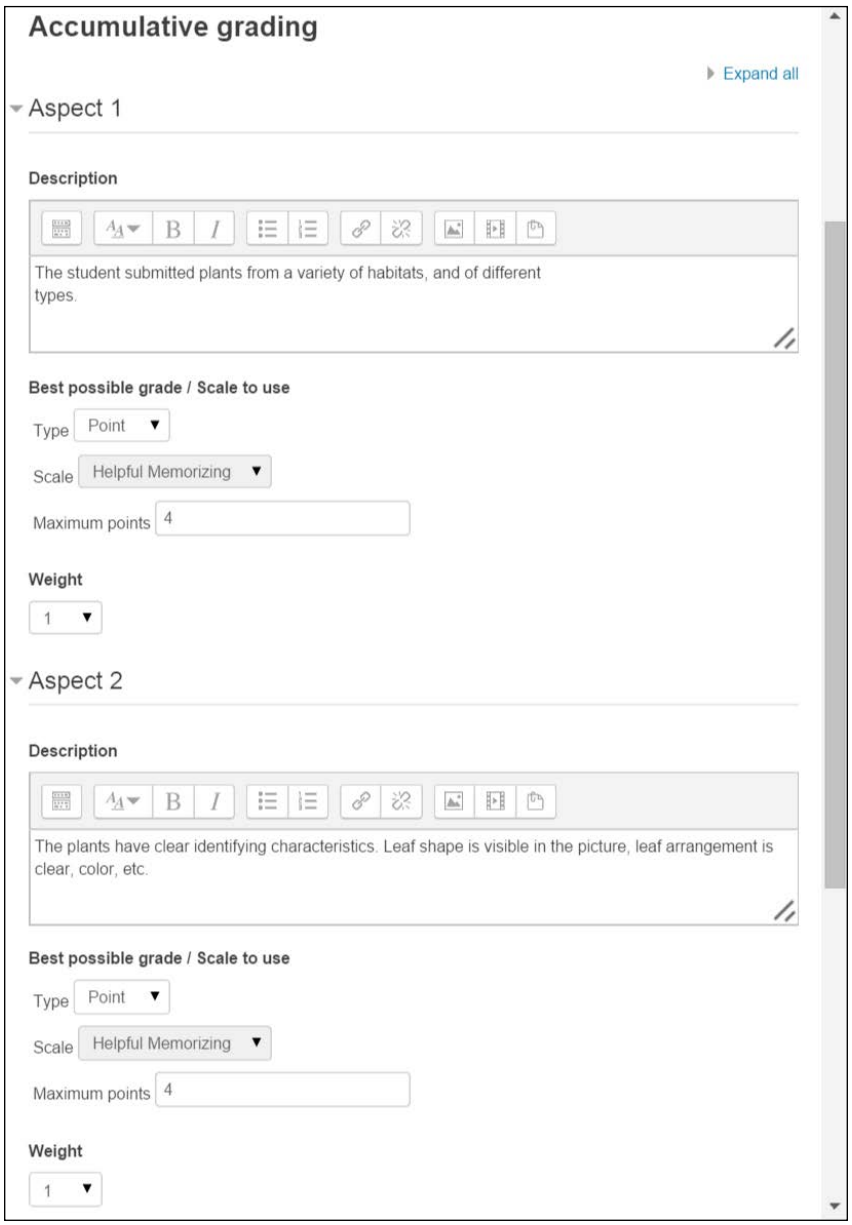
If you enable the **Switch to the next phase** setting after the submissions deadline, then after the submission deadline, the workshop will automatically switch to the assessment phase. If you do not enable this setting, the teacher will have to manually advance the workshop to the assessment phase.

If you have the workshop automatically advanced to the assessment phase, you should also have the workshop automatically allocate assessments to the students. If you don't have the workshop automatically assign assessments to the students, it will advance to the assessment phase; there will be no assessments for students to perform. Setting up automatic allocations is performed under **Administration** | **Workshop administration** | **Allocate submissions** | **Scheduled allocation**.

www.it-ebooks.info

The edit assessment form page

On this page, you enter the assessment criteria. The exact contents of this page will change, depending on the type of assessment that you selected on the workshop settings page. In the following screenshot, the workshop grading strategy is set to **Accumulative grading**:



www.it-ebooks.info

Making the maximum grade a multiple of the number of assessment elements enable students to more easily interpret their grades. For example, suppose a workshop is assessed for five elements. For each element, the assessor will choose from four statements:

A—The workshop does not meet this requirement anyway (0 points)

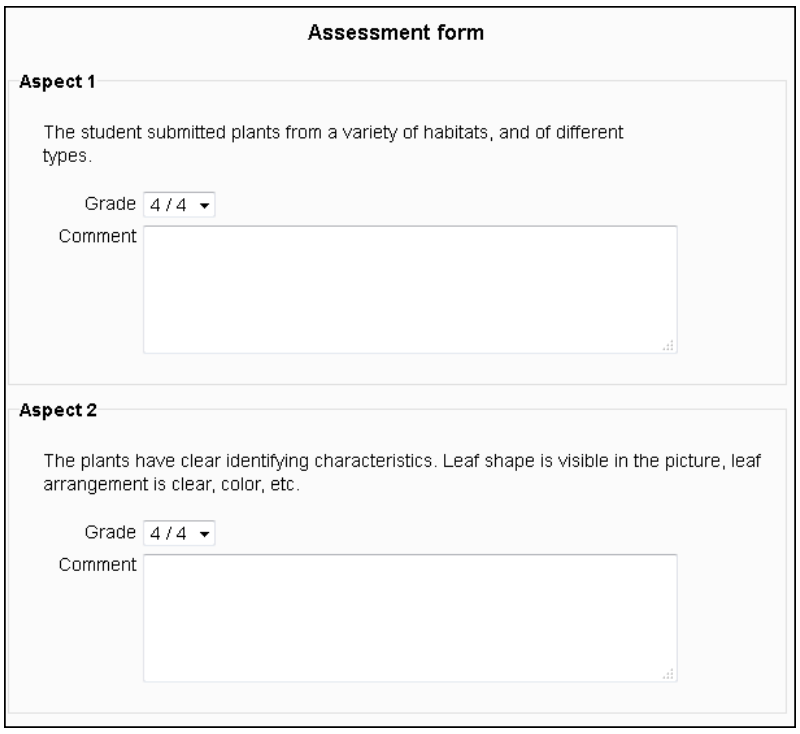
B—The workshop partially meets this requirement (1 point)

C—The workshop meets this requirement (2 points)

D—The workshop exceeds this requirement (3 points)

You can assign a point value of zero for each A selection, one point for each B selection, two points for each C selection, and three points for each D selection. Then, each element will be worth a maximum of three points. With five elements, the workshop will have a maximum grade of 15. This will make it easy for the student to interpret his or her grade.

When the student conducts an assessment, this is how the assessment form looks:

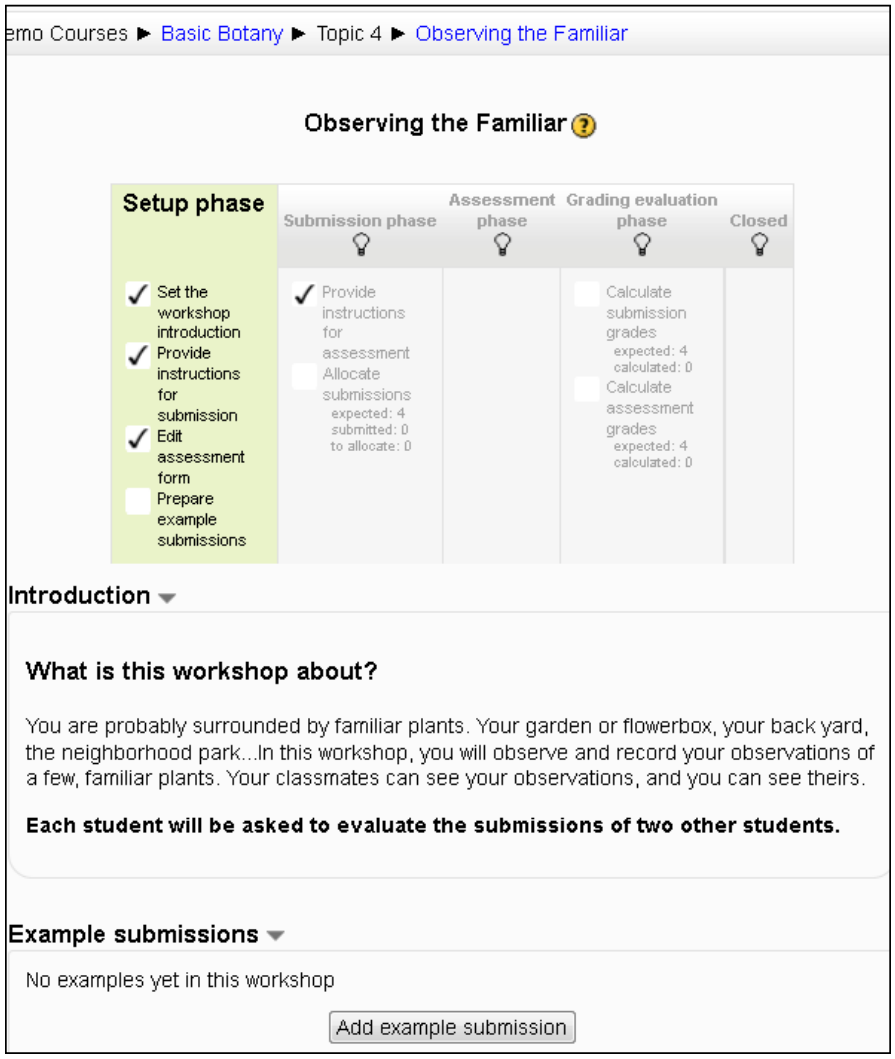


Note that for each assessment criteria, the student can enter comments.

www.it-ebooks.info

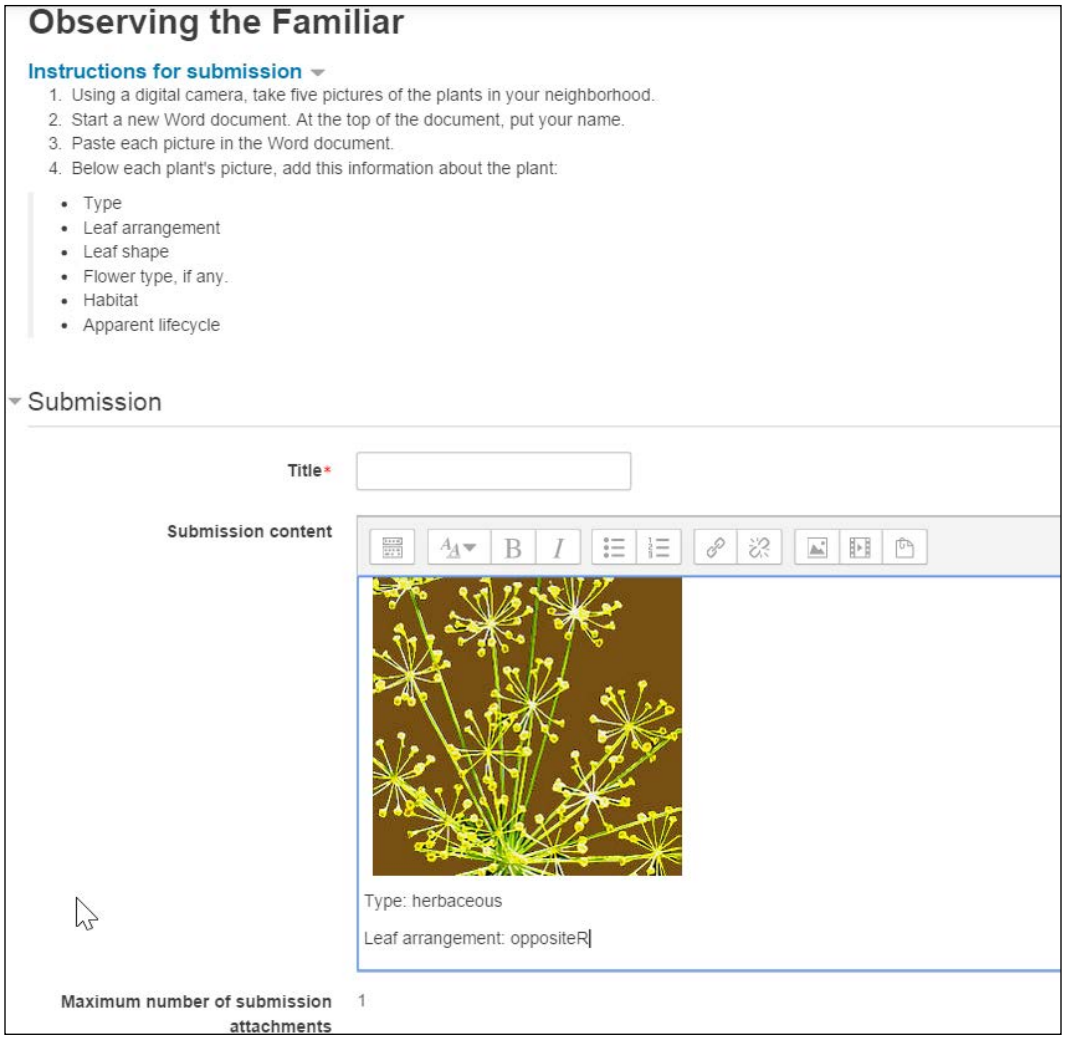
Adding an example to the workshop

After you save the workshop settings and the assessment form, you can add an example to your workshop. Selecting a workshop will give you the following screen:



www.it-ebooks.info

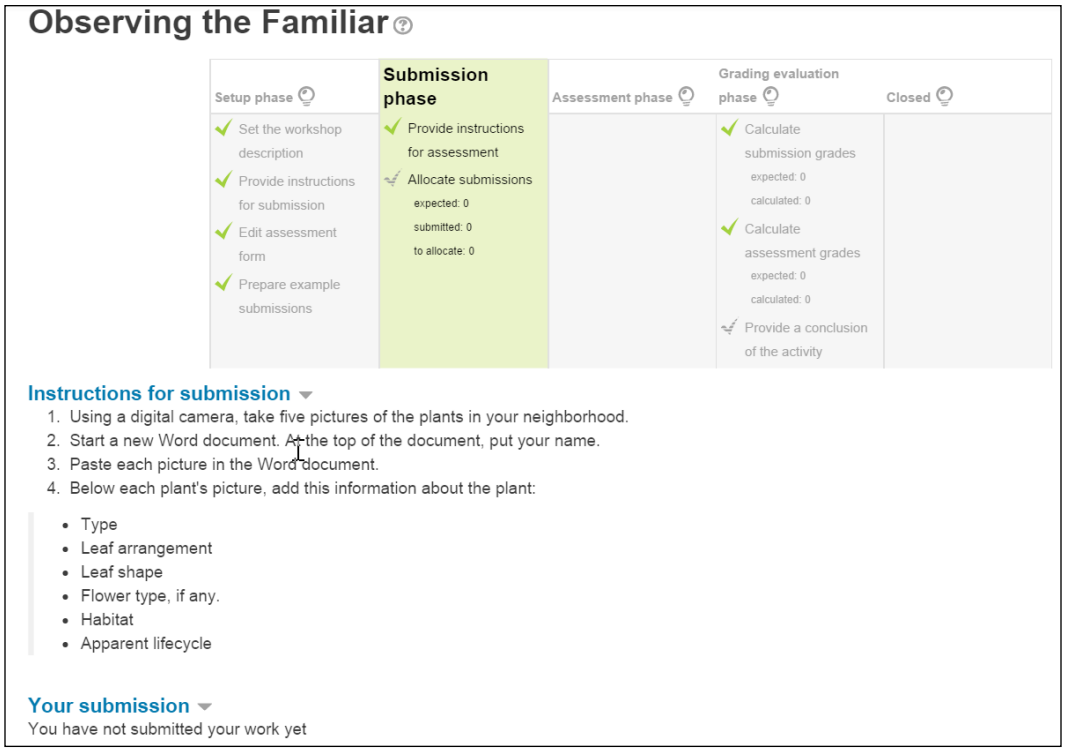
To add an example submission, let's begin by clicking on the **Add example submission** button. This brings you to a page that displays the same assessment instructions that your users will see. This is where you can upload the example to be assessed:



www.it-ebooks.info

After you save the example, Moodle displays a message to say that you must assess the example, as shown in the following screenshot:

After you assess the example, Moodle returns you to the workshop's home page. You will see the progress that you have made, which is indicated on this page:



www.it-ebooks.info

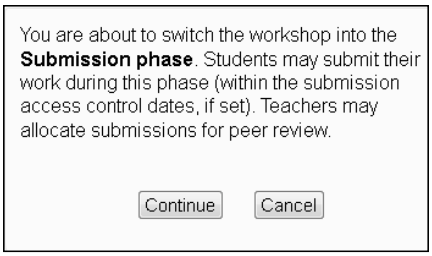
Note that the next step will be for the teacher to allocate the student submissions for assessment. However, no one has submitted anything yet. At this point, the teacher waits for students to submit their work.

The submission phase – students submit their work

Although the teacher has finished setting up the workshop and is ready for students to submit their work, students may still see a message: **The workshop is currently being set up. Wait until this is switched to the next phase**.

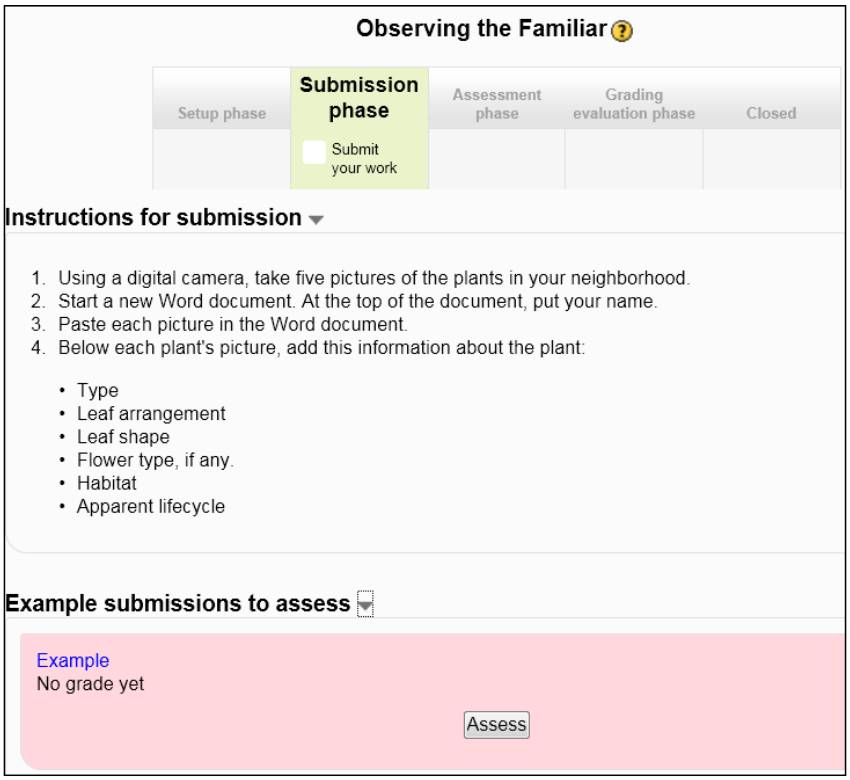
The teacher must manually switch the workshop from one phase to the next. Even if you're done with the setup and ready to accept submissions, Moodle doesn't know it.

To switch to the next phase, the teacher must click on the light bulb before this phase. In our example, the teacher clicked on the light bulb before the submission phase and saw this message:



www.it-ebooks.info

Now, when the student selects this workshop, he/she sees a prompt to submit work:



Note that the student can also assess the example at this point. On the settings page for **Mode of examples assessment** in this workshop, we selected **Voluntary**. Therefore, this example is not required. If we had made assessing the example mandatory, the student would receive a message that he/she cannot submit work until the example is assessed.

Allocating submissions

As soon as students begin submitting their work, you can start allocating these submissions to other students for assessment. Do this under **Workshop administration | Allocate submissions**. You can allocate submissions manually or randomly.

If you perform a random allocation, all the submissions that were sent up to that point in time will be allocated to other students for assessment. However, submissions sent after the random allocation will not be automatically allocated. You will need to perform another random allocation for the next submission, and so on, until the workshop is complete.

www.it-ebooks.info

The assessment phase

When you move the workshop to the assessment phase, the allocations that you made during the submission phase become available to students. In this phase, students will actually assess each other's work.

The grading evaluation phase

When you move the workshop to this phase, you can tell Moodle to automatically calculate the grades of students. You can also override these grades and enter your own grades.

Students can no longer modify the submissions that they have sent in.

The closed phase

When you close a workshop, the final grades are written in the course's gradebook.

Summary

Moodle offers several options for student-to-student and student-to-teacher interaction. When deciding which social activities to use, consider the level of structure and amount of student-to-student/student-to-teacher interaction you want. For example, chats and wikis offer relatively unstructured environments with lots of opportunities for the student-to-student interaction. These are good ways of relinquishing some control of the class to students. A forum offers more structure because entries are classified on the basis of topics. It can be moderated by the teacher, making it even more structured. A workshop offers the most structure, by virtue of the set assessment criteria that students must use when evaluating each other's work. Note that as activities become more structured, the opportunity for students to get to know one another decreases.

You may want to introduce a chat and/or forum at the beginning of a course to build *esprit de corps* among students and then move to a collaborative wiki (such as a group writing project). Finally, after the students have learned more about each other and are comfortable working together, you can use a workshop for their final project.

In the next chapter, you will learn about groups and cohorts. You will see how to segregate students in a course into teams. You will also see how to use cohorts to enroll and unenroll large groups of students.

www.it-ebooks.info

www.it-ebooks.info

12
Groups and Cohorts

This chapter shows you how to use groups to separate students in a course into teams. You will also learn how to use cohorts to mass enroll students into courses.

Groups versus cohorts

Groups and cohorts are both collections of students. There are several differences between them. We can sum up these differences in one sentence, that is; cohorts enable administrators to enroll and unenroll students en masse, whereas groups enable teachers to manage students during a class.

Think of a cohort as a group of students working together through the same academic curriculum. For example, a group of students all enrolled in the same course. Think of a group as a subset of students enrolled in a course. Groups are used to manage various activities within a course.

Cohort is a system-wide or course category-wide set of students.

There is a small amount of overlap between what you can do with a cohort and a group. However, the differences are large enough that you would not want to substitute one for the other.

Cohorts

In this section, we'll look at how to create and use cohorts. You can perform many operations with cohorts in bulk, affecting many students at once.

www.it-ebooks.info

Creating a cohort

To create a cohort, perform the following steps:

1. From the main menu, select **Site administration** | **Users** | **Accounts** | **Cohorts**.
2. On the **Cohorts** page, click on the **Add button**. The **Add New Cohort** page is displayed.
3. Enter a **Name** for the cohort. This is the name that you will see when you work with the cohort.
4. Enter a **Cohort ID** for the cohort. If you upload students in bulk to this cohort, you will specify the cohort using this identifier. You can use any characters you want in the **Cohort ID**; however, keep in mind that the file you upload to the cohort can come from a different computer system. To be safe, consider using only ASCII characters; such as letters, numbers, some special characters, and no spaces in the **Cohort ID option**. For example, *Spring_2012_Freshmen*.
5. Enter a **Description** that will help you and other administrators remember the purpose of the cohort.
6. Click on **Save changes**.

Now that the cohort is created, you can begin adding users to this cohort.

Adding students to a cohort

Students can be added to a cohort manually by searching and selecting them. They can also be added in bulk by uploading a file to Moodle.

Manually adding and removing students to a cohort

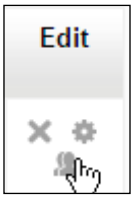
If you add a student to a cohort, that student is enrolled in all the courses to which the cohort is synchronized. If you remove a student from a cohort, that student will be unenrolled from all the courses to which the cohort is synchronized.

We will look at how to synchronize cohorts and course enrollments later. For now, here is how to manually add and remove students from a cohort:

1. From the main menu, select **Site administration** | **Users** | **Accounts** | **Cohorts**.

www.it-ebooks.info

2. On the **Cohorts** page, for the cohort to which you want to add students, click on the people icon:



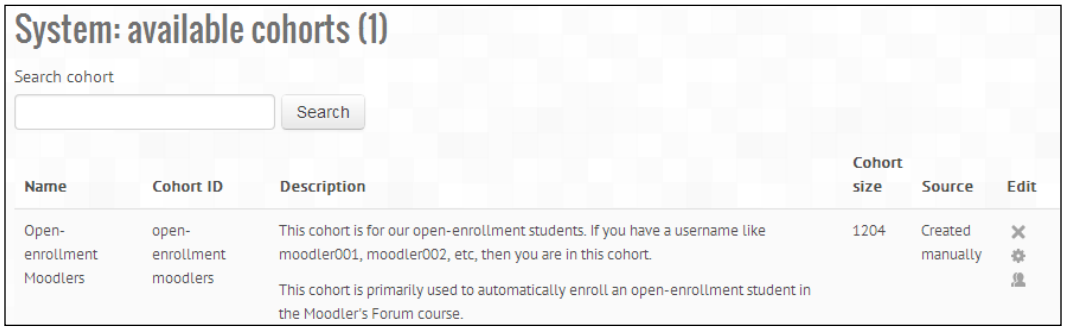
3. The **Cohort Assign** page is displayed. The left-hand side panel displays users that are already in the cohort, if any. The right-hand side panel displays users that can be added to the cohort.
4. Use the **Search** field to search for users in each panel. You can search for text that is in the user name and e-mail address fields.
5. Use the **Add** and **Remove** button to move users from one panel to another.

Adding students to a cohort in bulk – upload

When you upload students to Moodle, you can add them to a cohort.

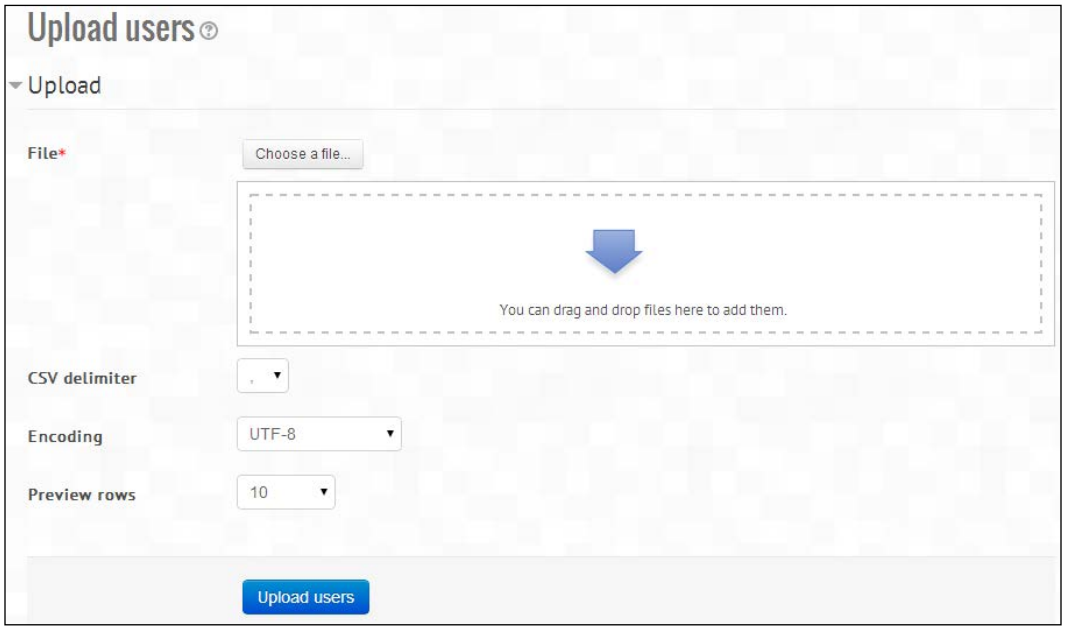
After you have all the students in a cohort, you can quickly enroll and unenroll them in courses just by synchronizing the cohort to the course. If you are going to upload students in bulk, consider putting them in a cohort. This makes it easier to manipulate them later.

Here is an example of a cohort. Note that there are **1,204** students enrolled in the cohort:



www.it-ebooks.info

These students were uploaded to the cohort under **Administration** | **Site Administration** | **Users** | **Upload users**:



The file that was uploaded contained information about each student in the cohort. In a spreadsheet, this is how the file looks:

```
username,email,firstname,lastname,cohort1
moodler_1,bill@williamrice.net,Bill,Binky,open-enrollmentmoodlers
moodler_2,rose@williamrice.net,Rose,Krial,open-enrollmentmoodlers
moodler_3,jeff@williamrice.net,Jeff,Marco,open-enrollmentmoodlers
moodler_4,dave@williamrice.net,Dave,Gallo,open-enrollmentmoodlers
```

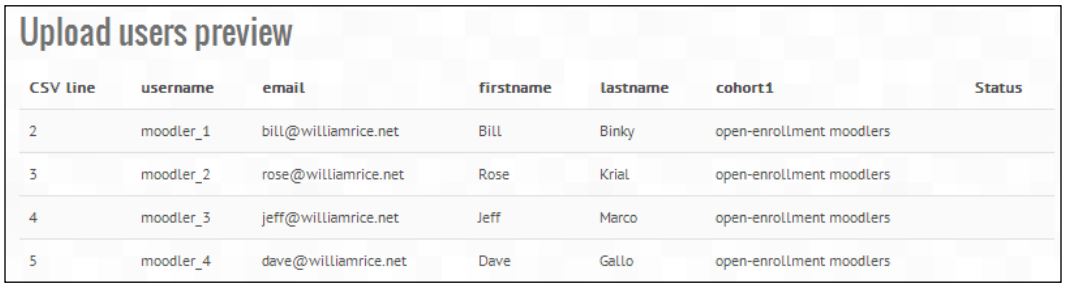
In this example, we have the minimum required information to create new students. These are as follows:

- The username
- The e-mail address
- The first name
- The last name

We also have the cohort ID (the short name of the cohort) in which we want to place a student.

www.it-ebooks.info

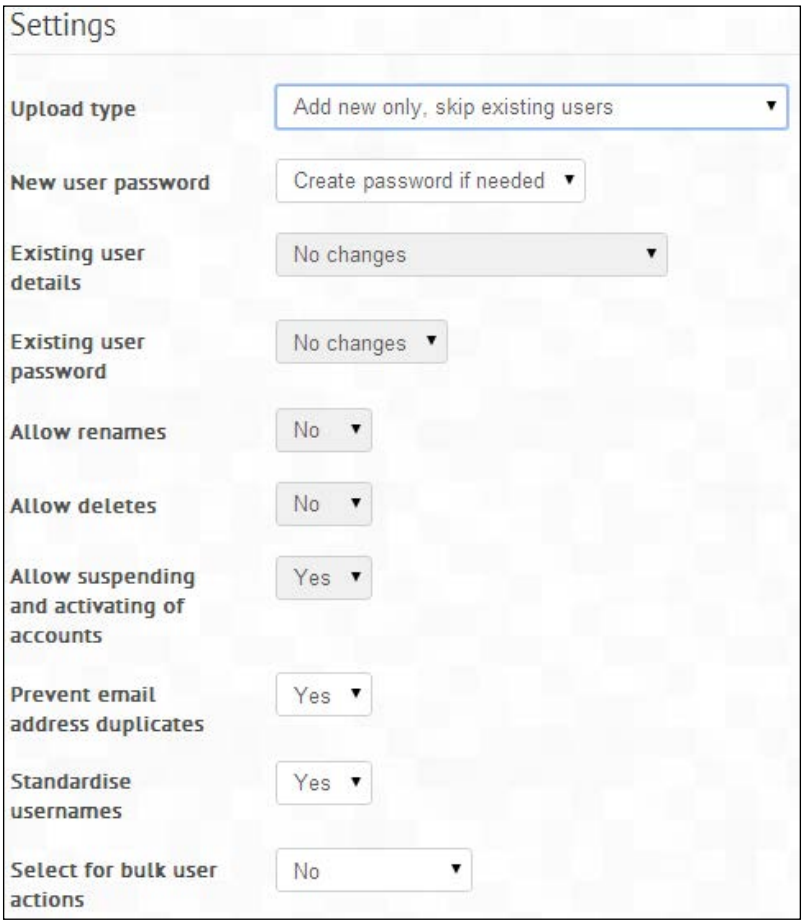
During the upload process, you can see a preview of the file that you will upload:



Upload users preview

CSV line	username	email	firstname	lastname	cohort1	Status
2	moodler_1	bill@williamrice.net	Bill	Binky	open-enrollment moodlers	
3	moodler_2	rose@williamrice.net	Rose	Krial	open-enrollment moodlers	
4	moodler_3	jeff@williamrice.net	Jeff	Marco	open-enrollment moodlers	
5	moodler_4	dave@williamrice.net	Dave	Gallo	open-enrollment moodlers	

Further down on the **Upload users preview** page, you can choose the **Settings** option to handle the upload:

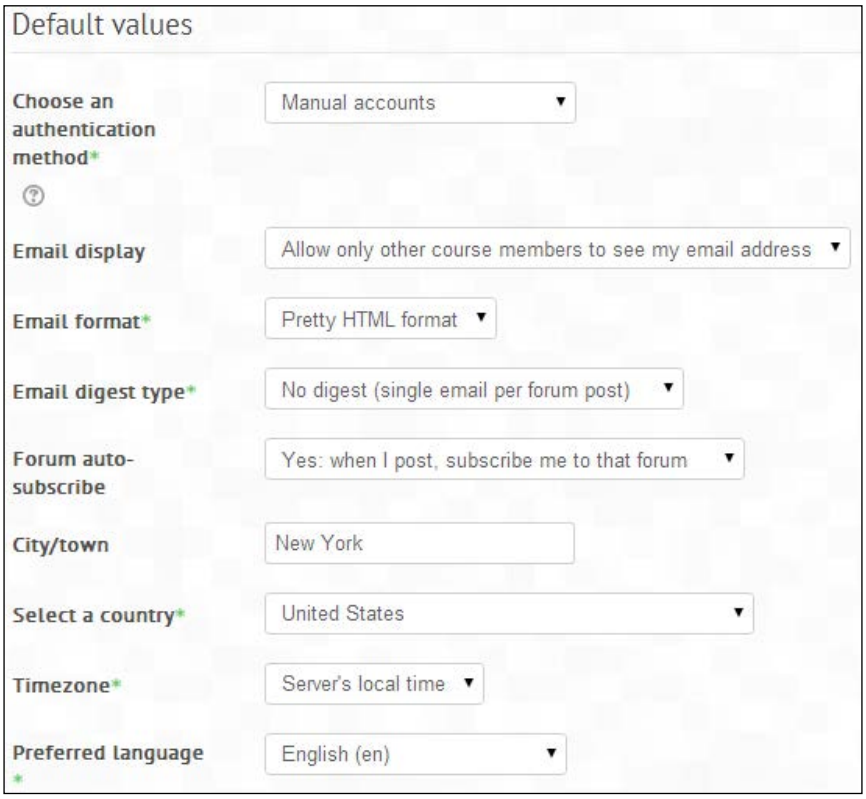


www.it-ebooks.info

Usually, when we upload users to Moodle, we will create new users. However, we can also use the upload option to quickly enroll existing users in the cohort.

You saw previously (*Manually adding and removing students to a cohort*) how to search for and then enroll users in a cohort. However, when you want to enroll hundreds of users in the cohort, it's often faster to create a text file and upload it, than to search your existing users. This is because when you create a text file, you can use powerful tools—such as spreadsheets and databases—to quickly create this file. If you want to perform this, you will find options to **Update existing users** under the **Upload type** field.

In most Moodle systems, a user's profile must include a city and country. When you upload a user to a system, you can specify the city and country in the upload file or omit them from the upload file and assign the city and country to the system while the file is uploaded. This is performed under **Default values** on the **Upload users** page:



www.it-ebooks.info

Now that we have examined some of the capabilities and limitations of this process, let's list the steps to upload a cohort to Moodle:

Prepare a plain file that has, at minimum, the `username`, `email`, `firstname`, `lastname`, and `cohort1` information. If you were to create this in a spreadsheet, it may look similar to the following screenshot:

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	username	email	firstname	lastname	password	city	country	cohort1
2	moodler000	moodlerstudent@williamrice.net	moodler000	changeme	1234ABCD	New York	US	open-enrollment moodlers
3	moodler001	moodlerstudent@williamrice.net	moodler001	changeme	1234ABCD	New York	US	open-enrollment moodlers
4	moodler002	moodlerstudent@williamrice.net	moodler002	changeme	1234ABCD	New York	US	open-enrollment moodlers
5	moodler003	moodlerstudent@williamrice.net	moodler003	changeme	1234ABCD	New York	US	open-enrollment moodlers
6	moodler004	moodlerstudent@williamrice.net	moodler004	changeme	1234ABCD	New York	US	open-enrollment moodlers

1. Under **Administration** | **Site Administration** | **Users** | **Upload users**, select the text file that you will upload.
2. On this page, choose **Settings** to describe the text file, such as delimiter (separator) and encoding.
3. Click on the **Upload users** button.
4. You will see the first few rows of the text file displayed. Also, additional settings become available on this page.
5. In the **Settings** section, there are settings that affect what happens when you upload information about existing users. You can choose to have the system overwrite information for existing users, ignore information that conflicts with existing users, create passwords, and so on.
6. In the **Default values** section, you can enter values to be entered into the user profiles. For example, you can select a city, country, and department for all the users.
7. Click on the **Upload users** button to begin the upload.

Cohort sync

Using the cohort sync enrolment method, you can enroll and unenroll large collections of students at once. Using cohort sync involves several steps:

1. Creating a cohort.
2. Enrolling students in the cohort.
3. Enabling the cohort sync enrollment method.
4. Adding the cohort sync enrollment method to a course.

www.it-ebooks.info

In the previous section, you saw the first two steps: how to create a cohort and how to enroll students in the cohort. In this section, we will cover the last two steps: enabling the cohort sync method and adding the cohort sync to a course.

Enabling the cohort sync enrollment method

To enable the cohort sync enrollment method, you will need to log in as an administrator. This cannot be done by someone who has only teacher rights:

1. Select **Site administration** | **Plugins** | **Enrolments** | **Manage enrol plugins**.
2. Click on the Enable icon located next to **Cohort sync**.
3. Then, click on the **Settings** button located next to **Cohort sync**.
4. On the **Settings** page, choose the default role for people when you enroll them in a course using **Cohort sync**. You can change this setting for each course.
5. You will also choose the **External unenrol** action. This is what happens to a student when they are removed from the cohort.
6. If you choose **Unenrol user from course**, the user and all his/her grades are removed from the course. The user's grades are purged from Moodle. If you were to read this user to the cohort, all the user's activity in this course will be blank, as if the user was never in the course.
7. If you choose **Disable course enrolment** and remove roles, the user and all his/her grades are hidden. You will not see this user in the course's grade book. However, if you were to read this user to the cohort or to the course, this user's course records will be restored.

After enabling the cohort sync method, it's time to actually add this method to a course.

Adding the cohort sync enrollment method to a course

To perform this, you will need to log in as an administrator or a teacher in the course:

1. Log in and enter the course to which you want to add the enrolment method.
2. Select **Course administration** | **Users** | **Enrolment methods**.
3. From the **Add method** drop-down menu, select **Cohort sync**.
4. In **Custom instance name**, enter a name for this enrolment method. This will enable you to recognize this method in a list of cohort syncs.
5. For **Active**, select **Yes**. This will enroll the users.
6. Select the **Cohort** option.

www.it-ebooks.info

7. Select the role that the members of the cohort will be given.
8. Click on the **Save changes** button.

All the users in the cohort will be given a selected role in the course.

Unenroll a cohort from a course

There are two ways to unenroll a cohort from a course. First, you can go to the course's enrollment methods page and delete the enrollment method. Just click on the **X** button located next to the cohort sync field that you added to the course. However, this will not just remove users from the course, but also delete all their course records.

The second method preserves the student records. Once again, go to the course's enrollment methods page located next to the **Cohort sync** method that you added and click on the **Settings** icon. On the **Settings** page, select **No** for **Active**. This will remove the role that the cohort was given. However, the members of the cohort will still be listed as course participants. So, as the members of the cohort do not have a role in the course, they can no longer access this course. However, their grades and activity reports are preserved.

Differences between cohort sync and enrolling a cohort

Cohort sync and enrolling a cohort are two different methods. Each has advantages and limitations.

If you follow the preceding instructions, you can synchronize a cohort's membership to a course's enrollment. As people are added to and removed from the cohort, they are enrolled and unenrolled from the course. When working with a large group of users, this can be a great time saver. However, using cohort sync, you cannot unenroll or change the role of just one person. Consider a scenario where you have a large group of students who want to enroll in several courses, all at once. You put these students in a cohort, enable the cohort sync enrollment method, and add the cohort sync enrollment method to each of these courses. In a few minutes, you have accomplished your goal. Now, if you want to unenroll some users from some courses, but not from all courses, you remove them from the cohort. So, these users are removed from all the courses. This is how cohort sync works.

www.it-ebooks.info

Cohort sync is everyone or no one

When a person is added to or removed from the cohort, this person is added to or removed from all the courses to which the cohort is synced. If that's what you want, great. If not,

An alternative to cohort sync is to enroll a cohort. That is, you can select all the members of a cohort and enroll them in a course, all at once. However, this is a one-way journey. You cannot unenroll them all at once. You will need to unenroll them one at a time.

If you enroll a cohort all at once, after enrollment, users are independent entities. You can unenroll them and change their role (for example, from student to teacher) whenever you wish.

To enroll a cohort in a course, perform the following steps:

1. Enter the course as an administrator or teacher.
2. Select **Administration** | **Course administration** | **Users** | **Enrolled users**.
3. Click on the **Enrol cohort** button. A popup window appears. This window lists the cohorts on the site.
4. Click on **Enrol users** next to the cohort that you want to enroll. The system displays a confirmation message.
5. Now, click on the **OK** button. You will be taken back to the **Enrolled users** page.

Note that although you can enroll all users in a cohort (all at once), there is no button to unenroll them all at once. You will need to remove them one at a time from your course.

Managing students with groups

A group is a collection of students in a course. Outside of a course, a group has no meaning.

Groups are useful when you want to separate students studying the same course. For example, if your organization is using the same course for several different classes or groups, you can use the group feature to separate students so that each group can see only their peers in the course. For example, you can create a new group every month for employees hired that month. Then, you can monitor and mentor them together.

www.it-ebooks.info

After you have run a group of people through a course, you may want to reuse this course for another group. You can use the group feature to separate groups so that the current group doesn't see the work done by the previous group. This will be like a new course for the current group.

You may want an activity or resource to be open to just one group of people. You don't want others in the class to be able to use that activity or resource.

Course versus activity

You can apply the groups setting to an entire course. If you do this, every activity and resource in the course will be segregated into groups.

You can also apply the groups setting to an individual activity or resource. If you do this, it will override the groups setting for the course. Also, it will segregate just this activity, or resource between groups.

The three group modes

For a course or activity, there are several ways to apply groups. Here are the three group modes:

No groups: There are no groups for a course or activity. If students have been placed in groups, ignore it. Also, give everyone the same access to the course or activity.

Separate groups: If students have been placed in groups, allow them to see other students and only the work of other students from their own group. Students and work from other groups are invisible.

Visible groups: If students have been placed in groups, allow them to see other students and the work of other students from all groups. However, the work from other groups is read only.

You can use the *No groups* setting on an activity in your course. Here, you want every student who ever took the course to be able to interact with each other. For example, you may use the *No groups* setting in the news forum so that all students who have ever taken the course can see the latest news.

Also, you can use the *Separate groups* setting in a course. Here, you will run different groups at different times. For each group that runs through the course, it will be like a brand new course.

You can use the *Visible groups* setting in a course. Here, students are part of a large and in-person class; you want them to collaborate in small groups online.

www.it-ebooks.info

Also, be aware that some things will not be affected by the groups setting. For example, no matter what the group setting, students will never see each other's assignment submissions.

Creating a group

There are three ways to create groups in a course. You can:

- Manually create and populate each group
- Automatically create and populate groups based on the characteristics of students
- Import groups using a text file

We'll cover these methods in the following subsections.

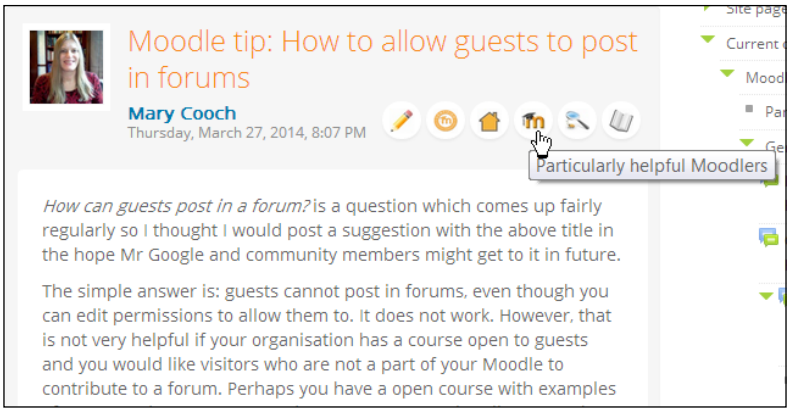
Manually creating and populating a group

Don't be discouraged by the idea of manually populating a group with students. It takes only a few clicks to place a student in a group. To create and populate a group, perform the following steps:

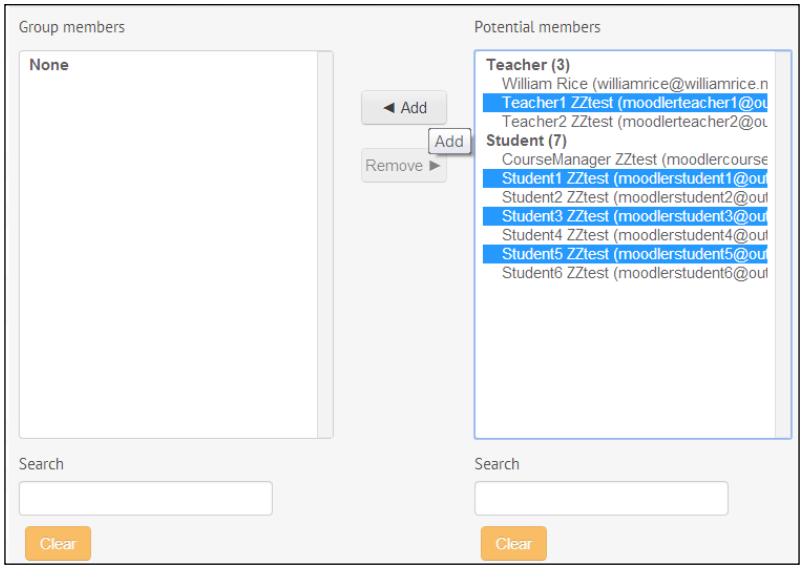
1. Select **Course administration** | **Users** | **Groups**. This takes you to the **Groups** page.
2. Click on the **Create group** button. The **Create group** page is displayed.
3. You must enter a **Name** for the group. This will be the name that teachers and administrators see when they manage a group.
4. The **Group ID** number is used to match up this group with a group identifier in another system. If your organization uses a system outside Moodle to manage students and this system categorizes students in groups, you can enter the group ID from the other system in this field. It does not need to be a number. This field is optional.
5. The **Group description field** is optional. It's good practice to use this to explain the purpose and criteria for belonging to a group.
6. The **Enrolment key** is a code that you can give to students who self enroll in a course. When the student enrolls, he/she is prompted to enter the enrollment key. On entering this key, the student is enrolled in the course and made a member of the group.

www.it-ebooks.info

7. If you add a picture to this group, then when members are listed (as in a forum), the member will have the group picture shown next to them. Here is an example of a contributor to a forum on `http://www.moodle.org` with her group memberships:



8. Click on the **Save changes** button to save the group.
9. On the **Groups** page, the group appears in the left-hand side column. Select this group.
10. In the right-hand side column, search for and select the students that you want to add to this group:



www.it-ebooks.info

Note the **Search** fields. These enable you to search for students that meet a specific criteria. You can search the first name, last name, and e-mail address. The other part of the user's profile information is not available in this search box.

Automatically creating and populating a group

When you automatically create groups, Moodle creates a number of groups that you specify and then takes all the students enrolled in the course and allocates them to these groups. Moodle will put the currently enrolled students in these groups even if they already belong to another group in the course.

To automatically create a group, use the following steps:

1. Click on the **Auto-create groups** button. The **Auto-create groups** page is displayed.
2. In the **Naming scheme** field, enter a name for all the groups that will be created. You can enter any characters. If you enter `@`, it will be converted to sequential letters. If you enter #, it will be converted to sequential numbers. For example, if you enter `Group @`, Moodle will create *Group A*, *Group B*, *Group C*, and so on.
3. In the **Auto-create based on** field, you will tell the system to choose either of the following options:
    - Create a specific number of groups and then fill each group with as many students as needed (**Number of groups**)
    - Create as many groups as needed so that each group has a specific number of students (**Members per group**).
4. In the **Group/member count** field, you will tell the system to choose either of the following options:
    - How many groups to create (if you choose the preceding **Number of groups** option)
    - How many members to put in each group (if you choose the preceding **Members per group** option)
5. Under **Group members**, select who will be put in these groups. You can select everyone with a specific role or everyone in a specific cohort.

www.it-ebooks.info

6. The setting for **Prevent last small group** is available if you choose **Members per group**. It prevents Moodle from creating a group with fewer than the number of students that you specify. For example, if your class has 12 students and you choose to create groups with five members per group, Moodle would normally create two groups of five. Then, it would create another group for the last two members. However, with **Prevent last small group** selected, it will distribute the remaining two members between the first two groups.
7. Click on the **Preview** button to preview the results. The preview will not show you the names of the members in groups, but it will show you how many groups and members will be in each group.

Importing groups

The term *importing groups* may give you the impression that you will import students into a group. The import groups button does not import students into groups. It imports a text file that you can use to create groups. So, if you need to create a lot of groups at once, you can use this feature to do this.

This needs to be done by a site administrator.

If you need to import students and put them into groups, use the upload students feature described in the *Adding student to a cohort in bulk - upload* section. However, instead of adding students to the cohort, you will add them to a course and group. You perform this by specifying the course and group fields in the upload file, as shown in the following code:

```
username,email,firstname,lastname,course1,group1,course2
moodler_1,bill@williamrice.net,Bill,Binky,history101,odds,science101
moodler_2,rose@williamrice.net,Rose,Krial,history101,even,science101
moodler_3,jeff@williamrice.net,Jeff,Marco,history101,odds,science101
moodler_4,dave@williamrice.net,Dave,Gallo,history101,even,science101
```

In this example, we have the minimum needed information to create new students. These are as follows:

- The username
- The e-mail address
- The first name
- The last name

www.it-ebooks.info

We have also enrolled all the students in two courses: `history101` and `science101`. In the `history101` course, `Bill Binky`, and `Jeff Marco` are placed in a group called *odds*. `Rose Krial` and `Dave Gallo` are placed in a group called *even*. In the `science101` course, the students are not placed in any group.

Remember that this student upload doesn't happen on the Groups page. It happens under **Administration** | **Site Administration** | **Users** | **Upload users**.

Summary

Cohorts and groups give you powerful tools to manage your students. Cohorts are a useful tool to quickly enroll and unenroll large numbers of students. Groups enable you to separate students who are in the same course and give teachers the ability to quickly see only those students that they are responsible for.

In previous chapters, you saw how to add content and activities to your course. In this chapter, you learned how to use some tools to manage students in your course. In the next chapter, you will see how to extend your course using the functionality of blocks.

www.it-ebooks.info

13
Extending Your Course by Adding Blocks

Blocks add functionality to your site or your course. This chapter describes many of Moodle's blocks, helps you decide which ones will meet your goals, and tells you how to implement them.

A block usually displays information in a small area in one of the side columns. For example, a block can display a calendar, the latest news, or the students enrolled in a course. Think of a block as a small applet, or widget.

When configuring the site, you can choose to display, hide, and position blocks on the site's front page. When configuring a course, you can also show/hide/position blocks on the course's home page. The procedure is the same whether working on the site's front page or a course's home page. The site's front page is essentially a course. You can also give students permission to add blocks to their personal *my home page* and to their *profile* page.

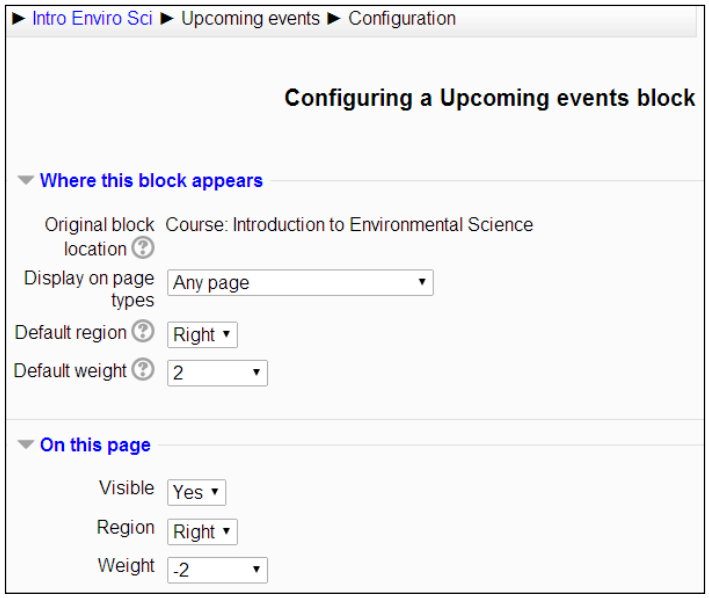
Many blocks are available to you in a standard Moodle installation. You can also install additional blocks, available through `http://moodle.org/`plugins.

Configuring where a block appears

You can configure a block to appear on the course's home page, and on all the resource and activity pages in the course. You can also configure a block to appear on all the courses in a category.

www.it-ebooks.info

For example, in the following screenshot, the user is configuring the **Upcoming Events** block in the **Introduction to Environmental Science** course:



These settings work in combination to determine where a block appears. In some places, some of these settings have no effect. Following is a list of the combinations that you might find most useful.

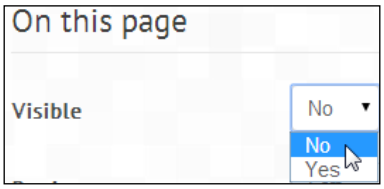
When you add a block to a page, any display settings that you choose will affect the block from that page on, down through the hierarchy of pages. For example, suppose you add a block to the main page of a course, as the user is doing in the preceding screenshot. Any display settings will affect the block on that page, and other pages inside that course.

Because this block is being added to a course page, the block will not be displayed on any pages outside of that course.

www.it-ebooks.info

If you want a block to appear on every page in your site, or on every occurrence of a specific page type, then add the block to the front page of your site. When you do that, under **Block settings** you will see choices for **Page contexts**:

Further down the page, you will see a setting that determines if the block is displayed on this page (that is, on the front page):

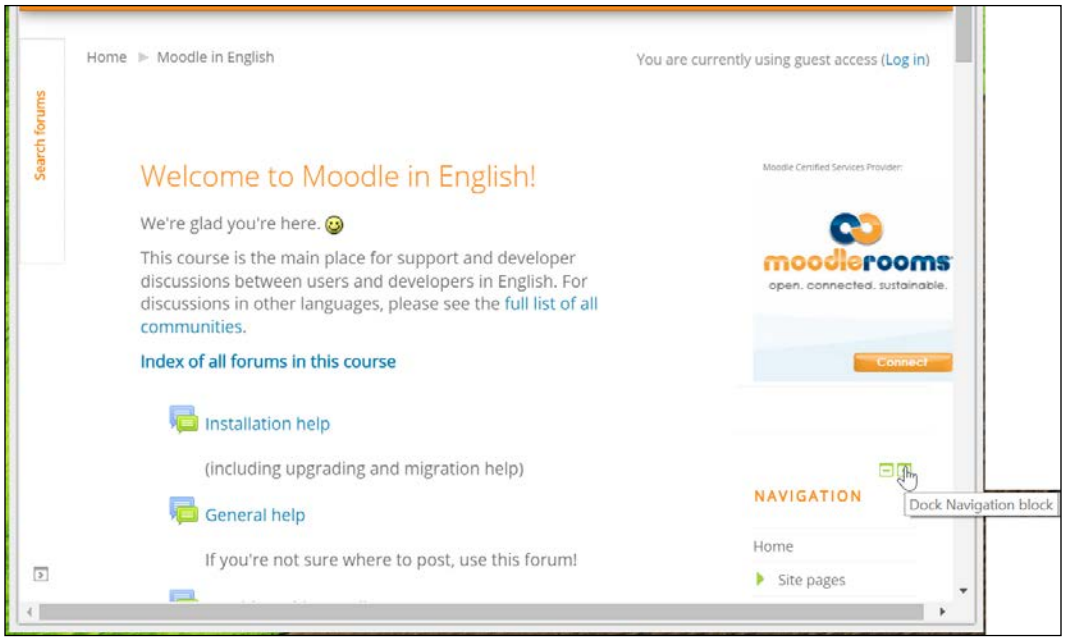


These settings can work together to produce the result that you want. For example, if you are an administrator and want a block to appear on every page in your site except for the front page, add the block to your front page. Choose **Display throughout entire site**, and then for just the front page, set **Visible** to **No**.

You can also add a block to all the courses in a category. From the **Site administration** menu, select **Courses** | **Manage courses and categories**. Then select the category. Add the block to the category page. Then, under the settings for **Where this block appears**, choose which pages in the category will display the block.

www.it-ebooks.info

Many Moodle themes now allow the user to move blocks to a special dock. This dock collapses, saving space on the screen for the main Moodle content. In the next screenshot, you can see that the user has docked the **Search forums** block, and is about to dock the **Navigation** block:



In a responsive theme, the docked blocks will be displayed at the bottom of the page on a small screen.

Now that you know how to configure where your blocks appear, let's look at how you use some of the blocks available to you.

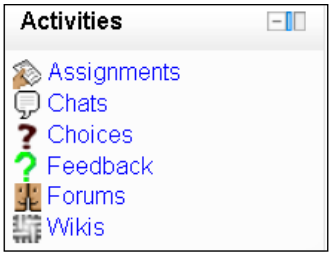
Standard blocks

Moodle gives you many standard blocks that you can add to your courses. Some of the most useful ones are discussed in the following sections.

www.it-ebooks.info

The activities block

The **Activities** block lists all types of activities that are used in the course:



If a type of activity is not used in the course, the link for that type is not presented. The activity type is only shown if your course contains at least one instance of that type. When a user clicks on the type of activity, all those kinds of activities for the course are listed. In the following screenshot, the user clicked on **Resources** in the **Activities** block and a list of the resources in the course is presented:

Topic	Name	Description
Topic 1	The Flow of Energy	Food, heat, lightning, wind, rain, ocean waves...all are examples of energy flowing through the environment. In this page, you will learn the basic terms and concepts you need to understand the flow of energy through the environment.
	Energy Flow in Ecosystems	This page will: • Describe three main laws of physics important to natural systems. • Discuss the second laws of thermodynamics. • Apply the second law to life processes and the environment.
	Nitrogen Cycle Diagram	A diagram of the nitrogen cycle
	The Flow of Energy in Ecosystems	This video shows how energy flows from the Sun, to plants and animals, and through the movement of air and water across our planet. Running time is 7:07.

If this block is on the site's front page, clicking on a type of activity gives a list for the activities on the front page (not for the entire site).

www.it-ebooks.info

The blog menu block

By default, every Moodle user has a personal blog on the site. Selecting this block, as seen in the following screenshot, puts the blog menu into the sidebar of the course:

Notice that this block provides shortcuts to blog entries about the course. If blogging is going to be a part of the course, include this block on the main page of the course.

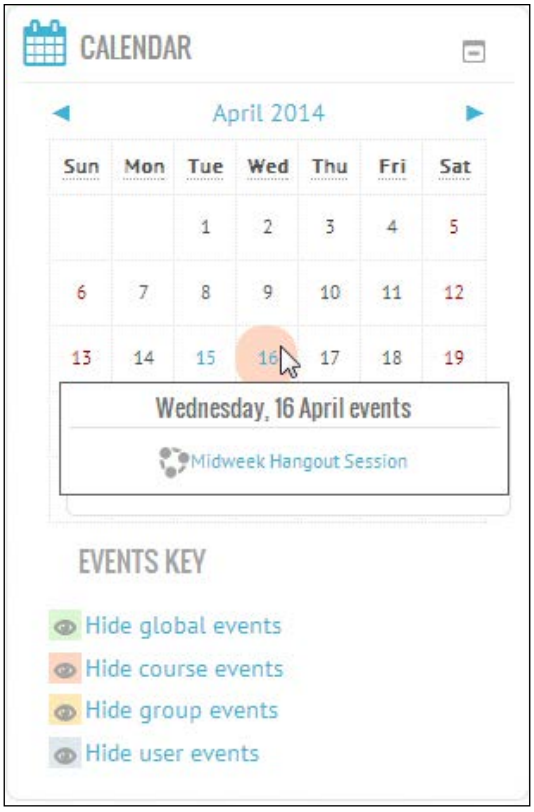
The blog tags block

This block displays a list of the blog tags used site-wide. The tags are listed in an alphabetical order. The more blog entries that use a tag, the larger that tag is:

www.it-ebooks.info

The calendar block

Workshops, assignments, quizzes, and events appear on the **Calendar**:



In the preceding screenshot, you can see that the user is pointing to an event that begins on April 16, 2014. A popup window shows the name of the event. This event was added to this course, so it is a course-wide event.

When the user clicks on one of the four links at the bottom of the **Calendar**, it disables the display of that type of event.

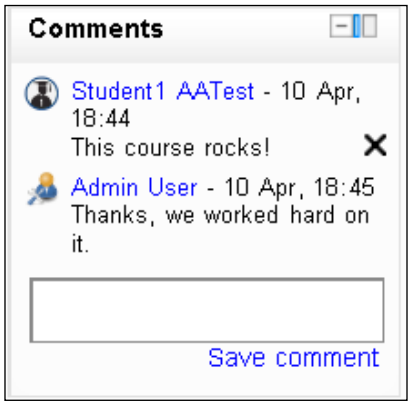
When a deadline is added to an activity in the course, that will automatically be added to the calendar.

www.it-ebooks.info

The comments block

The **Comments** block enables anyone with access to it, to leave and read comments. The comments are all saved, so you can accumulate quite a long list of comments.

In the next screenshot, the user **Student1** is logged in. Notice that **Student1** can delete his comment, but not the comment left by the course administrator:



Students can delete only their own comments. Of course, the teacher, manager, and site administrator can delete anyone's comments.

Because all comments are saved, and the list can get long, you probably want to limit the comment block to a single course. That is, you don't want to add a comment site-wide, or to all the courses in a category. If you do, the block could become crowded with comments (unless this is the effect that you want). The site administrator can decide how many comments are displayed in comments blocks from **Site administration** | **Front page** | **Front page settings**.

Consider adding a **Comments** block to an activity or a resource, and using the first comment to encourage students to leave their feedback, as follows:

www.it-ebooks.info

The course completion block

This block works with course completion tracking. For this block to function, you must first set the criteria for completing the course and completion tracking must be enabled at the site level. This is done under **Course administration** | **Course completion**.

When a student views this block, he/she sees the conditions for course completion and the status of each condition. When a teacher views this block, (s)he sees a report of the completion status for each student in the course.

Course/site summary

If you add this block to the front page of your site, it will display the front page summary that is found under **Site administration** | **Front Page Settings** | **Edit settings**. If you add it to a course page, it will display the course description that is found under **Course administration** | **Edit settings** | **Course summary**.

The courses block

The courses block, like the Navigation block, displays the courses that the student is enrolled in.

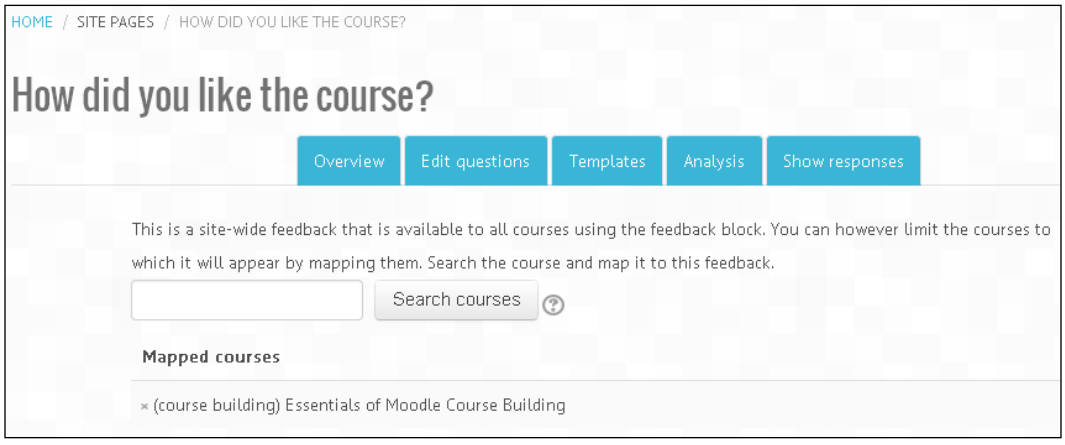
The feedback block

On the front page of your site, you can create a feedback activity. This feedback activity can then be used in all or some of the courses on your site. This way, you don't need to recreate the feedback activity for each course. And since the feedback for each course uses the same questions, you can make meaningful comparisons among the courses.

www.it-ebooks.info

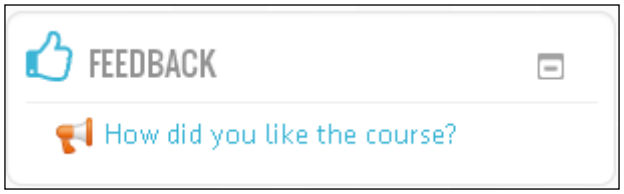
First, you add the feedback activity to the front page, and immediately hide it on the front page. That is what we did in the following example. You can see that the feedback activity is grayed out on the front page in the next screenshot:

Under the **Settings** for the feedback activity, there is a setting to map the activity to all or selected courses:



www.it-ebooks.info

You can see in the preceding example that this feedback activity has been mapped to the course called **Essentials of Moodle Course Building**. When we go to that course and add the feedback block, we see the following:



In short, the **Feedback** block gives the students access to a feedback activity that has been added to the front page, and then mapped to the current course. That feedback activity becomes an activity in the current course.

The HTML block

The **HTML** block creates a block in the sidebar that can hold any HTML (or any web content) that you can put on a Web page. Most experienced Web users are accustomed to the content in the sidebars being an addition to the main content of a page. For example, we put menus and interesting links in the sidebars in most of the blogging software. I suggest you keep with that standard. Use the HTML block to hold content that is an interesting addition to the course, but not essential. For example, you could put an annotated link to another site of interest.

When you edit an HTML block, Moodle gives the same full-featured Web page editor that you get when adding a Web page to a course.

Think of an HTML block as a miniature Web page that you can put into the sidebar of your course.

The latest news block

When you create a new course, by default it has a **News forum**. The **Latest News** block displays the most recent postings from this forum.

Even if the forum is renamed, this block displays the postings. The number of postings displayed in this block is determined in the course settings page, by the field **News items to show**.

Recall that the front page of your site is another course. If the Latest News block is displayed on the site's front page, it displays the latest postings from the site-wide news forum, or site news.

www.it-ebooks.info

If you have set the news forum to e-mail students with new postings, you can be reasonably sure that the students are getting the news, so you might not need to display this block. However, if the news items are of interest to visitors not enrolled in the course, or if the course allows guest access, you probably want to display this block.

The logged in user block

If a visitor is not logged in, Moodle displays small **Login** links in the upper-right corner and bottom center of the page. However, the links are not very noticeable. The **Logged in user block** is much more prominent. One advantage to the **Logged in user block** over the small **Login** links is the block's greater visibility.

If you want the **Login** block to be displayed on every page of your site, set **Page context to Display throughout the entire site** and **Restrict to these page typesto***.

After the user logs in, this block displays information about the current user. The information is taken from the user's profile. It also displays a logout link.

The messages block

The **Messages** block provides a shortcut to Moodle's Messages center. It displays the latest messages received. This is a shortcut to the page you would reach by selecting **Administration** | **My profile** | **Messages**.

The My latest badges block

This block displays the badges that the student has earned on your site. It can be added to the front page, the user's **My Home page**, and to the main page of a course. It probably makes the most sense when added to a user's My Home page.

www.it-ebooks.info

The My private files block

If the site administrator enables the repository for private files, then when the user is selecting a file to be uploaded into a course (such as when submitting an assignment), the user will be able to choose from files that only he/she can access. These files are stored under **My profile | My private files**. Also, users can upload files to their private files even when those files are not part of a course.

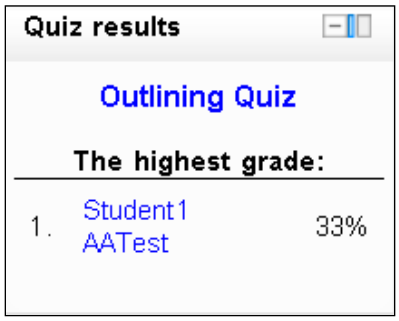
This block gives the user a shortcut to access his or her private files.

The online users block

The **Online users** block shows who is in the current course at the present time. If it is on the site's front page, it shows who is on the site. When it is added to a course, it can be a good way to lessen the isolation of e-learning. The block is updated every few minutes.

The quiz results block

The **Quiz results** block is available only if there is a quiz in the course. It displays the highest and/or lowest grades achieved on a quiz within a course. You can anonymize the students' names in the block.

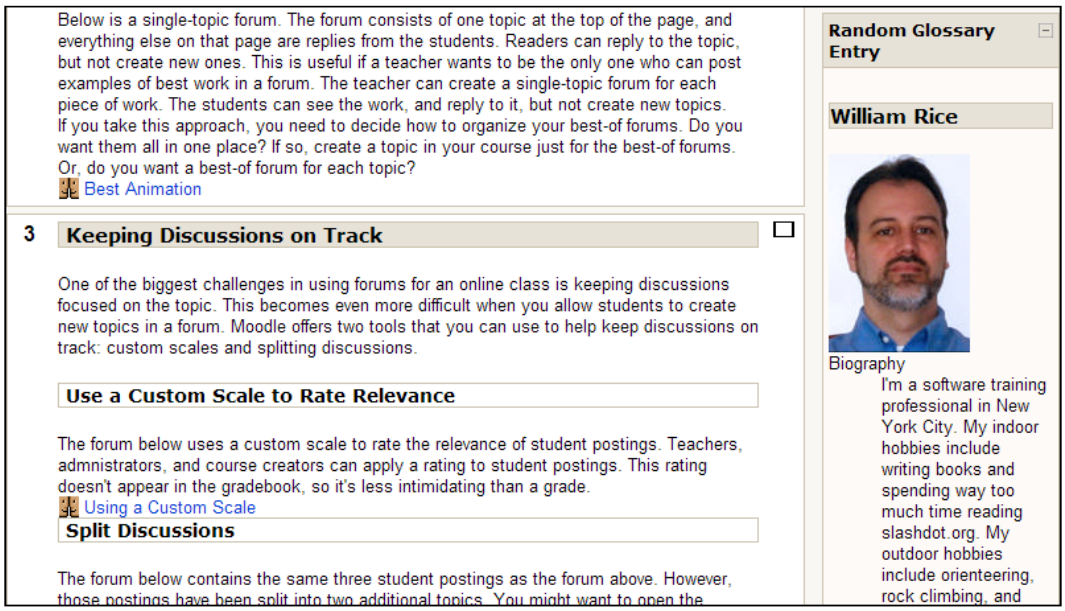


You can add this block to your course multiple times. So, you could have a Quiz results block for each quiz in the course.

www.it-ebooks.info

The random glossary entry block

Moodle's **Random glossary** block pulls entries from a selected glossary and displays them in a block. It can pull entries from any glossary that is available from that course. In the following screenshot, the glossary that the block is using is a class directory, where each student is an entry in the glossary:



Even though the name is **Random glossary** block, you can control the order in which the entries are pulled from the glossary, and how often the block displays a new entry. For example, in the preceding screenshot, the **Random glossary** block is set to display each entry in order, and to change each day.

Here are some ideas for using the **Random glossary** block for something other than a glossary:

- Highlights from the work that past students in this class submitted. If the class is working on a long-term project, create a glossary that contains the best work submitted by previous classes who completed that project. Display the glossary while the current class is working on that project.
- Inspirational or informative quotes related to the field of study.

www.it-ebooks.info

- If you're teaching in a corporate setting, consider putting rules and procedures into their own glossaries. You could create a separate glossary for each type of rule or procedure. For example, a human resources policies glossary, a purchase order glossary, and so on. Then, display random entries from these glossaries in the appropriate courses.
- Create a glossary with past exam questions and their answers. Students can use this as another resource to prepare for their exams.
- Funny anecdotes related to the field of study.
- Inspiring or amusing images and audio.
- Common mistakes and their corrections. For example, how to spot software bugs, or common foreign language grammar errors.

The recent activity block

When the **Recent activity** block is added to the home page of a course, it lists all the student and teacher activity in that course since the user's last login. The link for a full report of recent activity displays a page that enables you to run reports on course activity.

When added to the site's front page, it lists all the student and teacher activity on the front page but not in the individual courses, since the user's last login. If someone is logged in as a guest user, this block displays any activity since the last time that guest logged in. If guest users are constantly coming to your site, this block may be of limited use to them. One strategy is to omit this block from the site's front page so that anonymous users don't see it, and add it only to courses that require users to authenticate.

The remote RSS feeds block

When the **Remote RSS feeds** block is added to a course, the course creator chooses or creates the RSS feeds to display in that block.

www.it-ebooks.info

The following example shows an RSS feed from an adventure racing site. This feed is the result of the configuration that is shown in the following screenshot:

A feed can be added by the site administrator, and then selected by the course creator for use in an RSS block. Or, when the teacher adds the RSS block, he or she can add a feed at that time. If **Share feed** is set to **Yes**, the new feed then becomes available to all other teachers, for use in all other courses.

The search forums block

The **Search Forums** block provides a search function for forums. It does not search other types of activities or resources. When this block is added to the site's Moodle search forums front page, it searches only the forums on the front page.

When it's added to the main page of a course, it searches only the forums in that course. It searches post titles and content.

This block is different from the **Search courses** field that automatically appears on the site's front page. The **Search courses** field searches course names and descriptions, not forums.

Section links

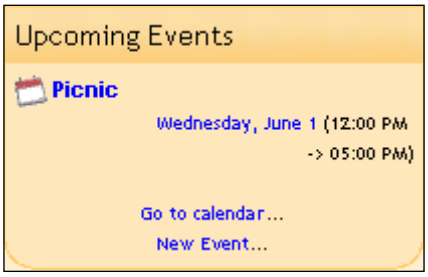
The **Topics** block displays links to the numbered topics or weeks in a course. Clicking on a link advances the page to that topic.

www.it-ebooks.info

The upcoming events block

The **Upcoming Events** block is an extension of the **Calendar** block. It gets event information from your calendar. By default, the **Upcoming Events** block displays 10 events; the maximum is 20. It looks ahead a default of 21 days; the maximum is 200. If there are more upcoming events than the maximum chosen for this block, the most distant events will not be shown.

This block is helpful for reminding students of the tasks they need to complete in the course.



Summary

When deciding which blocks to display, consider the comfort level of your students. If they're experienced Web surfers, they may be comfortable with a full complement of blocks displaying information about the course. Experienced Web surfers are adept at ignoring information they don't need (when was the last time you paid attention to a banner ad on the Web?). If your students are new computer users, they may assume that the presence of a block means that it requires their attention or interaction. And remember that you can turn blocks off and on, as needed.

In the next chapter, we will look at features that help teachers in managing their courses, specifically grading and activity logs.

www.it-ebooks.info

www.it-ebooks.info

14
Features for Teachers

Moodle offers several features that are of special interest to teachers. These focus on determining how well your students are progressing through a course. Reports and logs show you who has done what on your site, or in your course. And grades not only tell you how well your students are scoring, but can also be curved and weighted very easily.

In this chapter, we'll show you how to:

- View course logs and activity reports to determine what students have done
- View and categorize grades
- Apply extra credit and weighting
- Use a teachers-only forum

Logs and reports

Moodle keeps detailed logs of all the activities that users perform on your site. You can use these logs to determine who has been active on your site, what they did, and when they did it.

Some reports are available at the course level. Teachers can access these reports. Other reports are available at the site level. You must be a site administrator to access these reports. Both are covered in this chapter.

Moodle has a modest report viewing system built into it. However, for sophisticated log analysis, you need to look outside Moodle.

To view the logs and reports for a course, you must be logged in as a teacher or a manager. Then, select **My courses** | **Name of course** | **Reports**.

www.it-ebooks.info

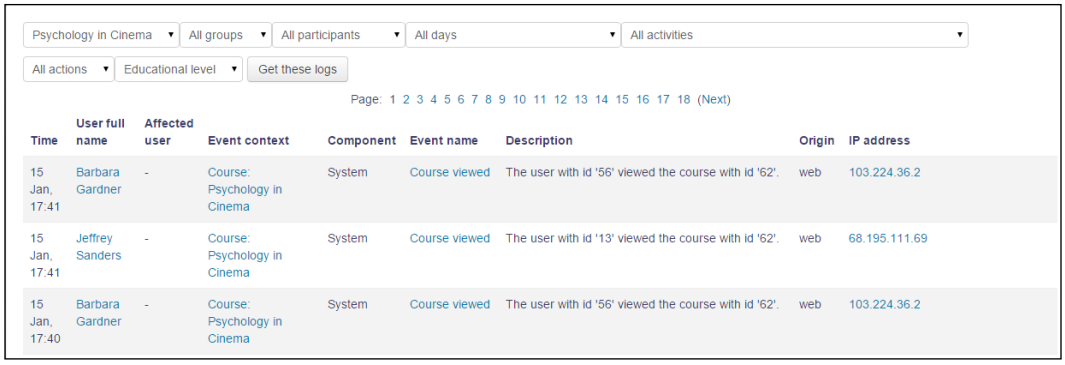
You can use this page to display three different kinds of information. From the top to bottom, they are as follows:

- Logs
- Live logs
- Activity report
- Course participation
- Activity completion
- Statistics

Let's look at each one separately.

Viewing course logs

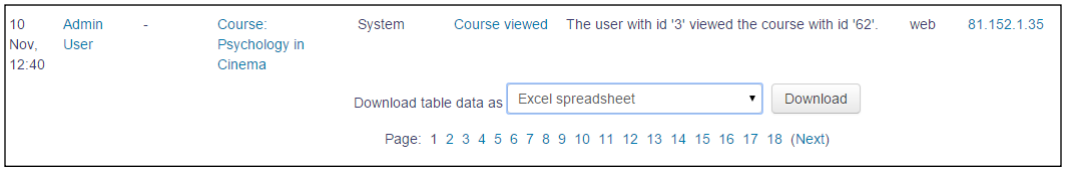
Notice that Moodle's display of the log files can be filtered by course, participant, day, activity, and action. You can select a single value for any of these filters, as seen in the following screenshot:



You cannot select multiple values for any of these filters. That is, you cannot look at the logs for two courses at the same time, four participants at the same time, or for a few days at the same time. If you want a more sophisticated view of the logs, you must use a tool other than Moodle's built-in log viewer.

www.it-ebooks.info

Fortunately, you can download the logs as text files and import them into another tool, such as a spreadsheet. To download the logs, use the drop-down menu at the bottom of the page, as seen in the following screenshot:



For example, you could use Excel's data menu to format, chart, and analyze the data. A complete discussion of Excel's data functions is beyond the scope of this book, but there are many sources of help for these functions.

The following figure is an example of a table created in Excel from imported data. I've sorted the data by participant (`Full name`), so that at a glance, I can see which users are the most active:

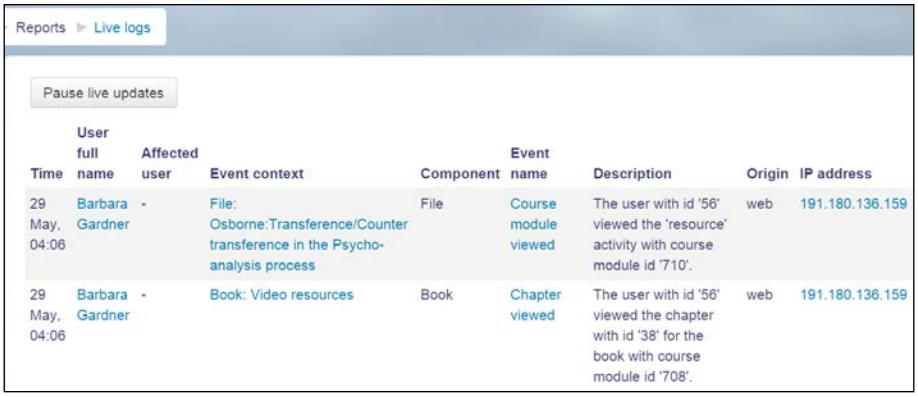
	A	B	C	D	E	
1	Course	Time	IP Address	Full name	Action	Information
2	FreePics	2007 February 24 19:34	82.27.68.16	LisaMarie Alexandria	course view	Free Wild Pictures
3	FreePics	2007 January 16 19:43	82.27.73.24	LisaMarie Alexandria	course view	Free Wild Pictures
4	FreePics	2007 January 16 19:23	82.27.73.24	LisaMarie Alexandria	resource view	Common Burdock in the Spring
5	FreePics	2007 January 16 19:23	82.27.73.24	LisaMarie Alexandria	course view	Free Wild Pictures
6	FreePics	2007 January 16 19:23	82.27.73.24	LisaMarie Alexandria	course enrol	Deer Habits
7	Debris Huts	2007 February 18 16:43	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	course view	Debris Huts
8	Debris Huts	2007 February 18 16:43	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	course enrol	Debris Huts
9	Bow Drill	2007 February 18 16:43	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	course view	Bow Drill Firestarting
10	Bow Drill	2007 February 18 16:43	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	course enrol	Debris Huts
11	Tracking Basic	2007 February 18 16:42	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	user view all	
12	Tracking Basic	2007 February 18 16:41	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	course view	Tracking Basics
13	Tracking Basic	2007 February 18 16:41	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	course enrol	Debris Huts
14	Water's Edge	2007 February 18 16:40	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	course enrol	Debris Huts
15	Water's Edge	2007 February 18 16:40	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	course view	By the Water's Edge
16	FreePics	2007 February 18 16:31	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	course view	Free Wild Pictures
17	FreePics	2007 February 18 16:31	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	resource view	Wild Plant Pictures
18	FreePics	2007 February 18 16:31	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	course view	Free Wild Pictures
19	FreePics	2007 February 18 16:31	86.136.132.	Bradford Sorens	course enrol	Debris Huts

Notice that the preceding table contains information from several courses. You can see that in column A. There are two ways to get information from several courses in the same place. First, you could run the report as an administrator, from the administrative interface. This enables you to run a report for all the courses on the site. Second, as a teacher, you could download the data from each course separately and combine it in one Excel sheet or workbook.

www.it-ebooks.info

Viewing live logs

Live logs show what has happened in the current course, for the past hour:

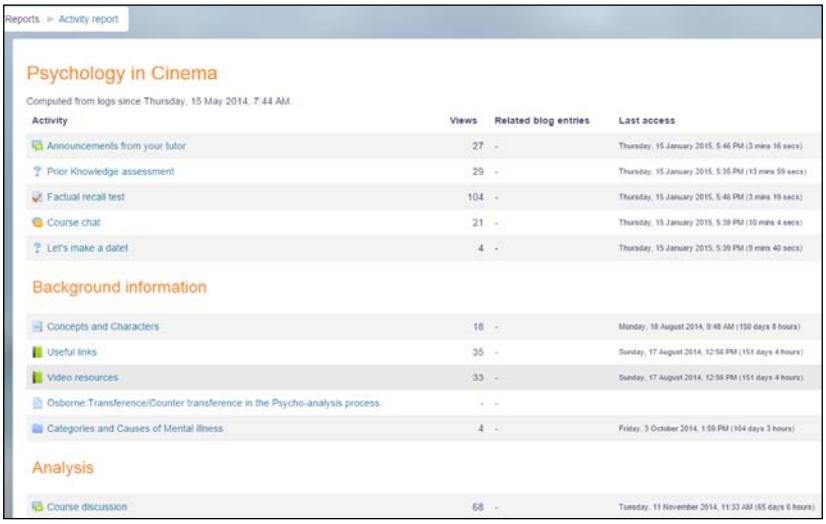


Time	User full name	Affected user	Event context	Component	Event name	Description	Origin	IP address
29 May, 04:06	Barbara Gardner	-	File: Osborne:Transference/Counter transference in the Psycho-analysis process	File	Course module viewed	The user with id '56' viewed the 'resource' activity with course module id '710'.	web	191.180.136.159
29 May, 04:06	Barbara Gardner	-	Book: Video resources	Book	Chapter viewed	The user with id '56' viewed the chapter with id '38' for the book with course module id '708'.	web	191.180.136.159

Use live logs if you want to observe the students as they use the course. For example, you might monitor the course while students take a scheduled quiz.

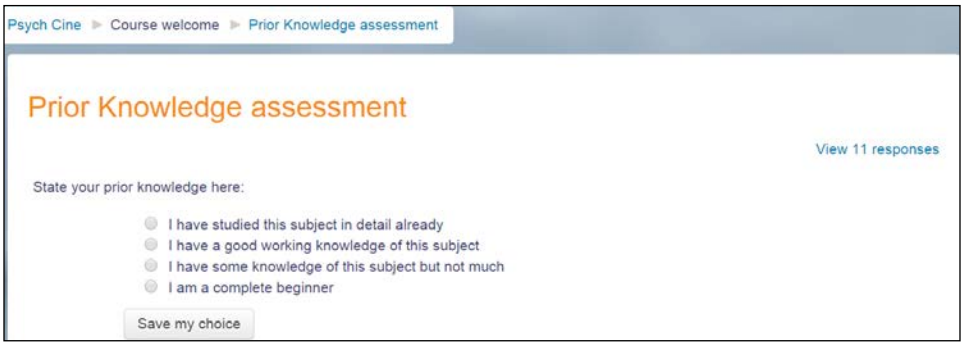
Viewing activity reports

An activity report offers a user-friendly view of an activity in a single course. While the logs show complete information, an activity report just shows the course items, what was done in each item, and the time of the latest activity for that item. When you first select **Activity report** from the menu, you are presented with a list of all the activities in the course, as seen in the following screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

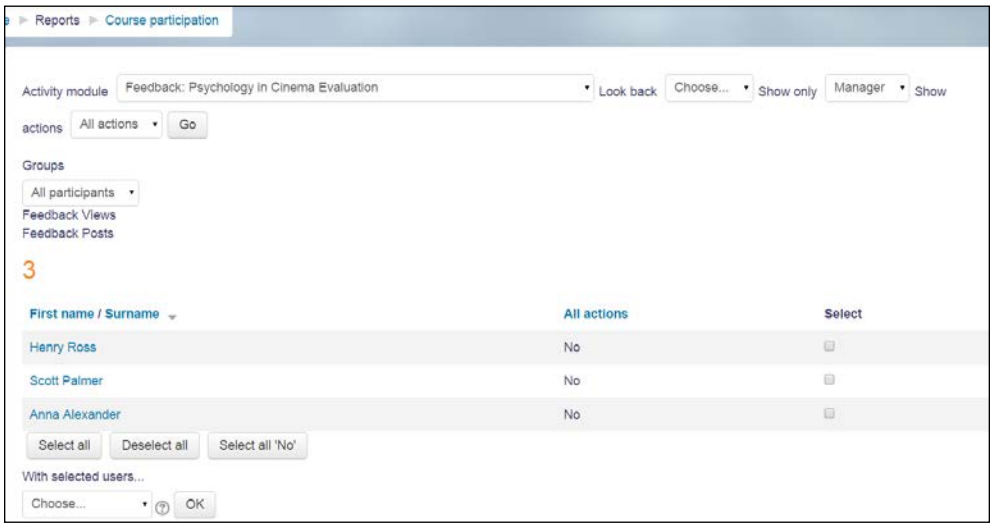
From this list, select the activity for which you want a report. You are taken to that activity. In this example, the teacher selected **Prior knowledge assessment**, which opened that activity. Then, the teacher can select **View 11 responses** in order to see how the students participated in this activity:



Notice that an activity report only acts as a link to the activities in a course. Once you select an activity, you will use that activity's method for viewing a report.

The participation report

The participation report is especially useful for discovering which students need to complete an activity, and sending them a reminder to complete it. In the following example, the teacher is looking at the report for a feedback activity called **Psychology in Cinema Evaluation.** The teacher wants to see who submitted their feedback for the course:



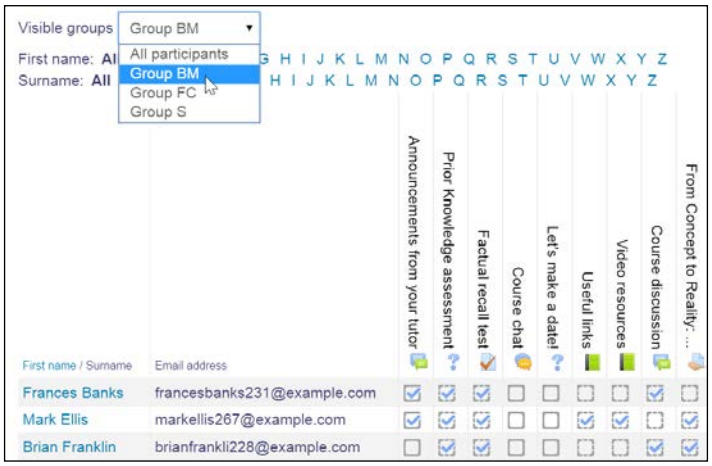
www.it-ebooks.info

In this demonstration course, the teacher wants all the students to give their feedback. So, the teacher will send a message to the students who have not completed the activity. To do this, he/she selects the students and then, from the **With selected users…** drop-down list, selects **Send a message**:

This takes the teacher to a page where he/she can create and send the message. The message will be sent to the students' e-mail addresses, and also be stored in their Moodle messages.

Viewing the activity report

If the course has activity tracking enabled, you can view a report showing the completion status of the activities in the course:

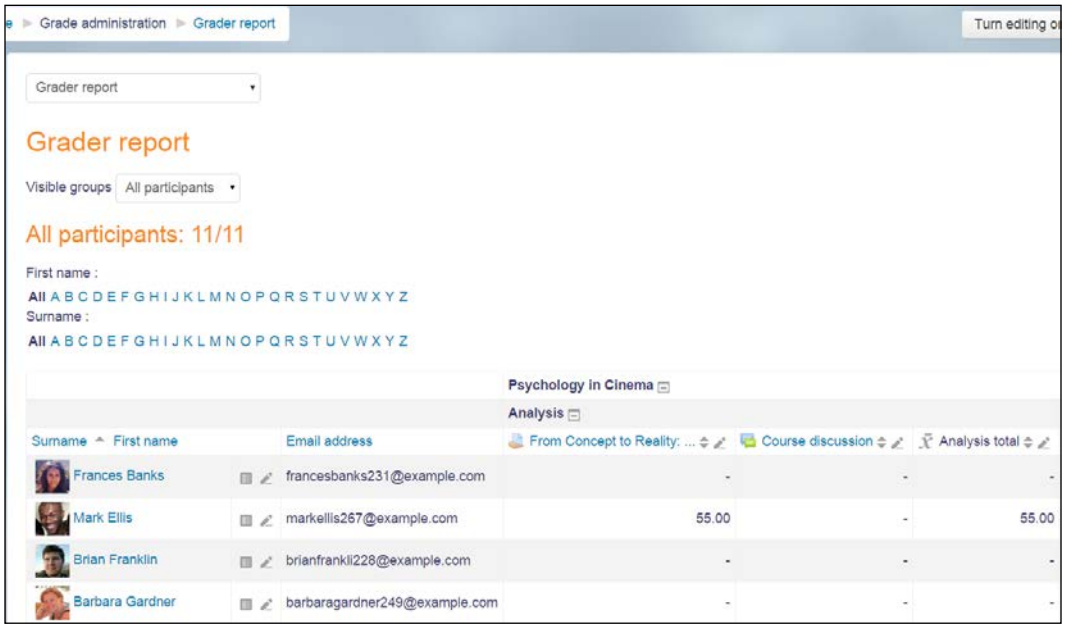


www.it-ebooks.info

Note that you can show activity for just one group, or for all the students in the course. Also, this report shows only those activities whose completion status is being tracked.

Viewing grades

To access grades, select the course the grades of which you want to see, and then select **Grade administration | Grader Report**. This displays a summary of the grades for that course:



Notice in the preceding screenshot that some students have not completed the first assignment in this course, **From Concept to Reality…**. Also, notice the **Turn editing on** button in the upper-right corner of the page. The teacher can use that to override the grades being displayed by entering new ones. When the teacher clicks on that button, the grades on this page become editable.

www.it-ebooks.info

In our example course, the teacher wants to investigate the lack of grades for the assignment **From Concept to Reality…**. So he/she will click on the name of the assignment, which takes the teacher out of the **Grader report** and into the assignment itself. In the following screenshot, notice that the navigation bar at the top of the page now shows that we are viewing the assignment:

The **Grader report** is the teacher's starting point for examining the grades in a course. It also enables the teacher to enter updated grades. From there, you can click into individual activities and investigate or modify the grades.

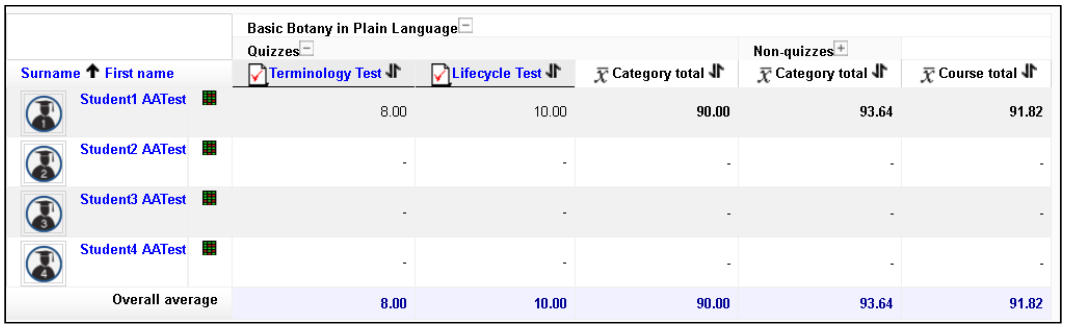
Categorizing grades

Each of the graded activities can be put into a category. Note that you put activities into categories, not students. If you want to categorize students, put them into groups.

www.it-ebooks.info

Viewing grade categories

Categorizing the graded activities in a course enables you to quickly see how your students are doing with various kinds of activities. If you do not assign an activity to a category, it will then belong to the category **Uncategorised**, by default. The next screenshot shows a course that uses the categories **Quizzes** and **Non-quizzes**. These were created by the teacher in order to compare the students' performance in tests on other activities, because he/she was concerned that some student may have test anxiety.



	Basic Botany in Plain Language				
	Quizzes			Non-quizzes	
Surname ↑ First name	Terminology Test	Lifecycle Test	Category total	Category total	Course total
Student1 AATest	8.00	10.00	**90.00**	**93.64**	**91.82**
Student2 AATest	-	-	-	-	-
Student3 AATest	-	-	-	-	-
Student4 AATest	-	-	-	-	-
Overall average	**8.00**	**10.00**	**90.00**	**93.64**	**91.82**

Notice that in the category labeled **Quizzes**, the grades are displayed for two quizzes, that is, **Terminology Test** and **Lifecycle Test**. The page also displays the **Category total** for **Quizzes**.

In the category labeled **Non-quizzes**, it displays only the **Category total**. Grades for individual activities under **Non-quizzes** are not displayed. If the user clicks on the **+** sign located next to **Non-quizzes**, the individual grades in that category will be revealed.

In this example, the teacher can see that the scores of **Student1** in the quizzes are consistent with his/her scores in the non-quiz activities. Categorizing the activities made it easy to see the comparison.

Creating grade categories

Categories are created and items are moved into categories, in the same window.

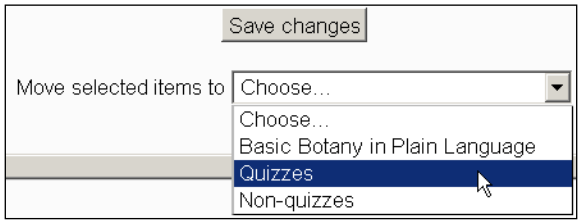
www.it-ebooks.info

To create a grade category

1. Select **Administration** | **Grade administration** | **Setup** | **Categories and items**.
2. At the bottom of the page, click on the **Add category** button. The **Edit category** page is displayed.
3. Fill out the page and save your changes.

To assign an item to a grade category:

1. Select **Settings** | **Grade administration** | **Categories and items**.
2. Select the item(s) that you want to assign to the category.
3. From the drop-down menu at the bottom of the page, select the category to which you want to move the item(s):



4. Click on the **Save changes** button.

The most important point here is to determine what kind of question you want to answer when you examine student grades, and create categories that enable you to answer that question. For example, *How do my students do on quizzes versus more interactive activities, like workshops and forums?* To answer that question, create a category just for quizzes, and you can answer that question just by viewing the grades. Or, *How do my students do on offline activities versus online activities?* To answer that question, create online and offline grading categories.

Remember, these categories are not written in stone. If your needs change, you can always create and assign new grading categories as needed.

www.it-ebooks.info

Using extra credit

When using the simple weighted method of calculating the final grades, you can designate any activity as extra credit. When an item is extra credit, its points are not added to the total possible points for the category.

First, navigate to **Grade administration** | **Setup** | **Categories and items**. From there, select the extra credit item for editing:

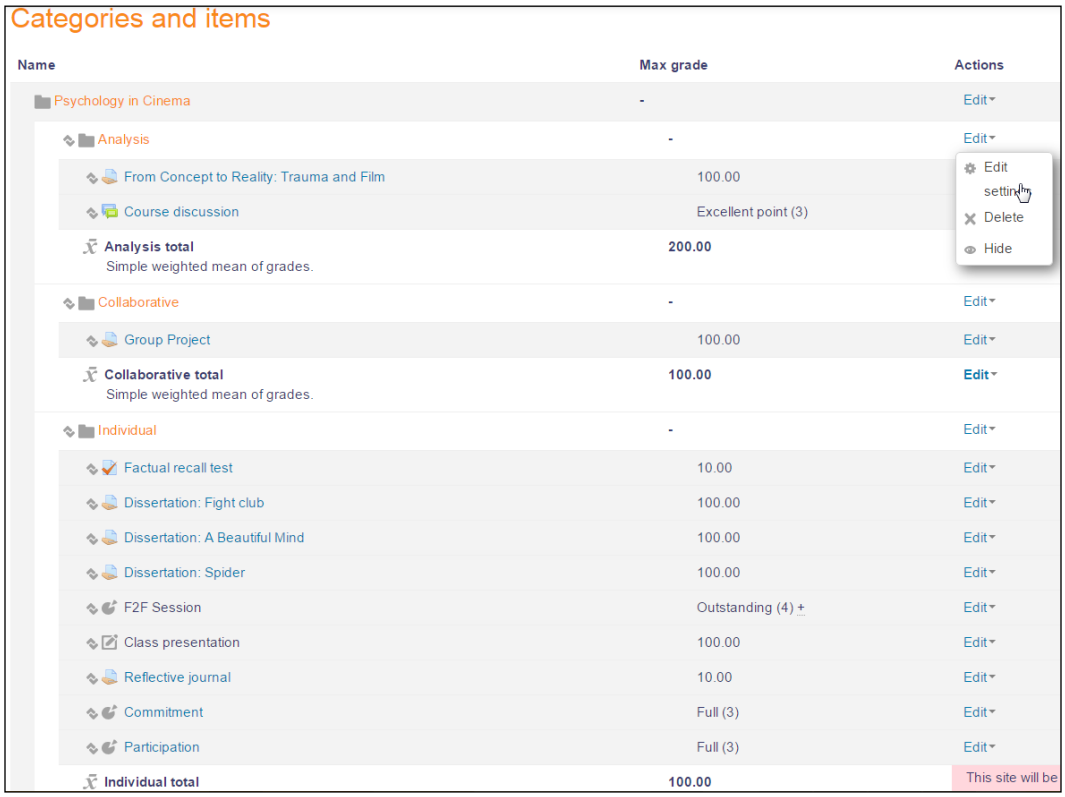
Once you are in the editing page for the item, you can designate it as extra credit just by clicking on the check box labeled **Extra credit**.

You can also create a category just for extra credit activities. Or, you can use the extra credit setting on selected activities. Both approaches will work.

www.it-ebooks.info

Weighting a category

You can, and probably should, assign a weight to a grade category. By default, a weight of **100** max grade, is applied to every category. That means that each category contributes equally to the course total. In the following screenshot, you can see that the **Collaborative** and **Individual** categories are assigned a weight of **100**. The **Analysis** category has a weight of **200** max grade:



The weight for the category is set by selecting **Edit settings** for that category. On the **Edit settings** page, you can enter the total number of points possible for the category.

www.it-ebooks.info

No matter what numbers you enter for category totals, you can enter any number for the course total. The category totals will contribute proportionately to the course total. For example, suppose two grade categories are worth 4 and 6 points, respectively. The course total is 20 points. The final grade of one category would be worth 40 percent of the course total (8 points), and the final grade of the other category would be worth 60 percent (12 points) of the course total.

Compensating for a difficult category

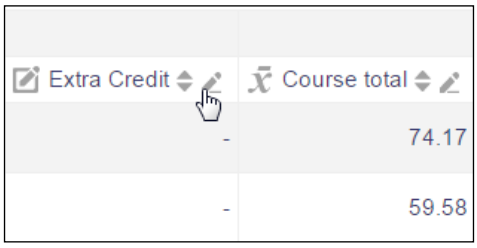
You might want to add extra points to everyone's grade in order to compensate for an especially difficult assignment. The easiest way to add extra points to everyone's grade for that specific assignment is to add an extra grade item to a category, and then give everyone points for that item.

In the following screenshot, you can see that the teacher has added a grade item worth 2 points to the category **Quizzes**, and designated it as **Extra credit**.

At the bottom of the **Categories and items** page, click on the **Add grade item** button. This brings you to a page where you can create an item that has the sole purpose of holding a grade in the gradebook.

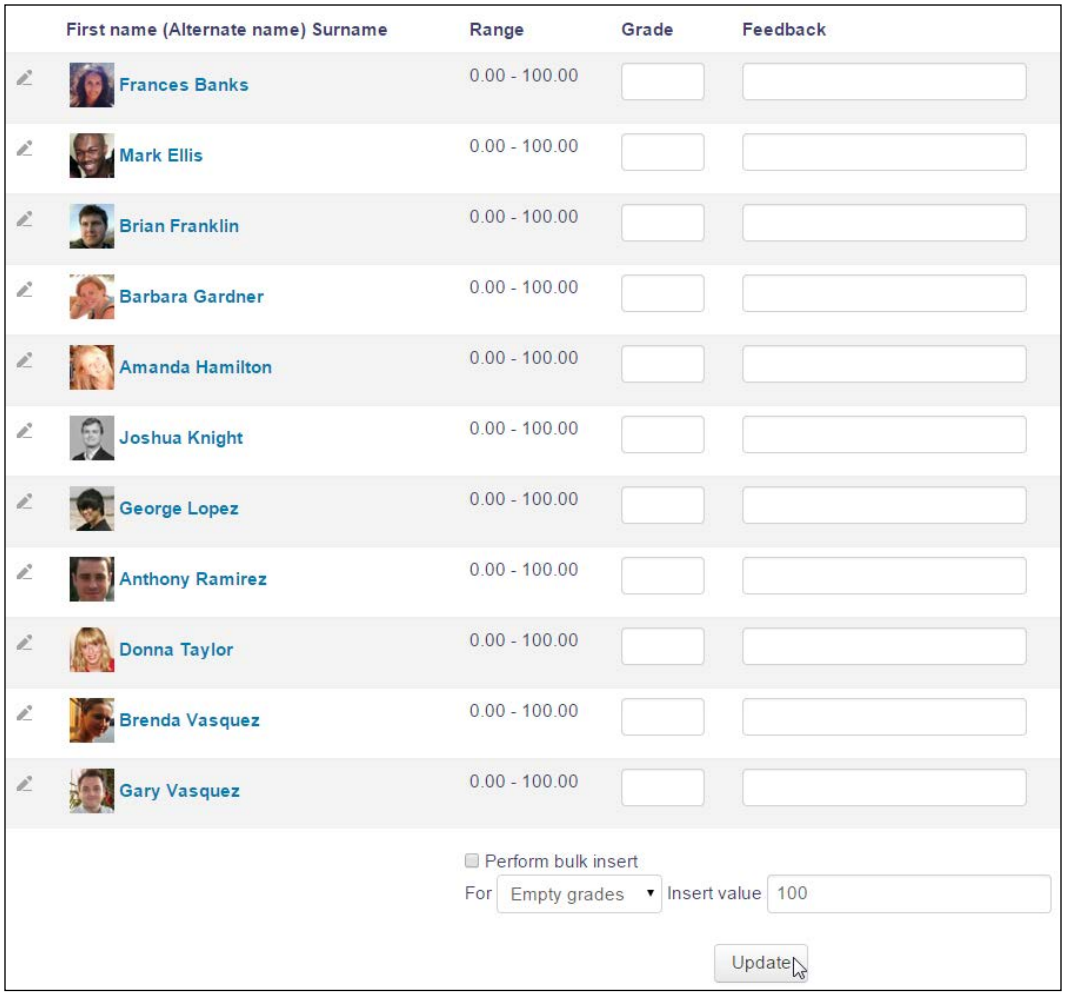
When you add a grade item instead of an activity, you must enter the grade for the students manually. This is because there is no activity in Moodle for the students to perform, so Moodle cannot calculate a grade for the students.

To add grades to the grade item, go to **Course administration** | **Grades** | **Grader report**. On this page, for the extra credit item, select the edit icon:



www.it-ebooks.info

This brings you to a page where you can manually enter a grade for each student, or, you can update the grade for all the students at once, as the teacher is about to do in the following screenshot:



www.it-ebooks.info

Summary

Whether in a classroom or online, managing a successful course requires two-way communication between the teacher and students. Constantly monitoring the course logs and grades gives you an early indication that a class may need a mid-course correction. You can use questions, surveys, and chats to discover specific problems and challenges that the students are facing. After bringing the course back on track, custom grading scales, extra credit, and curves can help you equalize the grades. When teaching online, make a habit of checking the logs and grades often.

Now that you have worked your way through this entire book, you have a basic toolset for creating, delivering, and managing a successful online course in Moodle. But you don't need to do it alone! When you need help with Moodle, there are many good resources.

First, the Moodle community at `http://moodle.org` is an excellent resource. The forums contain much accumulated wisdom.

Second, you are welcome to visit my site at `http://williamrice.com` and click over to my blog for longer how-to articles about Moodle. Leave comments and join the conversation. Also, feel free to contact me via the e-mail address on the front page of my site.

Third, check out other Moodle books by Packt Publishing. They deal with specific topics in more detail, such as Moodle security, administration, and using Moodle in a corporate environment.

Thank you for taking a journey through Moodle with me, and I look forward to seeing you online with the rest of the Moodle community.

www.it-ebooks.info

www.it-ebooks.info

Index

A

activities
about 143
adding 144
auto-linking, enabling 285
availability, setting of 146
block 337
creating 149-152
description, entering 144, 145
displaying 146
examples 143
hiding 146
name, entering 144, 145
settings 143
activity completion
conditions, setting 152
report 151
settings, creating 150, 151
activity names filters 105
activity reports
viewing 354-357
administration menu 22, 23
administrative user
creating 50, 51
Adobe Acrobat (.pdf) file 206
appearance settings, lesson settings
default feedback, using 217
display left menu 217
link to next activity 218
maximum number of answers 217
minimum grade to display menu 217
ongoing score, displaying 216
assessment phase, workshop 315
assignment
printer-friendly directions 206
authentication methods, site administration menu
authenticating, against external source 63
configuring 60
e-mail-based self-registration, enabling 62, 63
external database, connecting to 64
manual accounts method 60, 61
new user, creating 61
no login method 60, 61
username, modifying in Moodle 66
usernames, modifying from external database 65
user's account, suspending 61
users, deleting from external database 64, 65
auto-linking
enabling 283, 284
enabling, for activity 285
enabling, for course 285
enabling, for resource 285
enabling, for site 284, 285
availability
setting, of activities 146
setting, of resources 146

B

blocks
about 333
activities block 337
blog menu block 338
blog tags block 338
calendar block 339
comments block 340
configuring 333-336

www.it-ebooks.info

course block 341
course completion block 341
feedback block 341-343
HTML block 343
latest news block 343
messages block 344
my latest badges block 344
my private files block 345
online users block 345
quiz results block 345
random glossary entry block 346, 347
recent activity block 347
remote RSS feeds block 347
search forums block 348
section links 348
site summary block 341
standard blocks 336
upcoming events block 349
URL 333
user block, logged in 344
blog menu block 338
blog tags block 338
browsers
Chrome 58
Firefox 58
installing 57, 58
Opera 58

C

calendar block 339
captcha 231
category
difficult category, compensating for 363
proliferation, managing 254
weighting 362, 363
chat module
about 273, 274
chat room name 275
description 275
others chat, hiding from students 276
past sessions, saving 276
past sessions, viewing 276
publish sessions 276
repeat sessions 276
settings page 275
choice
about 237
student's point of view 238
teacher's point of view 238
uses 237
Chrome
URL 58
using 58
closed phase, workshop 315
cohorts
about 317
creating 318
students, adding 318
students, adding in bulk 319-323
students, adding manually 318, 319
students, removing manually 318, 319
sync 323
sync and enrolling, differences 325, 326
sync enrollment method,
adding to course 324
sync enrollment method, enabling 324
unenrolling, from course 325
versus group 317
cohort, site administration menu
creating 76
enrolling 78
student, adding with bulk
action method 77, 78
users, adding 76
users, adding from cohort page 76, 77
cohort sync enrollment method
enabling 324
comments block 340
course block 341
course categories
creating 121
displaying, on front page 116-118
rearranging 122, 123
uncategorized list, displaying on
front page 118
using 115
course completion block 341
course home page
items, rearranging on 153, 154
course material 143

www.it-ebooks.info

course, organizing
about 184
home page items, moving 185
home page items, rearranging 185
labels, adding to home page 186
topics, naming 184, 185
course requests
enabling 138
handling 138
notification, obtaining 138, 139
responding to 140, 141
sending 139
courses
auto-linking, enabling 285
blank course, creating 123-133
block 341
categories, creating 120, 121
categories, rearranging 122, 123
cohort, enrolling from 325
cohort sync enrollment method, adding 324
creating 123
displaying, on front page 116-118
requesting 139, 140
request, responding to 140, 141
requests, enabling 138
requests, handling 138
requests notification, obtaining 138, 139
versus activity 327
cron job
about 112
setting up 112

D

definitions
assignment 189
choice 190
feedback 190
lesson 190
display options, URLs
Embed 159
In pop-up 160, 161
Open 159

E

Edit Assignment page
about 200
Availability setting 201
Feedback types setting 203
Group submission settings 205, 206
Notifications settings 206
Submission settings 203-205
Submission types setting 202
editing mode
about 17
delete icon 18
editing icon 18
group icons 19
hidden/shown icons 19
email protection filter 106
end of branch page 214
enrollment method, site administration menu
cohort, creating 76
cohort sync 75, 76
enabling 69
guest access, enabling 74
guest access, granting 72-74
instances/enrolments 68, 69
manual enrollment 69
name 67
self enrolment 75
settings 69
student, enrolling manually 69-71
up/down 69
enrolment method, site administration menu
category enrolments 78
cohort, enrolling 78
flat file 78, 79
IMS Enterprise File 83
LDAP 84
Mnet remote enrolments 87, 88
PayPal 87
evaluation phase, workshop 315
extra credit
using 361

F

feedback
about 228
creating 229, 230
for individual responses 263, 264

www.it-ebooks.info

for numeric question 266
individual responses, viewing 235-237
question types 231
responses, analyzing with analysis tab 237
types, for question 262
types, for questions 263
uses 228
viewing 235
feedback block 341-343
file repositories
about 171
examples 171
file sharing services, used for collaborating 171
types 171
used, for overcoming file size limit 172, 173
file size limit, overcoming with repositories
about 172, 173
directory for file system repository, creating 173, 174
files, uploading to file system repository 174
file system repository, creating 174-178
file system repository, enabling 173
files, resources
file repositories 171
file, selecting from course 170
files for download, adding 170
filters, site administration menu
about 104
activity names filters 105
email protection filter 106
glossary auto-linking filters 105
HTML tidy filter 107
math filters 105
multi-language content filter 106
multimedia plugins filter 106
word censorship filter 106
Firefox
URL 58
using 58
first lesson page
adding 220
cluster, adding 223
content page, adding 222
question page, adding 223
questions, importing 221
flat file
about 78, 79
course ID, using 81, 82
format 79
role 82, 83
student ID number, using 80, 81
summary 83
flow control settings, lesson settings
about 218
allow student review 218
maximum number of attempts 219
number of pages to show 219
provide option to try a question again 218
forums
blocking settings, post threshold 281
creating 277
description 279
multiple forums 278
news forum, used for sending notifications 278
ratings 281, 282
running 277
settings 278
forums, general settings
about 278
display word count 280
forum description 279
forum name 278
forum type 279
maximum attachment size 280
maximum number of attachments 280
read tracking 280
subscription mode 280
front page
best option, selecting 119, 120
course categories, creating 120, 121
course categories, rearranging 122, 123
uncategorized course list, displaying 118
front page settings 51
front page settings, site administration menu
about 108
front page items 110
front page summary 109
full site name 108
news items, displaying 112
topic section, using 111, 112

www.it-ebooks.info

front page, site administration menu
backup, setting 112
configuring 107
cron job, setting 112
setting 107
FTP client
URL 37

G

global glossary
versus local glossary 286
glossary
about 283
adding 286
Always allow editing setting 288
Appearance settings 288
approved by default entries 287
comments, allowing 288
configuring 286
duplicate entries allowed setting 288
enabling 284
enabling, for site 284
entries, adding 292, 293
entries, exporting 294
entries, importing 294
entries, linking automatically 288
global glossary, versus local glossary 286
main glossary versus secondary glossary 286, 287
ratings, enabling 289-291
glossary auto-linking filters 105
Googlebot
about 98
URL 98
grade categories
assigning, to item 360
creating 359
viewing 359
grades
categories, viewing 359
categorizing 358
viewing 357, 358
group
creating 328
creating, automatically 330, 331
creating, manually 328-330
importing 331, 332
populating 328-331
versus cohorts 317

H

hosting service, requisites
bandwidth 29
disk space 28
memory 29, 30
minimum prerequisites, ensuring 30
HTML
references 170
HTML block 343
HTML code 170
HTML tidy filter 107
HTTP security, site administration menu
HTTPS, using for logins 103
Moodle, running from HTTPS 104
setting 102

I

ID number
used, for including resource in gradebook 147
images, adding to Moodle page
hot-linked picture, inserting 166, 167
image file, inserting 165
plain text, pasting without formatting original text 168
text, pasting 168
text, pasting from Microsoft Word 168
IMS Enterprise File
about 83
reference link 84
inside course
about 11
blocks 12
discussion, joining 14, 15
navigation bar 12
Navigation block 12
sections 13
workshop, completing 15-17
installer script
about 42
config.php 43

www.it-ebooks.info

configuration settings 43
copyright 47
database settings, specifying 46, 47
database tables 44
database tables, creating by install.php 49
directories, specifying 45, 46
install.php, running 44
server, checking 48
web address, specifying 45, 46
Internet Explorer
URL 58
Irish Gaelic 92
items
rearranging, on course home page 153, 154

J

Jumps
Next or Previous Page 225
random question within content page 226
specific pages 225
This Page 225
unseen question within cluster 225

L

language pack, site administration menu
about 88, 89
additional languages, configuring 93, 94
additional languages, enabling 92
additional languages, installing 92, 93
courses, offering in multiple languages 95
Excel encoding 94, 95
language files 90-92
sitewide locale 94
latest news block 343, 344
LDAP
about 84
external database connection, setting 85
external database, using 84
local field mappings, setting 86
new courses, creating 87
remote enrolment sync, setting 87
lesson
about 207
content, adding 215
lesson settings, configuring 215
pages, creating 215
planning 215
simple lesson example, with remedial page jump 208-210
types of pages 211
lesson, editing
about 227
collapsed 227
expanded 227
pages, adding 228
pages, editing 228
pages, rearranging 228
lesson settings, configuring
about 215
appearance settings 216
custom scoring 219
first lesson page, adding 220
flow control settings 218
flow of pages 227
grade 219
jumps, assigning 226
minimum number of questions 220
pages, creating 226
practice lesson 219
prerequisite lesson settings 218
question page, creating 223, 224
re-takes, handling 220
Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) 9
local glossary
versus global glossary 286
logs
and reports 351, 352
course logs, viewing 352, 353
live logs, viewing 354

M

math filters 105
maximum grade, quiz
about 270
for each question 270
questions order, changing 270, 271
media, resources
adding 179
audio, adding to page 179-183
video, adding to page 179-183
messages block 344

www.it-ebooks.info

Mnet remote enrolments 87, 88
Moodle
data directory 37
database, creating 39, 40
front page, displaying 52
installation, URL 31
installing 3
obtaining 31
unpacking 31
unzipping 32
uploading 32
URL 51, 112, 329
version, selecting 31
zip file, decompressing locally 34
zip file, decompressing on server 32-34
zip file, uploading on server 32-34
Moodle application directory 24, 25
Moodle architecture
about 23, 24
Moodle application directory 24, 25
Moodle database 26
Moodle data directory 25
Moodle community
URL 365
Moodle database 26
Moodle data directory 25
Moodle demo sites
URL 7
Moodle experience 2
Moodle front page
about 7
Anonymous access 8
available courses 10, 11
blocks 9
Guest access 8
main menu 9
Registered access 9
site description 10
visitor, arriving at site 7, 8
Moodle installation
About 27
administrative user, creating 50, 51
data directory 37, 38
database, creating 38
final step 52
front page settings 51
installer script 42
subdirectory 31
subdomain 31
unpacking step 31
user, creating 38
web server 27
Moodle learning site
administration menu 22, 23
basic course material 4
collaborative activities, adding 4
common settings 3
configuring 3
course overview 5
courses, extending 5
courses, making interactive 4
courses, making social 4
courses, managing 5
editing mode 17
framework, creating 3
front page 7
inside course 11
normal, versus editing mode 17
resources and activities, adding 19-21
students, evaluating 4
Moodle networking. *See* **Mnet remote enrolments**
Moodle philosophy 5, 6
multi-language content filter 106
multimedia plugins filter 106
my latest badges block 344
my private files block 345

N

notifications
sending, news forum used 278

O

online users block 345
open-book quiz
preventing 271
Open to Google, site administration menu
file size, setting 99
setting 98, 99
uploaded file size limit, modifying in Apache 101
uploaded file size limit, modifying in PHP 100

www.it-ebooks.info

Opera
URL 58
using 58

P

pages, resources
adding 162
composing, in HTML editor 169
images, adding to Moodle page 164
page, adding to course 163, 164
participation report 355
php memory limit
URL 49
phpMyAdmin 103
project plan, for learning site 2

Q

question bank
about 242
existing questions, adding from question bank 267, 268
questions, adding 252-254
questions, adding to quiz 252
quiz settings, configuring 242
question behavior
about 246
Adaptive mode setting 246
Deferred feedback 247
Each attempt builds on the last 247
Immediate feedback 247
multiple tries 247
question page
answers 224
creating 223, 224
jumps 225
page contents 224
page title 224
responses 224
questions
adding, to question bank 252-254
category, creating 254, 255
category, editing 254, 255
creating 255-257
existing questions, adding from question bank 267, 268
feedback, adding 262
feedback, types 262, 263
moving, between categories 254
proliferation, managing 254
random questions, adding to quiz 269
types 259-261
question types, feedback
about 231
bots, avoiding with captcha 231
information, inserting 232
label, adding 232
multiple choice questions, creating 234, 235
multiple choice questions, displaying 232-234
numeric answer 235
page break, adding 231
short text answer 235
text box, creating with longer text answer 232
quiz questions
glossary auto link, preventing 271
quiz results block 345
quiz settings, configuring
about 242
appearance 249
attempts, restrictions 249
common module settings 251
feedback 250
General settings 243
Grade category setting 244
Layout control 245
question behavior 246
review options 248
security, techniques 250
Timing 244

R

random glossary entry block 346
ratings
enabling 289-292
RealPlayer 106
recent activity block 347
reports
and logs 351, 352
participation report 355, 356

www.it-ebooks.info

resources
about 143, 157
adding 144
auto-linking, enabling 285
availability, setting of 146
creating 149, 152
description, entering 144, 145
different kinds of resources, adding 157, 158
displaying 146
examples 143
files for download, adding 170
hiding 146
including in gradebook, with ID number 147
media, adding 179
name, entering 144, 145
pages, adding 162
settings 143
URLs, adding 158
visibility setting, used for displaying 147
visibility setting, used for hiding 147
Restrict access setting
about 148, 149
completion conditions, using 149

S

Safari
URL 58
search forums block 348
section links 348
security, site administration menu
EMBED tags, allowing 101
HTTP security 102
IP blocker page 96
OBJECT tags, allowing 101
setting 95
site policies page 96
setup phase, workshop
about 301
assessment settings 306
availability settings 307
edit assessment form page 308, 309
example, adding 310-312
feedback settings 307
grading settings 302
grading strategy 303, 304
name and description 302
submission settings 305
submissions settings, example 307
site
auto-linking, enabling 284, 285
glossary, enabling 284
site administration menu
authentication methods, configuring 60
enrollment method 66, 67
exploring 58, 59
filters 104
front page, configuring 107
language pack 88, 89
security, setting 95
site configuration
browsers, installing 57, 58
preparing 53, 54
test accounts, creating 54-56
site policies page, site administration menu
Open to Google, setting 98, 99
usernames, protecting 96, 97
users, logging 97
users, logging for profiles 97
site summary block 341
students
access, allowing for activities 153
access, allowing for resources 153
adding manually, to cohort 318, 319
adding, to cohort 318
adding, to cohort in bulk 319-323
enrolling 133
removing manually, from cohort 318, 319
with groups, managing 326
subdirectory 31
subdomain 31
submission phase, workshop
about 313, 314
submissions, allocating 314

T

teachers
assigning 133-135
enrolling 133
enrolment methods, setting 136, 137

www.it-ebooks.info

teacher's point of view
about 238
allow choice to be updated 239
display mode 239
limit 239
privacy of results 239
publish results 239
test accounts
creating 54-56
three group modes
about 327
No groups 327
Separate groups 327
Visible groups 327
types of pages, lesson
about 211
cluster page, with questions 213, 214
content pages 212
end of branch page 214

U

uncategorized course list
categories, rearranging 122
course categories, creating 120, 121
displaying, on front page 118
upcoming events block 349
URLs, resources
adding 158
display options 158
reference, for passing parameters 162
user experience
using 116

V

Vimeo 29
visibility setting
used, for displaying resources 147
used, for hiding resources 147

W

What You See Is What You Get (WYSIWYG) 17
wiki module
about 294, 295
Default Format setting 296
editing, group mode used 295
editing, wiki type used 295
first page name 296
Windows Media Player 106
word censorship filter 106
workshop
about 299
assessments, timing 300
phases 301
questions 300
strategies 299
submissions, peer assessment 299
submissions, timing 300
workshop, phases
assessment phase 301, 315
closed phase 315
grading evaluation phase 301, 315
setup phase 301
submission phase 301, 313, 314

X

XAMPP 28

Y

YouTube 29

www.it-ebooks.info

[PACKT] open source
community experience distilled
PUBLISHING

Thank you for buying

Moodle E-Learning Course Development

Third Edition

About Packt Publishing

Packt, pronounced 'packed', published its first book, *Mastering phpMyAdmin for Effective MySQL Management*, in April 2004, and subsequently continued to specialize in publishing highly focused books on specific technologies and solutions.

Our books and publications share the experiences of your fellow IT professionals in adapting and customizing today's systems, applications, and frameworks. Our solution-based books give you the knowledge and power to customize the software and technologies you're using to get the job done. Packt books are more specific and less general than the IT books you have seen in the past. Our unique business model allows us to bring you more focused information, giving you more of what you need to know, and less of what you don't.

Packt is a modern yet unique publishing company that focuses on producing quality, cutting-edge books for communities of developers, administrators, and newbies alike. For more information, please visit our website at `www.packtpub.com`.

About Packt Open Source

In 2010, Packt launched two new brands, Packt Open Source and Packt Enterprise, in order to continue its focus on specialization. This book is part of the Packt Open Source brand, home to books published on software built around open source licenses, and offering information to anybody from advanced developers to budding web designers. The Open Source brand also runs Packt's Open Source Royalty Scheme, by which Packt gives a royalty to each open source project about whose software a book is sold.

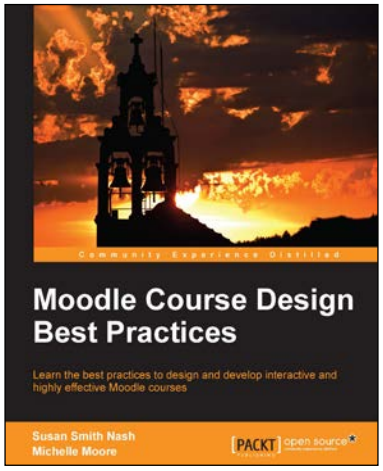
Writing for Packt

We welcome all inquiries from people who are interested in authoring. Book proposals should be sent to `author@packtpub.com`. If your book idea is still at an early stage and you would like to discuss it first before writing a formal book proposal, then please contact us; one of our commissioning editors will get in touch with you.

We're not just looking for published authors; if you have strong technical skills but no writing experience, our experienced editors can help you develop a writing career, or simply get some additional reward for your expertise.

www.it-ebooks.info

[PACKT] open source
community experience distilled
PUBLISHING

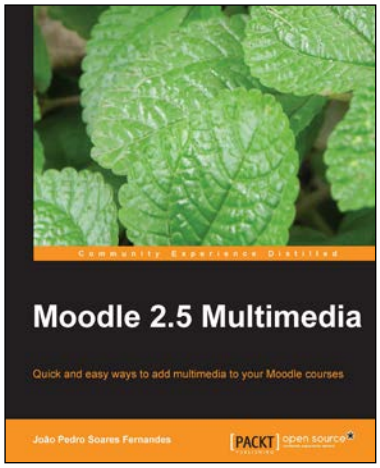


Moodle Course Design Best Practices

ISBN: 978-1-78328-681-2 Paperback: 126 pages

Learn the best practices to design and develop interactive and highly effective Moodle courses

1. Explore Moodle's course development features like themes, social media plugins and archiving content.
2. Bring together instructional materials, social interaction, and student management functions in your courses.
3. An easy-to-follow guide to help you create or update your Moodle course.



Moodle 2.5 Multimedia

ISBN: 978-1-78328-147-3 Paperback: 270 pages

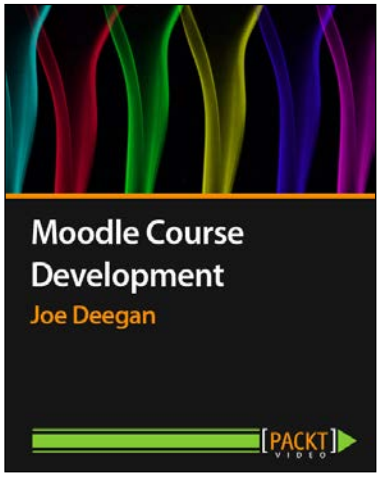
Quick and easy ways to add multimedia to your Moodle courses

1. Gives ideas to teachers and trainers on how to use multimedia effectively in Moodle.
2. Plenty of screenshots and a step-by-step approach, with tips on how to use simple and free software tools and web applications to improve your course.
3. Focus on both the creation of instructional materials and the design of students activities around multimedia where they have an active role in creating, discussing and assessing their work.

Please check **www.PacktPub.com** for information on our titles

www.it-ebooks.info

[PACKT] open source
community experience distilled
PUBLISHING

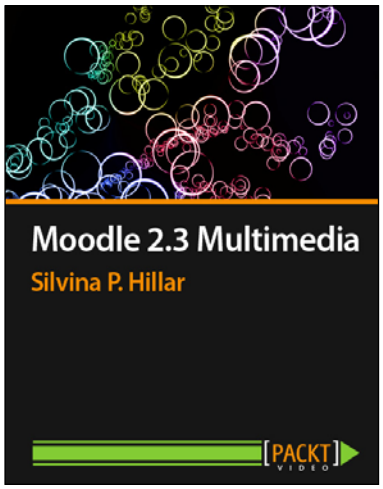


Moodle Course Development [Video]

ISBN: 978-1-78216-088-5 Duration: 02:35:40 hours

Enhance your e-learning course and make the most of what Moodle has to offer

1. Maximize your Moodle e-learning courses by learning how to make the most of every tool, activity, and resource available to you.
2. Detailed examples that cover how to create e-learning course activities and provide resources that will keep your students engaged.
3. Tips and tricks for configuring Moodle administration settings to meet the needs of your school or organization.



Moodle 2.3 Multimedia [Video]

ISBN: 978-1-78216-430-2 Duration: 01:02 hours

Enhance your course and enthrall your audience using captivating multimedia

1. Create rich summary sections as well as activities for your Moodle courses using Moodle activities and external resources.
2. Learn how to create comprehensive surveys, depict statistical data in captivating charts, and use different resources to compile data as well as interactive documents.
3. Integrate several file types designed using different types of software into your Moodle courses - learn how to create and embed documents or upload them to your Moodle courses using e-portfolios.

Please check **www.PacktPub.com** for information on our titles

www.it-ebooks.info

www.it-ebooks.info